2009 Saturn AURA Owner Manual

Seats and Restraint System 1-1
- Front Seats 1-2
- Rear Seats 1-8
- Safety Belts 1-10
- Child Restraints 1-30
- Airbag System 1-56
- Restraint System Check 1-72

Features and Controls 2-1
- Keys 2-3
- Doors and Locks 2-10
- Windows 2-15
- Theft-Deterrent Systems 2-18
- Starting and Operating Your Vehicle 2-21
- Mirrors 2-35
- OnStar® System 2-38
- Universal Home Remote System 2-41
- Storage Areas 2-48
- Sunroof 2-49

Instrument Panel 3-1
- Instrument Panel Overview 3-4
- Climate Controls 3-19
- Warning Lights, Gages, and Indicators 3-27
- Driver Information Center (DIC) 3-43
- Audio System(s) 3-55

Driving Your Vehicle 4-1
- Your Driving, the Road, and the Vehicle 4-2
- Towing 4-26

Service and Appearance Care 5-1
- Service 5-3
- Fuel 5-5
- Checking Things Under the Hood 5-10
- Headlamp Aiming 5-41
- Bulb Replacement 5-41
- Windshield Wiper Blade Replacement 5-44
- Tires 5-45
- Appearance Care 5-81
- Vehicle Identification 5-89
- Electrical System 5-90
- Capacities and Specifications 5-100

Maintenance Schedule 6-1
- Maintenance Schedule 6-2

Customer Assistance Information 7-1
- Customer Assistance and Information 7-2
- Reporting Safety Defects 7-14
- Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy 7-16

Index 1

SATURN, the SATURN Emblem, and the name AURA, are registered trademarks of Saturn Corporation. GENERAL MOTORS and GM are registered trademarks of General Motors Corporation.

This manual includes the latest information at the time it was printed. Saturn reserves the right to make changes after that time without further notice.

This manual describes features that may or may not be on your specific vehicle.

Keep this manual in the vehicle for quick reference.

Canadian Owners

A French language copy of this manual can be obtained from your dealer/retailer or from:

Helm, Incorporated
P.O. Box 07130
Detroit, MI 48207

1-800-551-4123
www.helminc.com

Propriétaires Canadiens

On peut obtenir un exemplaire de ce guide en français auprès de concessionnaire ou à l'adresse suivante:

Helm, Incorporated
P.O. Box 07130
Detroit, MI 48207

1-800-551-4123
www.helminc.com

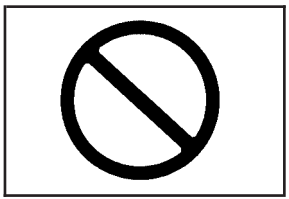
Litho in U.S.A.
Part No. 15898473 B Second Printing

©2008 General Motors Corporation. All Rights Reserved.

Index

To quickly locate information about the vehicle, use the index in the back of the manual. It is an alphabetical list of what is in the manual and the page number where it can be found.

Safety Warnings and Symbols



A circle with a slash through it is a safety symbol which means “Do Not,” “Do not do this,” or “Do not let this happen.”

A box with the word CAUTION is used to tell about things that could hurt you or others if you were to ignore the warning.

⚠ CAUTION:

These mean there is something that could hurt you or other people.

Cautions tell what the hazard is and what to do to avoid or reduce the hazard. Read these cautions.

A notice tells about something that can damage the vehicle.

Notice: **These mean there is something that could damage your vehicle.**

Many times, this damage would not be covered by the vehicle’s warranty, and it could be costly. The notice tells what to do to help avoid the damage.

There are also warning labels on the vehicle which use the same words, CAUTION or Notice.

Vehicle Symbols

The vehicle has components and labels that use symbols instead of text. Symbols are shown along with the text describing the operation or information relating to a specific component, control, message, gage, or indicator.

: This symbol is shown when you need to see your owner manual for additional instructions or information.

: This symbol is shown when you need to see a service manual for additional instructions or information.

Vehicle Symbol Chart

Here are some additional symbols that may be found on the vehicle and what they mean. For more information on the symbol, refer to the index.

: Airbag Readiness Light

: Air Conditioning

: Antilock Brake System (ABS)

: Audio Steering Wheel Controls or OnStar®

: Brake System Warning Light

: Charging System

: Cruise Control

: Engine Coolant Temperature

: Exterior Lamps

: Fog Lamps

: Fuel Gage

: Fuses

: Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer

: LATCH System Child Restraints

: Malfunction Indicator Lamp

: Oil Pressure

: Power

: Remote Vehicle Start

: Safety Belt Reminders

: Tire Pressure Monitor

: Traction Control

: Windshield Washer Fluid

Section 1 Seats and Restraint System

Front Seats 1-2
- Manual Seats 1-2
- Power Seats 1-3
- Manual Lumbar 1-3
- Heated Seats 1-4
- Reclining Seatbacks 1-4
- Head Restraints 1-7
- Power Lift Seat 1-8

Rear Seats 1-8
- Split Folding Rear Seat 1-8

Safety Belts 1-10
- Safety Belts: They Are for Everyone 1-10
- How to Wear Safety Belts Properly 1-15
- Lap-Shoulder Belt 1-23
- Safety Belt Use During Pregnancy 1-29
- Safety Belt Extender 1-29

Child Restraints 1-30
- Older Children 1-30
- Infants and Young Children 1-33
- Child Restraint Systems 1-37
- Where to Put the Restraint 1-40
- Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH) 1-43
- Securing a Child Restraint in a Rear Seat Position 1-50
- Securing a Child Restraint in the Right Front Seat Position 1-52

Airbag System 1-56
- Where Are the Airbags? 1-59
- When Should an Airbag Inflate? 1-61
- What Makes an Airbag Inflate? 1-63
- How Does an Airbag Restrain? 1-63
- What Will You See After an Airbag Inflates? 1-64
- Passenger Sensing System 1-65
- Servicing Your Airbag-Equipped Vehicle 1-70
- Adding Equipment to Your Airbag-Equipped Vehicle 1-71

Restraint System Check 1-72
- Checking the Restraint Systems 1-72
- Replacing Restraint System Parts After a Crash 1-73

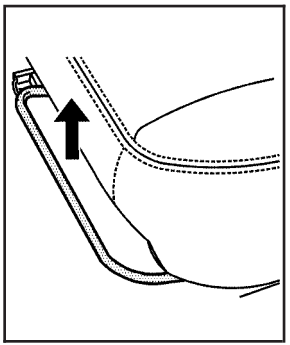
Front Seats

Manual Seats

⚠ CAUTION:

You can lose control of the vehicle if you try to adjust a manual driver's seat while the vehicle is moving. The sudden movement could startle and confuse you, or make you push a pedal when you do not want to. Adjust the driver's seat only when the vehicle is not moving.

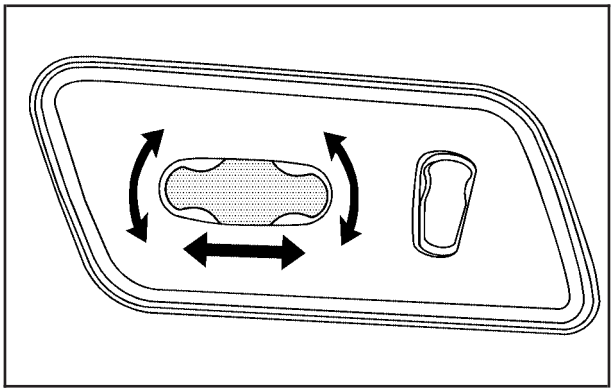
If the vehicle has a manual seat, it can be moved forward or rearward.



1. Lift the bar to unlock the seat.
2. Slide the seat to the desired position and release the bar.

Try to move the seat with your body to be sure the seat is locked in place.

Power Seats

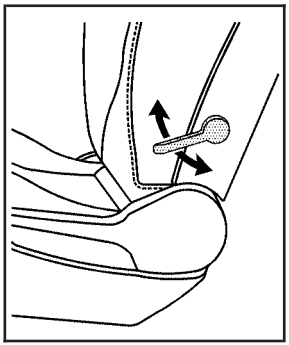


If the vehicle has power seats, the controls used to operate them are located on the outboard side of the seats.

To adjust the seat:

- Move the seat forward or rearward by sliding the control forward or rearward.
- Raise or lower the front part of the seat cushion by moving the front of the control up or down.
- Raise or lower the rear part of the seat cushion by moving the rear of the control up or down.

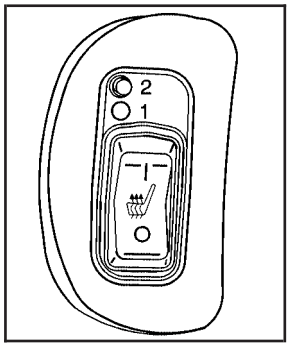
Manual Lumbar



On vehicles with this feature, the handle is located on the outboard side of the seat.

Move the handle up or down repeatedly to decrease or increase lumbar support.

Heated Seats



On vehicles with heated front seats, the buttons are located on the outboard side of the driver's and front passenger seats.

Press the top of the switch to turn the feature on. The seat will heat to the high setting. The indicator light above the switch will be lit next to the number 2.

Press the top of the switch again to go to the low heat setting. The indicator light will be lit next to the number 1.

Press the bottom of the switch to turn the feature off.

The heated seat feature will turn off when the ignition is turned off.

Reclining Seatbacks

Manual Reclining Seatbacks

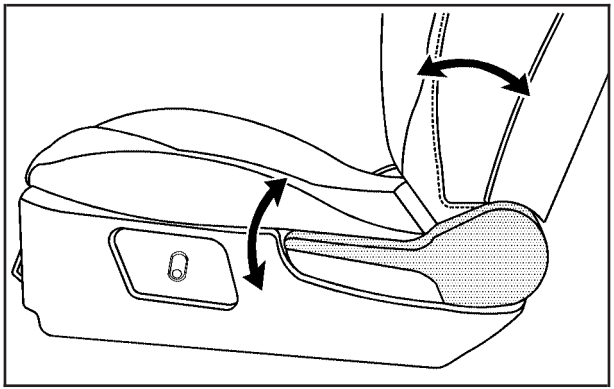
⚠ CAUTION:

You can lose control of the vehicle if you try to adjust a manual driver's seat while the vehicle is moving. The sudden movement could startle and confuse you, or make you push a pedal when you do not want to. Adjust the driver's seat only when the vehicle is not moving.

⚠ CAUTION:

If either seatback is not locked, it could move forward in a sudden stop or crash. That could cause injury to the person sitting there. Always push and pull on the seatbacks to be sure they are locked.

On seats with manual reclining seatbacks, the lever used to operate them is located on the outboard side of the seat.



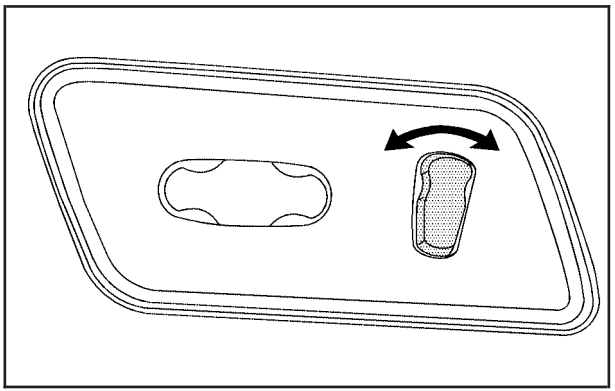
To recline the seatback:

1. Lift the recline lever.
2. Move the seatback to the desired position, then release the lever to lock the seatback in place.
3. Push and pull on the seatback to make sure it is locked.

To return the seatback to an upright position:

1. Lift the lever fully without applying pressure to the seatback and the seatback returns to the upright position.
2. Release the lever to lock the seatback.
3. Push and pull on the seatback to make sure it is locked.

Power Reclining Seatbacks



If the seats have power reclining seatbacks, the control used to recline them is located on the outboard side of the seat behind the power seat control.

- To recline the seatback, tilt the top of the control rearward.
- To bring the seatback forward, tilt the top of the control forward.

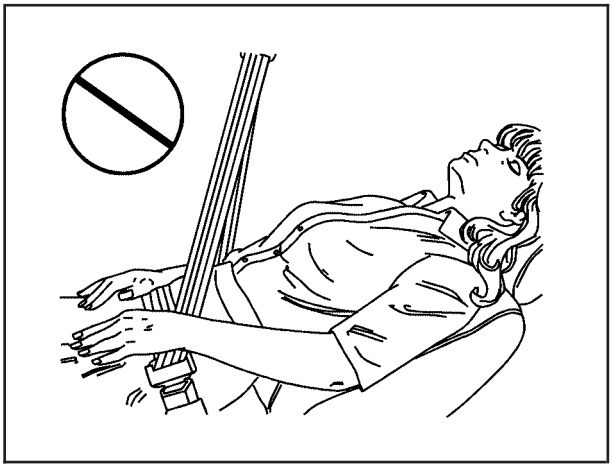
⚠ CAUTION:

Sitting in a reclined position when your vehicle is in motion can be dangerous. Even if you buckle up, your safety belts cannot do their job when you are reclined like this.

The shoulder belt cannot do its job. In a crash, you could go into it, receiving neck or other injuries.

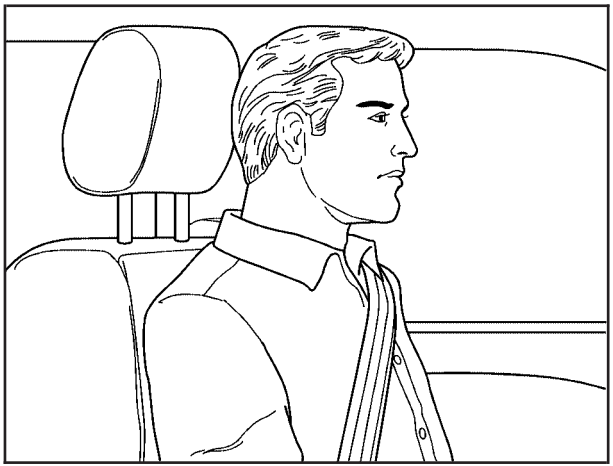
The lap belt cannot do its job either. In a crash the belt could go up over your abdomen. The belt forces would be there, not at your pelvic bones. This could cause serious internal injuries.

For proper protection when the vehicle is in motion, have the seatback upright. Then sit well back in the seat and wear your safety belt properly.

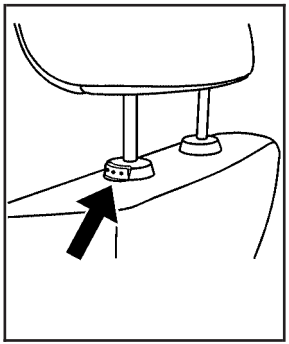


Do not have a seatback reclined if the vehicle is moving.

Head Restraints



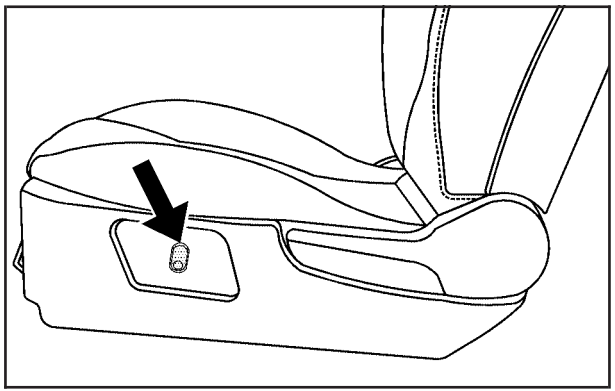
Adjust the head restraint so that the top of the restraint is at the same height as the top of the occupant's head. This position reduces the chance of a neck injury in a crash.



Pull the restraint up to raise it. To lower the head restraint, press the button, located on the top of the seatback, and push the restraint down.

The rear seat head rests are also adjustable.

Power Lift Seat



To adjust a power lift seat, press the top or bottom of the power lift seat switch to raise or lower the seat.

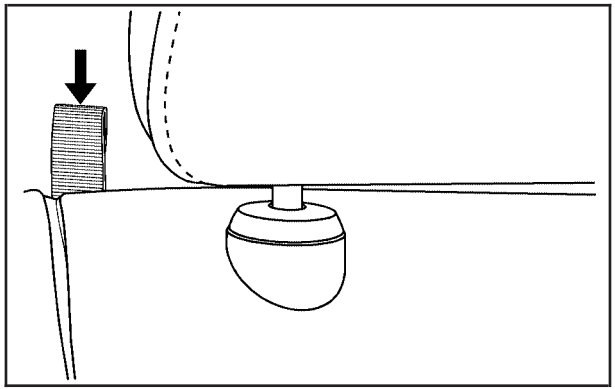
Rear Seats

Split Folding Rear Seat

With this feature, either side of the seatback can be folded down for more cargo space.

Before folding a seatback, make sure the front seat is not reclined. If it is, the rear seatback will not fold down all the way.

Notice: **Folding a rear seat with the safety belts still fastened may cause damage to the seat or the safety belts. Always unbuckle the safety belts and return them to their normal stowed position before folding a rear seat.**



To lower the rear seatback, pull up on the seatback strap while folding the seatback down. This allows access to the trunk.

To raise the rear seatback pull the seatback up and make sure it latches. Push and pull on the seatback to be sure it is locked in position. Make sure that the safety belts are properly stowed over the seatback in all three positions.

⚠ CAUTION:

A safety belt that is improperly routed, not properly attached, or twisted will not provide the protection needed in a crash. The person wearing the belt could be seriously injured. After raising the rear seatback, always check to be sure that the safety belts are properly routed and attached, and are not twisted.

⚠ CAUTION:

If either seatback is not locked, it could move forward in a sudden stop or crash. That could cause injury to the person sitting there. Always push and pull on the seatbacks to be sure they are locked.

When the seat is not in use, it should be kept in the upright locked position.

Safety Belts

Safety Belts: They Are for Everyone

This section of the manual describes how to use safety belts properly. It also describes some things not to do with safety belts.

⚠ CAUTION:

Do not let anyone ride where a safety belt cannot be worn properly. In a crash, if you or your passenger(s) are not wearing safety belts, the injuries can be much worse. You can hit things inside the vehicle harder or be ejected from the vehicle. You and your passenger(s) can be seriously injured or killed. In the same crash, you might not be, if you are buckled up. Always fasten your safety belt, and check that your passenger(s) are restrained properly too.

⚠ CAUTION:

It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a collision, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and safety belts. Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a safety belt properly.

This vehicle has indicators as a reminder to buckle the safety belts. See *Safety Belt Reminders on page 3-29* for additional information.

In most states and in all Canadian provinces, the law requires wearing safety belts. Here is why:

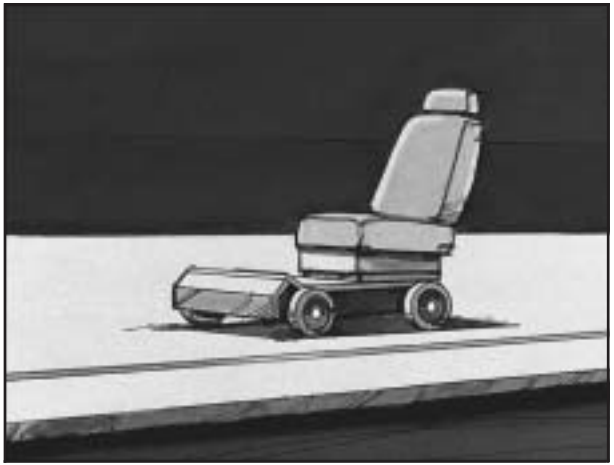
You never know if you will be in a crash. If you do have a crash, you do not know if it will be a serious one.

A few crashes are mild, and some crashes can be so serious that even buckled up, a person would not survive. But most crashes are in between. In many of them, people who buckle up can survive and sometimes walk away. Without safety belts, they could have been badly hurt or killed.

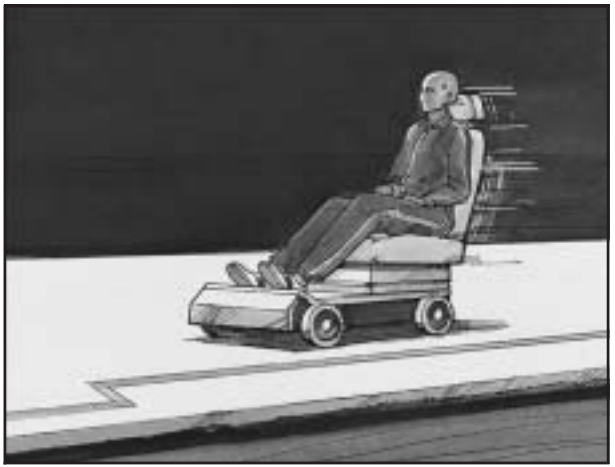
After more than 40 years of safety belts in vehicles, the facts are clear. In most crashes buckling up does matter... a lot!

Why Safety Belts Work

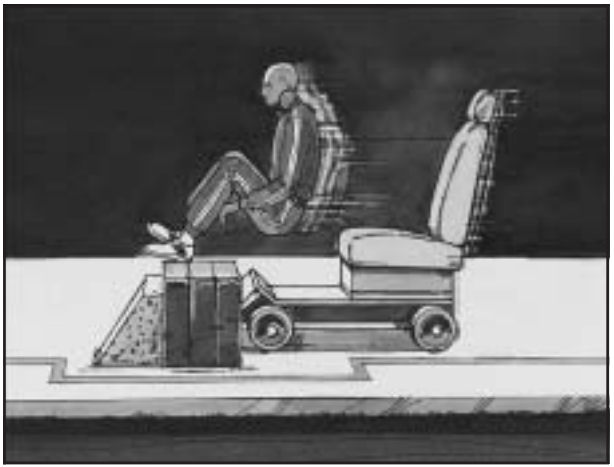
When you ride in or on anything, you go as fast as it goes.



Take the simplest vehicle. Suppose it is just a seat on wheels.

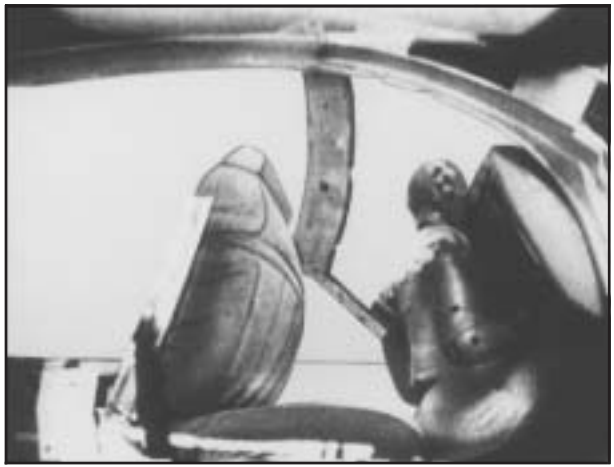


Put someone on it.



Get it up to speed. Then stop the vehicle. The rider does not stop.

The person keeps going until stopped by something. In a real vehicle, it could be the windshield...



or the instrument panel...

or the safety belts!

With safety belts, you slow down as the vehicle does. You get more time to stop. You stop over more distance, and your strongest bones take the forces. That is why safety belts make such good sense.

Questions and Answers About Safety Belts

Q: Will I be trapped in the vehicle after a crash if I am wearing a safety belt?

A: You *could* be — whether you are wearing a safety belt or not. But your chance of being conscious during and after an accident, so you *can* unbuckle and get out, is *much* greater if you are belted. And you can unbuckle a safety belt, even if you are upside down.

Q: If my vehicle has airbags, why should I have to wear safety belts?

A: Airbags are supplemental systems only; so they work *with* safety belts — not instead of them. Whether or not an airbag is provided, all occupants still have to buckle up to get the most protection. That is true not only in frontal collisions, but especially in side and other collisions.

Q: If I am a good driver, and I never drive far from home, why should I wear safety belts?

A: You may be an excellent driver, but if you are in a crash — even one that is not your fault — you and your passenger(s) can be hurt. Being a good driver does not protect you from things beyond your control, such as bad drivers.

Most accidents occur within 25 miles (40 km) of home. And the greatest number of serious injuries and deaths occur at speeds of less than 40 mph (65 km/h).

Safety belts are for everyone.

How to Wear Safety Belts Properly

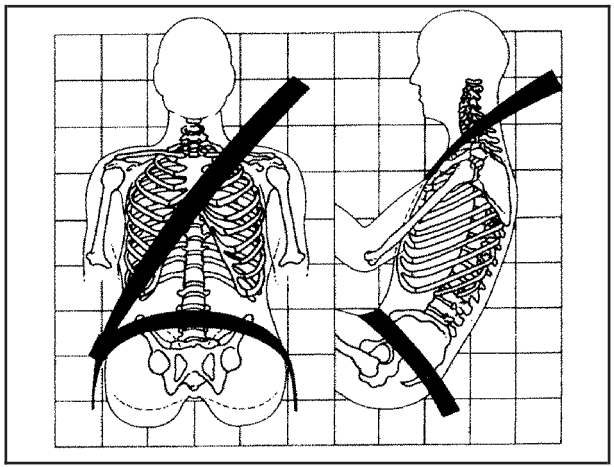
This section is only for people of adult size.

Be aware that there are special things to know about safety belts and children. And there are different rules for smaller children and infants. If a child will be riding in the vehicle, see *Older Children on page 1-30* or *Infants and Young Children on page 1-33*. Follow those rules for everyone's protection.

It is very important for all occupants to buckle up. Statistics show that unbelted people are hurt more often in crashes than those who are wearing safety belts.

Occupants who are not buckled up can be thrown out of the vehicle in a crash. And they can strike others in the vehicle who are wearing safety belts.

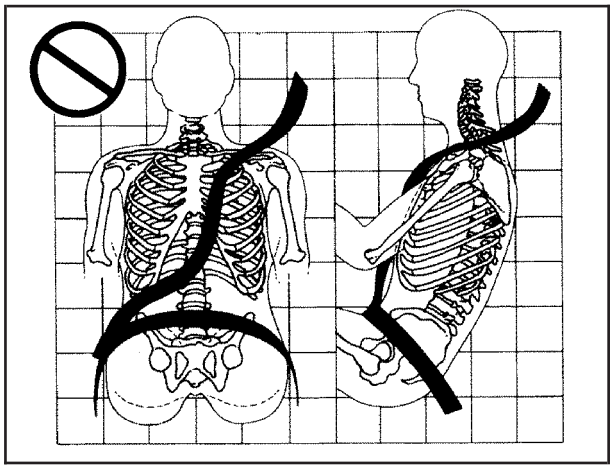
First, before you or your passenger(s) wear a safety belt, there is important information you should know.



Sit up straight and always keep your feet on the floor in front of you. The lap part of the belt should be worn low and snug on the hips, just touching the thighs. In a crash, this applies force to the strong pelvic bones and you would be less likely to slide under the lap belt. If you slid under it, the belt would apply force on your abdomen. This could cause serious or even fatal injuries. The shoulder belt should go over the shoulder and across the chest. These parts of the body are best able to take belt restraining forces.

The shoulder belt locks if there is a sudden stop or crash.

Q: What is wrong with this?

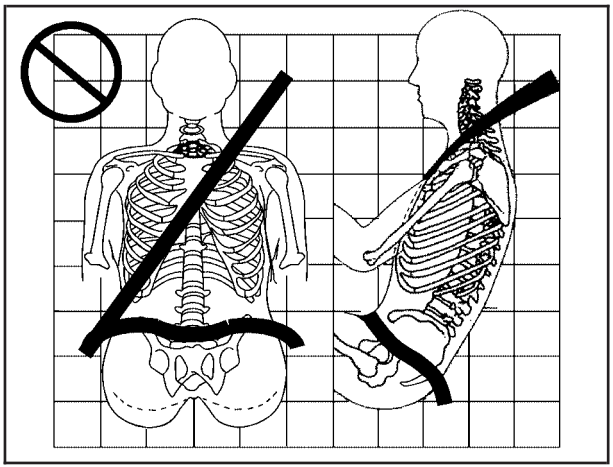


A: The shoulder belt is too loose. It will not give as much protection this way.

⚠ CAUTION:

You can be seriously hurt if your shoulder belt is too loose. In a crash, you would move forward too much, which could increase injury. The shoulder belt should fit snugly against your body.

Q: What is wrong with this?

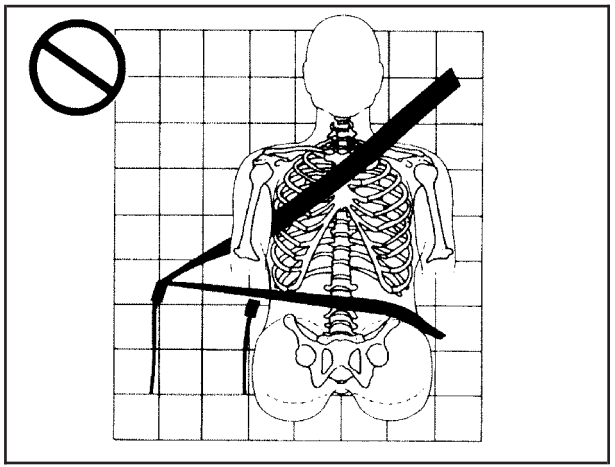


A: The lap belt is too loose. It will not give nearly as much protection this way.

⚠ CAUTION:

You can be seriously hurt if your lap belt is too loose. In a crash, you could slide under the lap belt and apply force on your abdomen. This could cause serious or even fatal injuries. The lap belt should be worn low and snug on the hips, just touching the thighs.

Q: What is wrong with this?

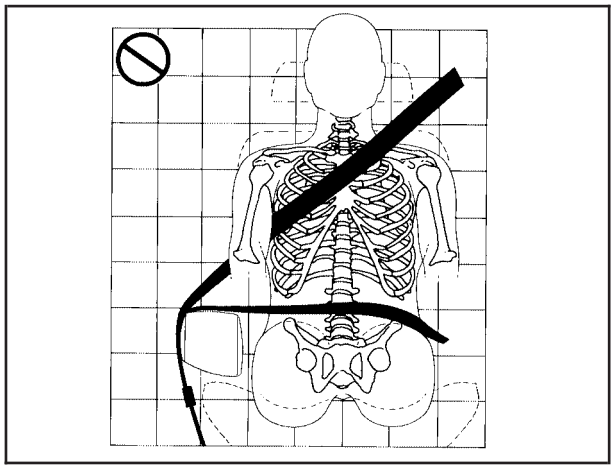


A: The belt is buckled in the wrong buckle.

⚠ CAUTION:

You can be seriously injured if your belt is buckled in the wrong place like this. In a crash, the belt would go up over your abdomen. The belt forces would be there, not on the pelvic bones. This could cause serious internal injuries. Always buckle your belt into the buckle nearest you.

Q: What is wrong with this?

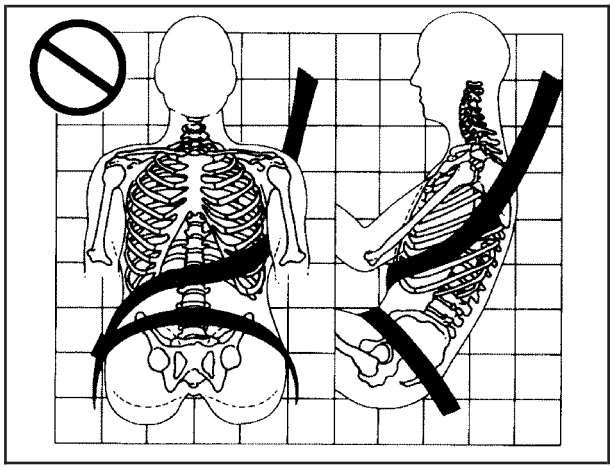


A: The belt is over an armrest.

⚠ CAUTION:

You can be seriously injured if your belt goes over an armrest like this. The belt would be much too high. In a crash, you can slide under the belt. The belt force would then be applied on the abdomen, not on the pelvic bones, and that could cause serious or fatal injuries. Be sure the belt goes under the armrests.

Q: What is wrong with this?

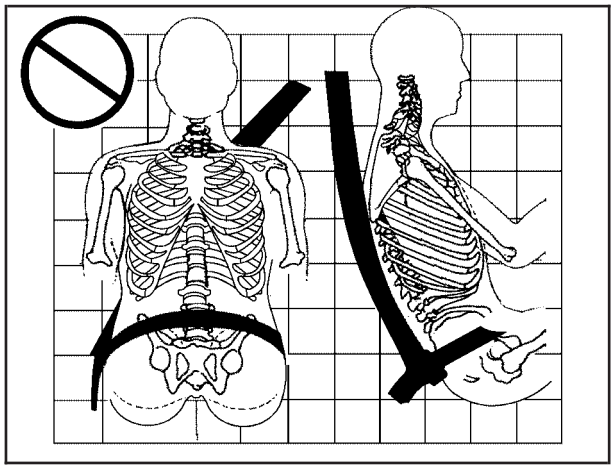


A: The shoulder belt is worn under the arm. It should be worn over the shoulder at all times.

⚠ CAUTION:

You can be seriously injured if you wear the shoulder belt under your arm. In a crash, your body would move too far forward, which would increase the chance of head and neck injury. Also, the belt would apply too much force to the ribs, which are not as strong as shoulder bones. You could also severely injure internal organs like your liver or spleen. The shoulder belt should go over the shoulder and across the chest.

Q: What is wrong with this?

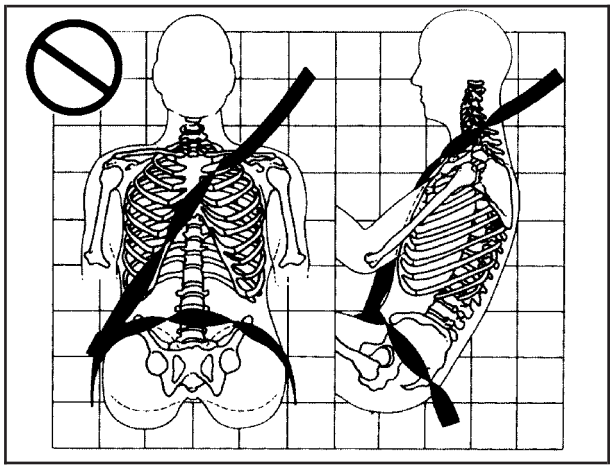


A: The belt is behind the body.

⚠ CAUTION:

You can be seriously injured by not wearing the lap-shoulder belt properly. In a crash, you would not be restrained by the shoulder belt. Your body could move too far forward increasing the chance of head and neck injury. You might also slide under the lap belt. The belt force would then be applied right on the abdomen. That could cause serious or fatal injuries. The shoulder belt should go over the shoulder and across the chest.

Q: What is wrong with this?



A: The belt is twisted across the body.

⚠ CAUTION:

You can be seriously injured by a twisted belt. In a crash, you would not have the full width of the belt to spread impact forces. If a belt is twisted, make it straight so it can work properly, or ask your dealer/retailer to fix it.

Lap-Shoulder Belt

All seating positions in the vehicle have a lap-shoulder belt.

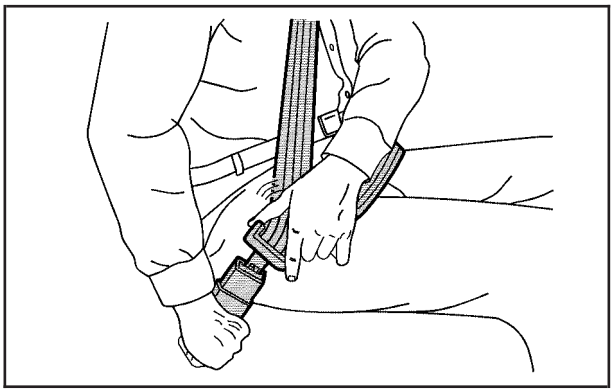
The following instructions explain how to wear a lap-shoulder belt properly.

1. Adjust the seat, if the seat is adjustable, so you can sit up straight. To see how, see “Seats” in the Index.
2. Pick up the latch plate and pull the belt across you. Do not let it get twisted.

   The lap-shoulder belt may lock if you pull the belt across you very quickly. If this happens, let the belt go back slightly to unlock it. Then pull the belt across you more slowly.

   If the shoulder portion of a passenger belt is pulled out all the way, the child restraint locking feature may be engaged. If this happens, just let the belt go back all the way and start again.

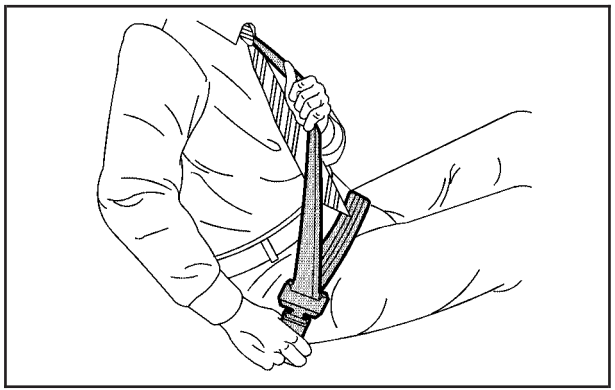
   Engaging the child restraint locking feature in the right front seating position may affect the passenger sensing system. See *Passenger Sensing System on page 1-65* for more information.

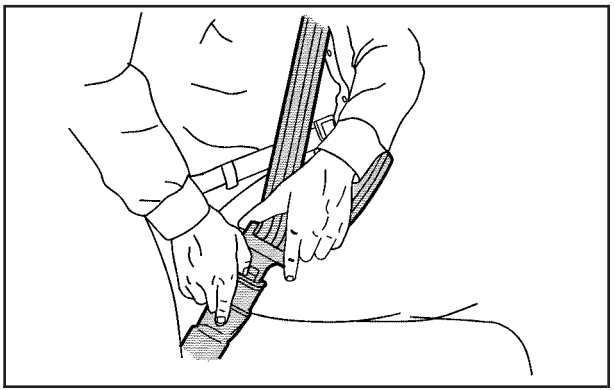


3. Push the latch plate into the buckle until it clicks.

   Pull up on the latch plate to make sure it is secure. If the belt is not long enough, see *Safety Belt Extender on page 1-29*.

   Position the release button on the buckle so that the safety belt could be quickly unbuckled if necessary.
4. If equipped with a shoulder belt height adjuster, move it to the height that is right for you. Improper shoulder belt height adjustment could reduce the effectiveness of the safety belt in a crash. See “Shoulder Belt Height Adjustment” later in this section for instruction on use and important safety information.





5. To make the lap part tight, pull up on the shoulder belt.

   It may be necessary to pull stitching on the safety belt through the latch plate to fully tighten the lap belt on smaller occupants.

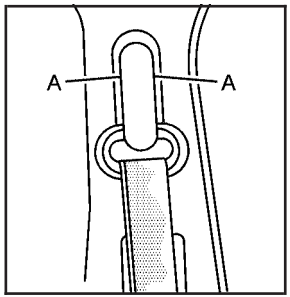
To unlatch the belt, push the button on the buckle. The belt should return to its stowed position. Slide the latch plate up the safety belt webbing when the safety belt is not in use. The latch plate should rest on the stitching on the safety belt, near the guide loop on the side wall.

Before a door is closed, be sure the safety belt is out of the way. If a door is slammed against a safety belt, damage can occur to both the safety belt and the vehicle.

Shoulder Belt Height Adjuster

Your vehicle has a shoulder belt height adjuster for the driver and right front passenger position.

Adjust the height so that the shoulder portion of the belt is centered on the shoulder. The belt should be away from the face and neck, but not falling off of the shoulder. Improper shoulder belt height adjustment could reduce the effectiveness of the safety belt in a crash.



Squeeze the buttons (A) on the sides of the height adjuster and move the height adjuster to the desired position.

After the adjuster is set to the desired position, try to move it down without squeezing the buttons to make sure it has locked into position.

Safety Belt Pretensioners

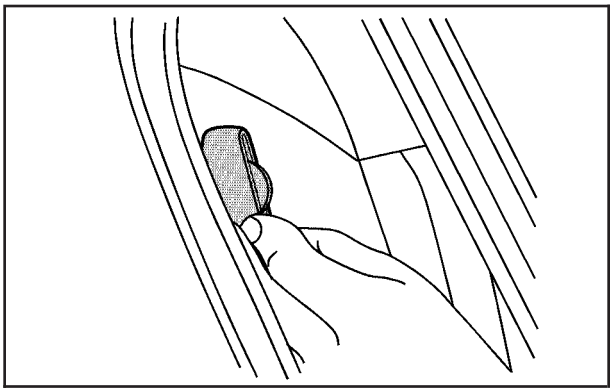
This vehicle has safety belt pretensioners for the front outboard occupants. Although the safety belt pretensioners cannot be seen, they are part of the safety belt assembly. They can help tighten the safety belts during the early stages of a moderate to severe frontal and near frontal crash if the threshold conditions for pretensioner activation are met. And, if the vehicle has side impact airbags, safety belt pretensioners can help tighten the safety belts in a side crash.

Pretensioners work only once. If they activate in a crash, they will need to be replaced, and probably other new parts for the vehicle's safety belt system. See *Replacing Restraint System Parts After a Crash on page 1-73*.

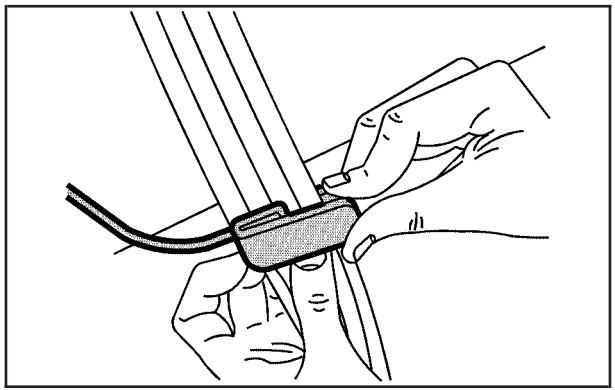
Rear Safety Belt Comfort Guides

Rear shoulder belt comfort guides may provide added safety belt comfort for older children who have outgrown booster seats and for some adults. When installed on a shoulder belt, the comfort guide positions the belt away from the neck and head.

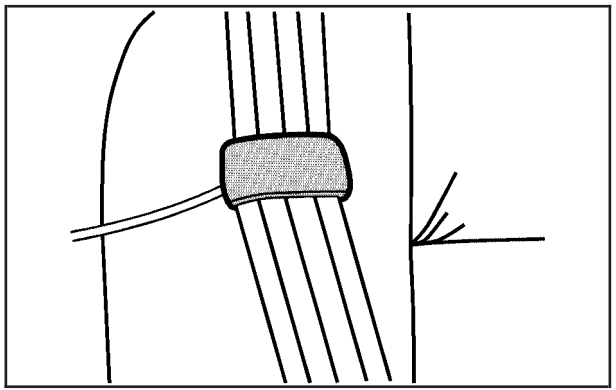
There is one guide for each outboard passenger position in the rear seat. Here is how to install a comfort guide to the safety belt:



1. Pull the elastic cord out from between the edge of the seatback and the interior body to remove the guide from its storage clip.



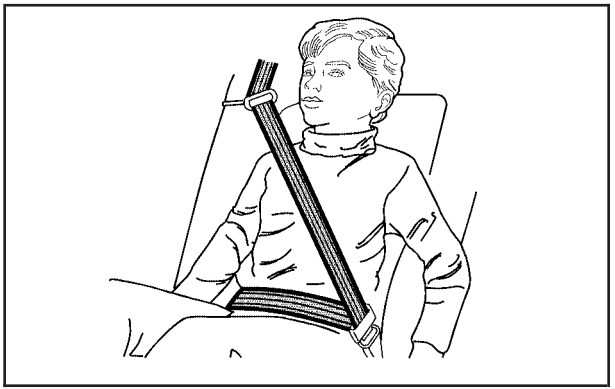
2. Place the guide over the belt and insert the two edges of the belt into the slots of the guide.



3. Be sure that the belt is not twisted and it lies flat. The elastic cord must be under the belt and the guide on top.

⚠ CAUTION:

A safety belt that is not properly worn may not provide the protection needed in a crash. The person wearing the belt could be seriously injured. The shoulder belt should go over the shoulder and across the chest. These parts of the body are best able to take belt restraining forces.

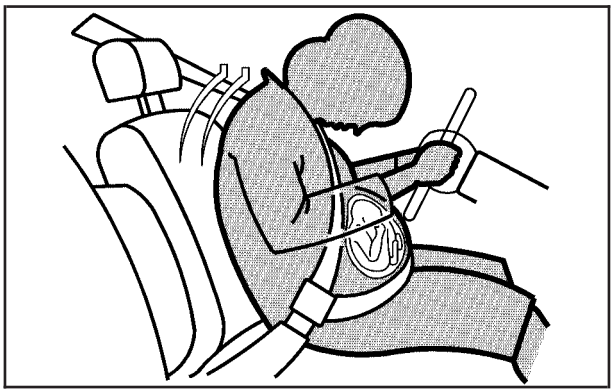


4. Buckle, position, and release the safety belt as described previously in this section. Make sure that the shoulder belt crosses the shoulder.

To remove and store the comfort guide, squeeze the belt edges together so that the safety belt can be removed from the guide. Pull the guide upward to expose its storage clip, and then slide the guide onto the clip. Turn the guide and clip inward and slide them in between the seatback and the interior body, leaving only the loop of the elastic cord exposed.

Safety Belt Use During Pregnancy

Safety belts work for everyone, including pregnant women. Like all occupants, they are more likely to be seriously injured if they do not wear safety belts.



A pregnant woman should wear a lap-shoulder belt, and the lap portion should be worn as low as possible, below the rounding, throughout the pregnancy.

The best way to protect the fetus is to protect the mother. When a safety belt is worn properly, it is more likely that the fetus will not be hurt in a crash. For pregnant women, as for anyone, the key to making safety belts effective is wearing them properly.

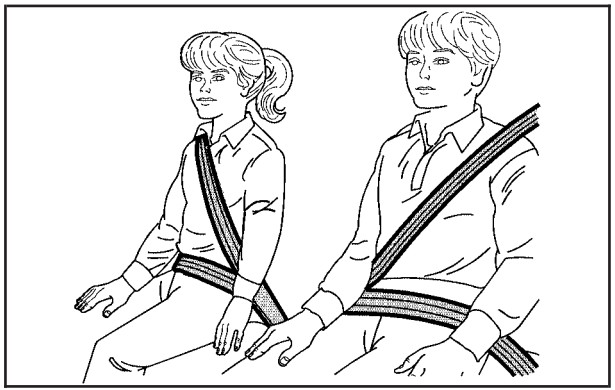
Safety Belt Extender

If the vehicle's safety belt will fasten around you, you should use it.

But if a safety belt is not long enough, your dealer/retailer will order you an extender. When you go in to order it, take the heaviest coat you will wear, so the extender will be long enough for you. To help avoid personal injury, do not let someone else use it, and use it only for the seat it is made to fit. The extender has been designed for adults. Never use it for securing child seats. To wear it, attach it to the regular safety belt. For more information, see the instruction sheet that comes with the extender.

Child Restraints

Older Children



Older children who have outgrown booster seats should wear the vehicle's safety belts.

The manufacturer's instructions that come with the booster seat state the weight and height limitations for that booster. Use a booster seat with a lap-shoulder belt until the child passes the below fit test:

- Sit all the way back on the seat. Do the knees bend at the seat edge? If yes, continue. If no, return to the booster seat.
- Buckle the lap-shoulder belt. Does the shoulder belt rest on the shoulder? If yes, continue. If no, try using the rear safety belt comfort guide. See "Rear Safety Belt Comfort Guides" under *Lap-Shoulder Belt on page 1-23* for more information. If the shoulder belt still does not rest on the shoulder, then return to the booster seat.
- Does the lap belt fit low and snug on the hips, touching the thighs? If yes, continue. If no, return to the booster seat.
- Can proper safety belt fit be maintained for the length of the trip? If yes, continue. If no, return to the booster seat.
- If you have the choice, a child should sit in a position with a lap-shoulder belt and get the additional restraint a shoulder belt can provide.

Q: What is the proper way to wear safety belts?

A: An older child should wear a lap-shoulder belt and get the additional restraint a shoulder belt can provide. The shoulder belt should not cross the face or neck. The lap belt should fit snugly below the hips, just touching the top of the thighs. This applies belt force to the child's pelvic bones in a crash. It should never be worn over the abdomen, which could cause severe or even fatal internal injuries in a crash.

Also see "Rear Safety Belt Comfort Guides" under *Lap-Shoulder Belt on page 1-23*.

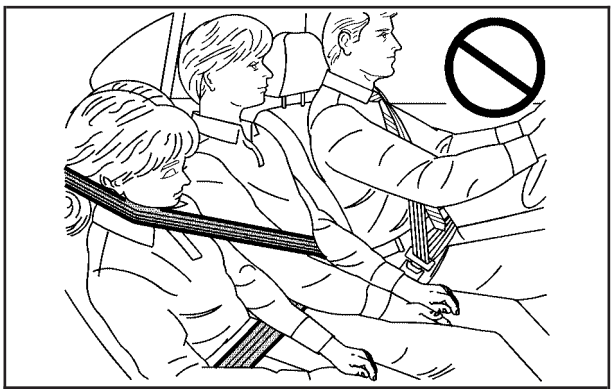
According to accident statistics, children and infants are safer when properly restrained in a child restraint system or infant restraint system secured in a rear seating position.

In a crash, children who are not buckled up can strike other people who are buckled up, or can be thrown out of the vehicle. Older children need to use safety belts properly.

⚠ CAUTION:

Never do this.

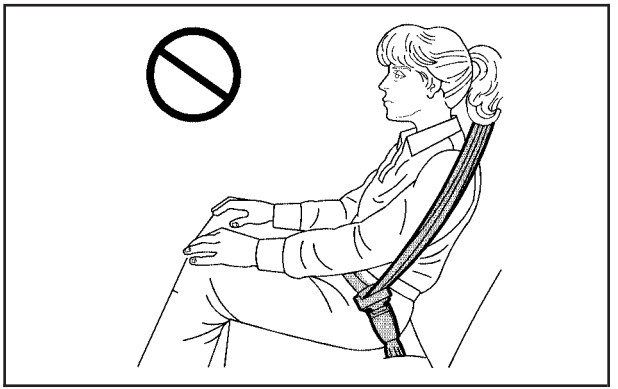
Never allow two children to wear the same safety belt. The safety belt can not properly spread the impact forces. In a crash, the two children can be crushed together and seriously injured. A safety belt must be used by only one person at a time.



⚠ CAUTION:

Never do this.

Never allow a child to wear the safety belt with the shoulder belt behind their back. A child can be seriously injured by not wearing the lap-shoulder belt properly. In a crash, the child would not be restrained by the shoulder belt. The child could move too far forward increasing the chance of head and neck injury. The child might also slide under the lap belt. The belt force would then be applied right on the abdomen. That could cause serious or fatal injuries. The shoulder belt should go over the shoulder and across the chest.



Infants and Young Children

Everyone in a vehicle needs protection! This includes infants and all other children. Neither the distance traveled nor the age and size of the traveler changes the need, for everyone, to use safety restraints. In fact, the law in every state in the United States and in every Canadian province says children up to some age must be restrained while in a vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION:

Children can be seriously injured or strangled if a shoulder belt is wrapped around their neck and the safety belt continues to tighten. Never leave children unattended in a vehicle and never allow children to play with the safety belts.

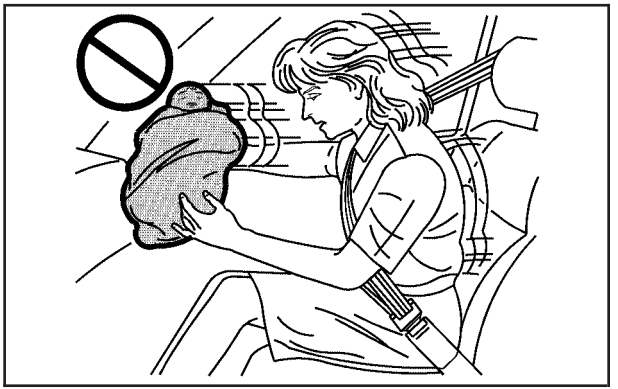
Airbags plus lap-shoulder belts offer protection for adults and older children, but not for young children and infants. Neither the vehicle's safety belt system nor its airbag system is designed for them. Every time infants and young children ride in vehicles, they should have the protection provided by appropriate child restraints.

Children who are not restrained properly can strike other people, or can be thrown out of the vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION:

Never do this.

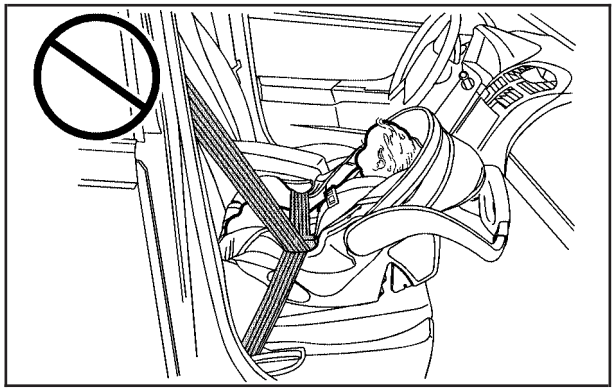
Never hold an infant or a child while riding in a vehicle. Due to crash forces, an infant or a child will become so heavy it is not possible to hold it during a crash. For example, in a crash at only 25 mph (40 km/h), a 12 lb (5.5 kg) infant will suddenly become a 240 lb (110 kg) force on a person's arms. An infant should be secured in an appropriate restraint.



⚠ CAUTION:

Never do this.

Children who are up against, or very close to, any airbag when it inflates can be seriously injured or killed. Never put a rear-facing child restraint in the right front seat. Secure a rear-facing child restraint in a rear seat. It is also better to secure a forward-facing child restraint in a rear seat. If you must secure a forward-facing child restraint in the right front seat, always move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go.



Q: What are the different types of add-on child restraints?

A: Add-on child restraints, which are purchased by the vehicle's owner, are available in four basic types. Selection of a particular restraint should take into consideration not only the child's weight, height, and age but also whether or not the restraint will be compatible with the motor vehicle in which it will be used.

For most basic types of child restraints, there are many different models available. When purchasing a child restraint, be sure it is designed to be used in a motor vehicle. If it is, the restraint will have a label saying that it meets federal motor vehicle safety standards.

The restraint manufacturer's instructions that come with the restraint state the weight and height limitations for a particular child restraint. In addition, there are many kinds of restraints available for children with special needs.

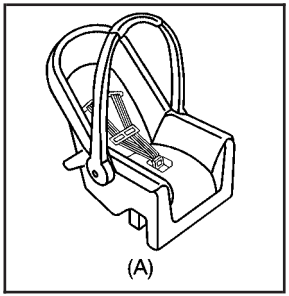
⚠ CAUTION:

To reduce the risk of neck and head injury during a crash, infants need complete support. This is because an infant's neck is not fully developed and its head weighs so much compared with the rest of its body. In a crash, an infant in a rear-facing child restraint settles into the restraint, so the crash forces can be distributed across the strongest part of an infant's body, the back and shoulders. Infants should always be secured in rear-facing child restraints.

⚠ CAUTION:

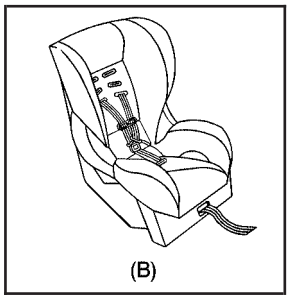
A young child's hip bones are still so small that the vehicle's regular safety belt may not remain low on the hip bones, as it should. Instead, it may settle up around the child's abdomen. In a crash, the belt would apply force on a body area that is unprotected by any bony structure. This alone could cause serious or fatal injuries. To reduce the risk of serious or fatal injuries during a crash, young children should always be secured in appropriate child restraints.

Child Restraint Systems

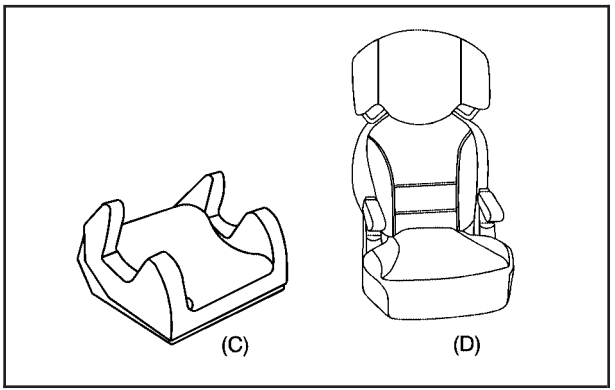


A rear-facing infant seat (A) provides restraint with the seating surface against the back of the infant.

The harness system holds the infant in place and, in a crash, acts to keep the infant positioned in the restraint.



A forward-facing child seat (B) provides restraint for the child's body with the harness.



A booster seat (C-D) is a child restraint designed to improve the fit of the vehicle's safety belt system. A booster seat can also help a child to see out the window.

Securing an Add-On Child Restraint in the Vehicle

⚠ CAUTION:

A child can be seriously injured or killed in a crash if the child restraint is not properly secured in the vehicle. Secure the child restraint properly in the vehicle using the vehicle's safety belt or LATCH system, following the instructions that came with that child restraint and the instructions in this manual.

To help reduce the chance of injury, the child restraint must be secured in the vehicle. Child restraint systems must be secured in vehicle seats by lap belts or the lap belt portion of a lap-shoulder belt, or by the LATCH system. See *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH) on page 1-43* for more information. A child can be endangered in a crash if the child restraint is not properly secured in the vehicle.

When securing an add-on child restraint, refer to the instructions that come with the restraint which may be on the restraint itself or in a booklet, or both, and to this manual. The child restraint instructions are important, so if they are not available, obtain a replacement copy from the manufacturer.

Keep in mind that an unsecured child restraint can move around in a collision or sudden stop and injure people in the vehicle. Be sure to properly secure any child restraint in the vehicle — even when no child is in it.

Securing the Child Within the Child Restraint

⚠ CAUTION:

A child can be seriously injured or killed in a crash if the child is not properly secured in the child restraint. Secure the child properly following the instructions that came with that child restraint.

Where to Put the Restraint

Accident statistics show that children are safer if they are restrained in the rear rather than the front seat.

We recommend that children and child restraints be secured in a rear seat, including: an infant or a child riding in a rear-facing child restraint; a child riding in a forward-facing child seat; an older child riding in a booster seat; and children, who are large enough, using safety belts.

A label on your sun visor says, “Never put a rear-facing child seat in the front.” This is because the risk to the rear-facing child is so great, if the airbag deploys.

⚠ CAUTION:

A child in a rear-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the right front passenger airbag inflates. This is because the back of the rear-facing child restraint would be very close to the inflating airbag. A child in a forward-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the right front passenger airbag inflates and the passenger seat is in a forward position.

CAUTION: (Continued)

CAUTION: (Continued)

Even if the passenger sensing system has turned off the right front passenger frontal airbag, no system is fail-safe. No one can guarantee that an airbag will not deploy under some unusual circumstance, even though it is turned off.

Secure rear-facing child restraints in a rear seat, even if the airbag is off. If you secure a forward-facing child restraint in the right front seat, always move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go. It is better to secure the child restraint in a rear seat.

See *Passenger Sensing System on page 1-65* for additional information.

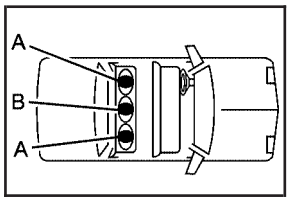
When securing a child restraint in a rear seating position, study the instructions that came with your child restraint to make sure it is compatible with this vehicle.

Wherever you install a child restraint, be sure to secure the child restraint properly.

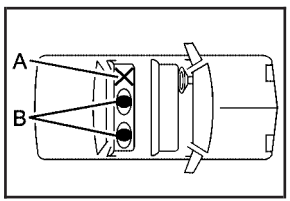
Keep in mind that an unsecured child restraint can move around in a collision or sudden stop and injure people in the vehicle. Be sure to properly secure any child restraint in your vehicle — even when no child is in it.

If you secure a child restraint in the left or center rear seat using LATCH, review the following illustrations. Depending on where you place the child restraint, you may not be able to access certain safety belt assemblies or LATCH anchors for additional passengers or child restraints.

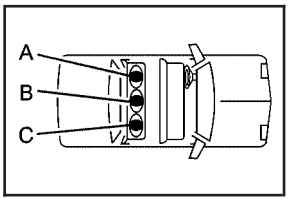
Configurations for Use of Child Restraints



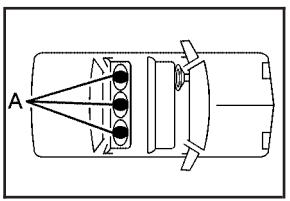
A. Child restraint using LATCH
B. Child restraint or occupant using safety belt



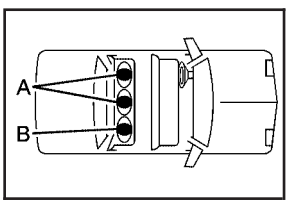
A. Occupant prohibited
B. Child restraint using LATCH



A. Child restraint using LATCH
B. Child restraint or occupant using safety belt
C. Child restraint using safety belt or LATCH or occupant using safety belt



A. Child restraint or occupant using safety belt



A. Child restraint or occupant using safety belt
B. Child restraint using LATCH

Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH)

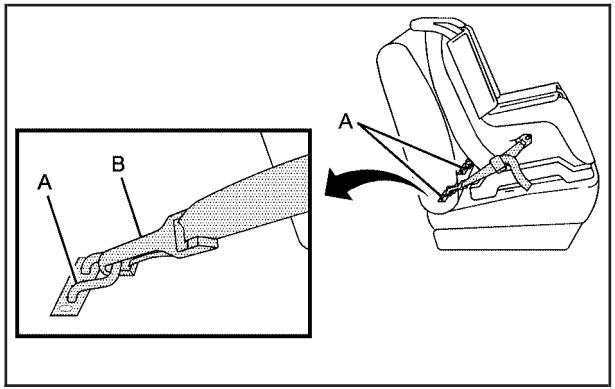
The LATCH system holds a child restraint during driving or in a crash. This system is designed to make installation of a child restraint easier. The LATCH system uses anchors in the vehicle and attachments on the child restraint that are made for use with the LATCH system.

Make sure that a LATCH-compatible child restraint is properly installed using the anchors, or use the vehicle's safety belts to secure the restraint, following the instructions that came with that restraint, and also the instructions in this manual. When installing a child restraint with a top tether, you must also use either the lower anchors or the safety belts to properly secure the child restraint. A child restraint must never be installed using only the top tether and anchor.

In order to use the LATCH system in your vehicle, you need a child restraint that has LATCH attachments. The child restraint manufacturer will provide you with instructions on how to use the child restraint and its attachments. The following explains how to attach a child restraint with these attachments in your vehicle.

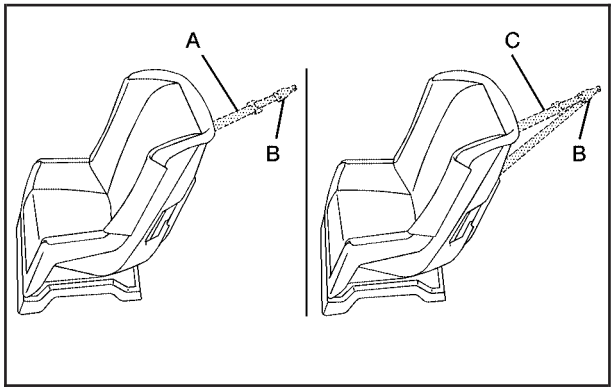
Not all vehicle seating positions or child restraints have lower anchors and attachments or top tether anchors and attachments.

Lower Anchors



Lower anchors (A) are metal bars built into the vehicle. There are two lower anchors for each LATCH seating position that will accommodate a child restraint with lower attachments (B).

Top Tether Anchor



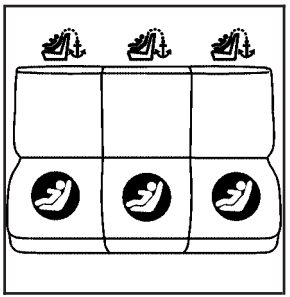
A top tether (A, C) anchors the top of the child restraint to the vehicle. A top tether anchor is built into the vehicle. The top tether attachment (B) on the child restraint connects to the top tether anchor in the vehicle in order to reduce the forward movement and rotation of the child restraint during driving or in a crash.

Your child restraint may have a single tether (A) or a dual tether (C). Either will have a single attachment (B) to secure the top tether to the anchor.

Some child restraints with top tethers are designed for use with or without the top tether being attached. Others require the top tether always to be attached. In Canada, the law requires that forward-facing child restraints have a top tether, and that the tether be attached. Be sure to read and follow the instructions for your child restraint.

If the child restraint does not have a top tether, one can be obtained, in kit form, for many child restraints. Ask the child restraint manufacturer whether or not a kit is available.

Lower Anchor and Top Tether Anchor Locations

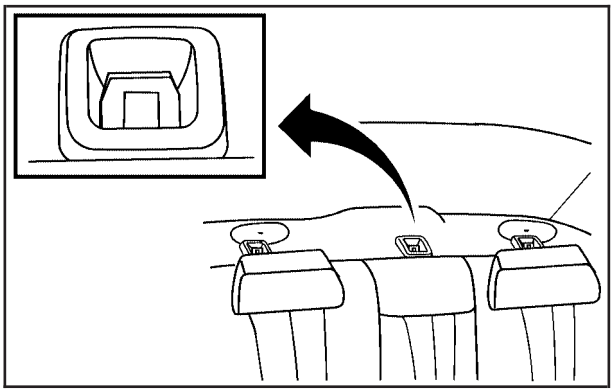


Rear Seat

(Top Tether Anchor): Seating positions with top tether anchors.

(Lower Anchor): Seating positions with two lower anchors.

To assist you in locating the lower anchors, each rear anchor position has a label, near the crease between the seatback and the seat cushion, showing where the anchors are located.



The top tether anchors are located behind the rear seat on the filler panel.

Do not secure a child restraint in a position without a top tether anchor if a national or local law requires that the top tether be attached, or if the instructions that come with the child restraint say that the top tether must be attached.

Accident statistics show that children are safer if they are restrained in the rear rather than the front seat. See *Where to Put the Restraint on page 1-40* for additional information.

Securing a Child Restraint Designed for the LATCH System

⚠ CAUTION:

If a LATCH-type child restraint is not attached to anchors, the child restraint will not be able to protect the child correctly. In a crash, the child could be seriously injured or killed. Install a LATCH-type child restraint properly using the anchors, or use the vehicle's safety belts to secure the restraint, following the instructions that came with the child restraint and the instructions in this manual.

⚠ CAUTION:

Do not attach more than one child restraint to a single anchor. Attaching more than one child restraint to a single anchor could cause the anchor or attachment to come loose or even break during a crash. A child or others could be injured. To reduce the risk of serious or fatal injuries during a crash, attach only one child restraint per anchor.

⚠ CAUTION:

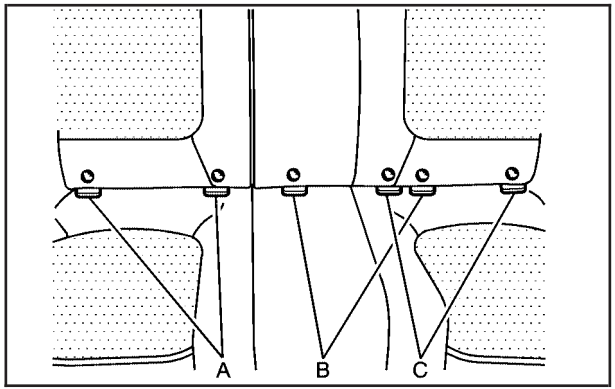
Children can be seriously injured or strangled if a shoulder belt is wrapped around their neck and the safety belt continues to tighten. Buckle any unused safety belts behind the child restraint so children cannot reach them. Pull the shoulder belt all the way out of the retractor to set the lock, if your vehicle has one, after the child restraint has been installed.

Notice: **Do not let the LATCH attachments rub against the vehicle's safety belts. This may damage these parts. If necessary, move buckled safety belts to avoid rubbing the LATCH attachments.**

Do not fold the empty rear seat with a safety belt buckled. This could damage the safety belt or the seat. Unbuckle and return the safety belt to its stowed position, before folding the seat.

If you need to secure more than one child restraint in the rear seat, see *Where to Put the Restraint on page 1-40*. Depending on where you place the child restraint, you may not be able to access certain safety belt assemblies or LATCH anchors for additional passengers or child restraints.

You cannot secure three child restraints using the LATCH anchors in the rear seat at the same time, but you can install two of them. If you want to do this, install one LATCH child restraint in the passenger-side position, and install the other one either in the driver-side position or in the center position. Refer to the following illustration to learn which anchors to use.



A. Passenger Side Rear Seat Lower Anchors

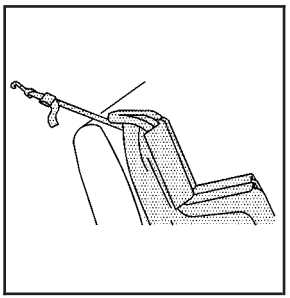
B. Center Rear Seat Lower Anchors

C. Driver Side Rear Seat Lower Anchors

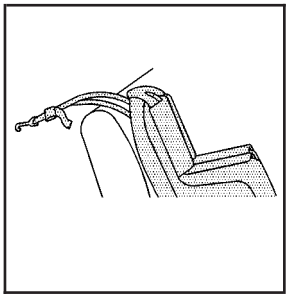
Make sure to attach the child restraint at the proper anchor location.

This system is designed to make installation of child restraints easier. When using lower anchors, do not use the vehicle's safety belts. Instead use the vehicle's anchors and child restraint attachments to secure the restraints. Some restraints also use another vehicle anchor to secure a top tether.

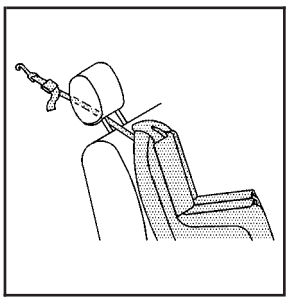
1. Attach and tighten the lower attachments to the lower anchors. If the child restraint does not have lower attachments or the desired seating position does not have lower anchors, secure the child restraint with the top tether and the safety belts. Refer to your child restraint manufacturer instructions and the instructions in this manual.
   1.1. Find the lower anchors for the desired seating position.
   1.2. Put the child restraint on the seat.
   1.3. Attach and tighten the lower attachments on the child restraint to the lower anchors.
2. If the child restraint manufacturer recommends that the top tether be attached, attach and tighten the top tether to the top tether anchor, if equipped. Refer to the child restraint instructions and the following steps:
   2.1. Find the top tether anchor.
   2.2. If the position you are using has an adjustable headrest or head restraint, raise it. See *Head Restraints on page 1-7*.
   2.3. Route, attach, and tighten the top tether according to the child restraint instructions and the following instructions:



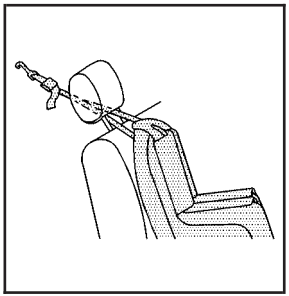
If the position you are using does not have a headrest or head restraint and you are using a single tether, route the tether over the seatback.



If the position you are using does not have a headrest or head restraint and you are using a dual tether, route the tether over the seatback.



If the position you are using has an adjustable headrest or head restraint and you are using a single tether, route the tether under the headrest or head restraint and in between the headrest or head restraint posts. See *Head Restraints on page 1-7*.



If the position you are using has an adjustable headrest or head restraint and you are using a dual tether route the tether under the headrest or head restraint and in between the headrest or head restraint posts. See *Head Restraints on page 1-7*.

3. Push and pull the child restraint in different directions to be sure it is secure.

Securing a Child Restraint in a Rear Seat Position

When securing a child restraint in a rear seating position, study the instructions that came with the child restraint to make sure it is compatible with this vehicle.

If the child restraint has the LATCH system, see *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH) on page 1-43* for how and where to install the child restraint using LATCH. If a child restraint is secured in the vehicle using a safety belt and it uses a top tether, see *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH) on page 1-43* for top tether anchor locations.

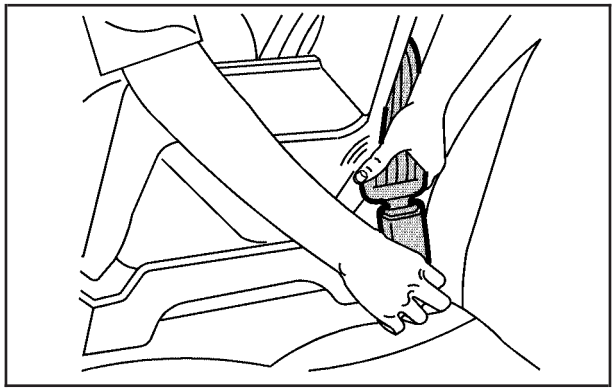
Do not secure a child seat in a position without a top tether anchor if a national or local law requires that the top tether be anchored, or if the instructions that come with the child restraint say that the top strap must be anchored.

In Canada, the law requires that forward-facing child restraints have a top tether, and that the tether be attached.

If the child restraint does not have the LATCH system, you will be using the safety belt to secure the child restraint in this position. Be sure to follow the instructions that came with the child restraint. Secure the child in the child restraint when and as the instructions say.

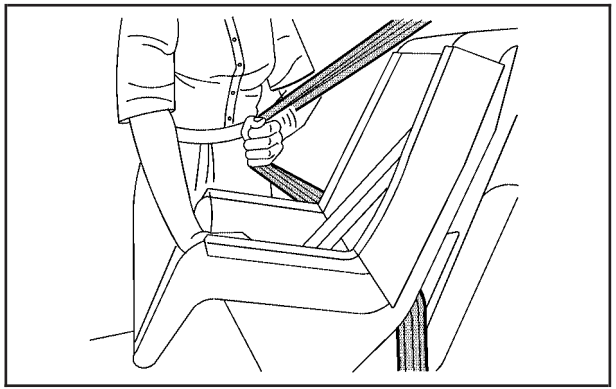
If more than one child restraint needs to be installed in the rear seat, be sure to read *Where to Put the Restraint on page 1-40*.

1. Put the child restraint on the seat.
2. Pick up the latch plate, and run the lap and shoulder portions of the vehicle's safety belt through or around the restraint. The child restraint instructions will show you how.

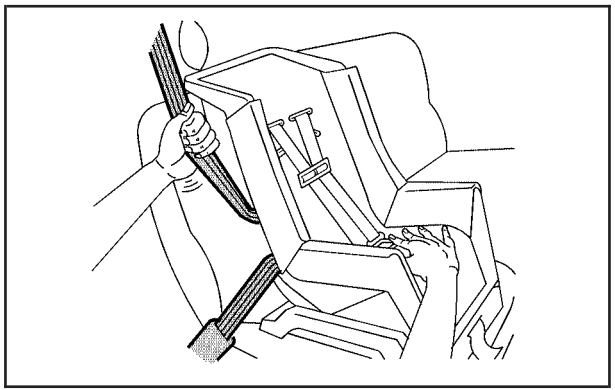


3. Push the latch plate into the buckle until it clicks.

   Position the release button on the buckle so that the safety belt could be quickly unbuckled if necessary.



4. Pull the rest of the shoulder belt all the way out of the retractor to set the lock.



5. To tighten the belt, push down on the child restraint, pull the shoulder portion of the belt to tighten the lap portion of the belt and feed the shoulder belt back into the retractor. When installing a forward-facing child restraint, it may be helpful to use your knee to push down on the child restraint as you tighten the belt.
6. If the child restraint has a top tether, follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions regarding the use of the top tether. See *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH) on page 1-43* for more information.
7. Push and pull the child restraint in different directions to be sure it is secure.

To remove the child restraint, unbuckle the vehicle safety belt and let it return to the stowed position. If the top tether is attached to a top tether anchor, disconnect it.

Securing a Child Restraint in the Right Front Seat Position

This vehicle has airbags. A rear seat is a safer place to secure a forward-facing child restraint. See *Where to Put the Restraint on page 1-40*.

In addition, the vehicle has a passenger sensing system which is designed to turn off the right front passenger frontal airbag and seat-mounted side impact airbag under certain conditions. See *Passenger Sensing System on page 1-65* and *Passenger Airbag Status Indicator on page 3-31* for more information, including important safety information.

A label on the sun visor says, “Never put a rear-facing child seat in the front.” This is because the risk to the rear-facing child is so great, if the airbag deploys.

⚠ CAUTION:

A child in a rear-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the right front passenger airbag inflates. This is because the back of the rear-facing child restraint would be very close to the inflating airbag. A child in a forward-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the right front passenger airbag inflates and the passenger seat is in a forward position.

Even if the passenger sensing system has turned off the right front passenger frontal airbag, no system is fail-safe. No one can guarantee that an airbag will not deploy under some unusual circumstance, even though it is turned off.

CAUTION: (Continued)

CAUTION: (Continued)

Secure rear-facing child restraints in a rear seat, even if the airbag is off. If you secure a forward-facing child restraint in the right front seat, always move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go. It is better to secure the child restraint in a rear seat.

See *Passenger Sensing System on page 1-65* for additional information.

If the child restraint has the LATCH system, see *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH) on page 1-43* for how and where to install the child restraint using LATCH. If a child restraint is secured using a safety belt and it uses a top tether, see *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH) on page 1-43* for top tether anchor locations.

Do not secure a child seat in a position without a top tether anchor if a national or local law requires that the top tether be anchored, or if the instructions that come with the child restraint say that the top strap must be anchored.

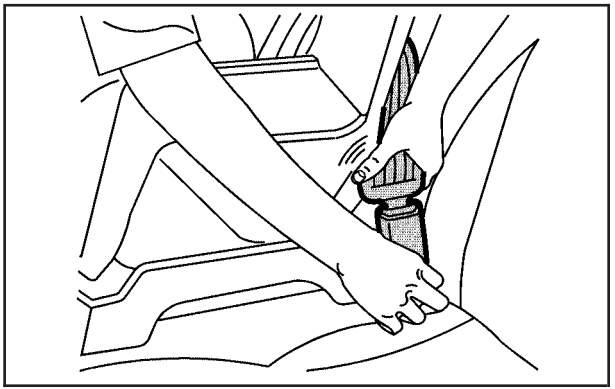
In Canada, the law requires that forward-facing child restraints have a top tether, and that the tether be attached.

You will be using the lap-shoulder belt to secure the child restraint in this position. Follow the instructions that came with the child restraint.

1. Move the seat as far back as it will go before securing the forward-facing child restraint.

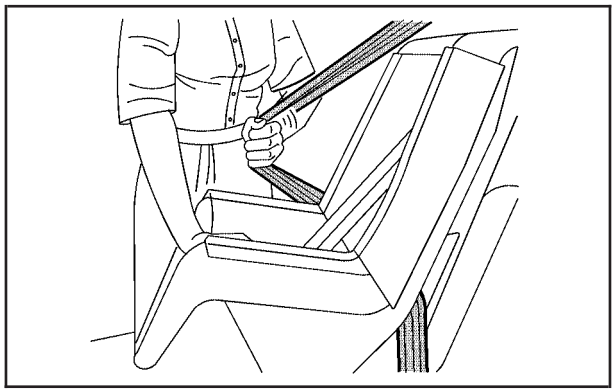
   When the passenger sensing system has turned off the right front passenger frontal airbag and seat-mounted side impact airbag, the off indicator on the passenger airbag status indicator should light and stay lit when you start the vehicle. See *Passenger Airbag Status Indicator on page 3-31*.

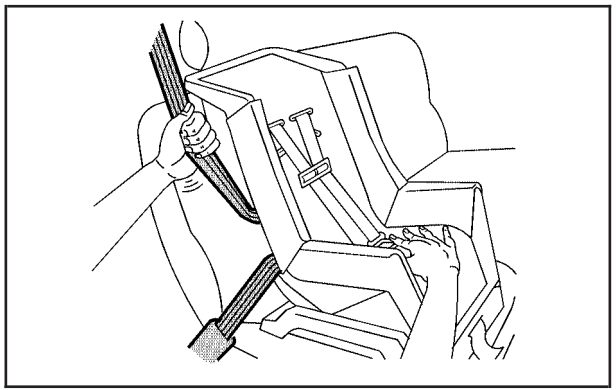
2. Put the child restraint on the seat.
3. Pick up the latch plate, and run the lap and shoulder portions of the vehicle's safety belt through or around the restraint. The child restraint instructions will show you how.



4. Push the latch plate into the buckle until it clicks.

   Position the release button on the buckle so that the safety belt could be quickly unbuckled if necessary.





5. Pull the rest of the shoulder belt all the way out of the retractor to set the lock.
6. To tighten the belt, push down on the child restraint, pull the shoulder portion of the belt to tighten the lap portion of the belt and feed the shoulder belt back into the retractor. When installing a forward-facing child restraint, it may be helpful to use your knee to push down on the child restraint as you tighten the belt.
7. Push and pull the child restraint in different directions to be sure it is secure.

If the airbags are off, the off indicator in the passenger airbag status indicator will come on and stay on when the vehicle is started.

If a child restraint has been installed and the on indicator is lit, see “If the On Indicator is Lit for a Child Restraint ” under *Passenger Sensing System on page 1-65* for more information.

To remove the child restraint, unbuckle the vehicle safety belt and let it return to the stowed position.

Airbag System

The vehicle has the following airbags:

- A frontal airbag for the driver.
- A frontal airbag for the right front passenger.
- A seat-mounted side impact airbag for the driver.
- A seat-mounted side impact airbag for the right front passenger.
- A roof-rail airbag for the driver and the passenger seated directly behind the driver.
- A roof-rail airbag for the right front passenger and the passenger seated directly behind the right front passenger.

All of the airbags in your vehicle will have the word AIRBAG embossed in the trim or on an attached label near the deployment opening.

For frontal airbags, the word AIRBAG will appear on the middle part of the steering wheel for the driver and on the instrument panel for the right front passenger.

With seat-mounted side impact airbags, the word AIRBAG will appear on the side of the seatback closest to the door.

With roof-rail airbags, the word AIRBAG will appear along the headliner or trim.

Airbags are designed to supplement the protection provided by safety belts. Even though today’s airbags are also designed to help reduce the risk of injury from the force of an inflating bag, all airbags must inflate very quickly to do their job.

Here are the most important things to know about the airbag system:

⚠ CAUTION:

You can be severely injured or killed in a crash if you are not wearing your safety belt — even if you have airbags. Airbags are designed to work with safety belts, but do not replace them. Also, airbags are not designed to deploy in every crash. In some crashes safety belts are your only restraint. See *When Should an Airbag Inflate? on page 1-61*.

Wearing your safety belt during a crash helps reduce your chance of hitting things inside the vehicle or being ejected from it. Airbags are "supplemental restraints" to the safety belts. Everyone in your vehicle should wear a safety belt properly — whether or not there is an airbag for that person.

⚠ CAUTION:

Airbags inflate with great force, faster than the blink of an eye. Anyone who is up against, or very close to, any airbag when it inflates can be seriously injured or killed. Do not sit unnecessarily close to the airbag, as you would be if you were sitting on the edge of your seat or leaning forward. Safety belts help keep you in position before and during a crash. Always wear your safety belt, even with airbags. The driver should sit as far back as possible while still maintaining control of the vehicle.

Occupants should not lean on or sleep against the door or side windows in seating positions with seat-mounted side impact airbags and/or roof-rail airbags.

⚠ CAUTION:

Children who are up against, or very close to, any airbag when it inflates can be seriously injured or killed. Airbags plus lap-shoulder belts offer protection for adults and older children, but not for young children and infants. Neither the vehicle's safety belt system nor its airbag system is designed for them. Young children and infants need the protection that a child restraint system can provide. Always secure children properly in your vehicle. To read how, see *Older Children on page 1-30* or *Infants and Young Children on page 1-33*.

There is an airbag readiness light on the instrument panel cluster, which shows the airbag symbol.

The system checks the airbag electrical system for malfunctions. The light tells you if there is an electrical problem. See *Airbag Readiness Light on page 3-30* for more information.

Where Are the Airbags?

The driver's frontal airbag is in the middle of the steering wheel.

The right front passenger's frontal airbag is in the instrument panel on the passenger's side.

Driver Side shown, Passenger Side similar

The seat-mounted side impact airbags for the driver and right front passenger are in the side of the seatbacks closest to the door.

Driver Side shown, Passenger Side similar

The roof-rail airbags for the driver, right front passenger, and second row outboard passengers are in the ceiling above the side windows.

⚠ CAUTION:

If something is between an occupant and an airbag, the airbag might not inflate properly or it might force the object into that person causing severe injury or even death. The path of an inflating airbag must be kept clear. Do not put anything between an occupant and an airbag, and do not attach or put anything on the steering wheel hub or on or near any other airbag covering.

Do not use seat accessories that block the inflation path of a seat-mounted side impact airbag.

Never secure anything to the roof of a vehicle with roof-rail airbags by routing a rope or tie down through any door or window opening. If you do, the path of an inflating roof-rail airbag will be blocked.

When Should an Airbag Inflate?

Frontal airbags are designed to inflate in moderate to severe frontal or near-frontal crashes to help reduce the potential for severe injuries mainly to the driver's or right front passenger's head and chest. However, they are only designed to inflate if the impact exceeds a predetermined deployment threshold. Deployment thresholds are used to predict how severe a crash is likely to be in time for the airbags to inflate and help restrain the occupants.

Whether the frontal airbags will or should deploy is not based on how fast your vehicle is traveling. It depends largely on what you hit, the direction of the impact, and how quickly your vehicle slows down.

Frontal airbags may inflate at different crash speeds. For example:

- If the vehicle hits a stationary object, the airbags could inflate at a different crash speed than if the vehicle hits a moving object.
- If the vehicle hits an object that deforms, the airbags could inflate at a different crash speed than if the vehicle hits an object that does not deform.
- If the vehicle hits a narrow object (like a pole), the airbags could inflate at a different crash speed than if the vehicle hits a wide object (like a wall).
- If the vehicle goes into an object at an angle, the airbags could inflate at a different crash speed than if the vehicle goes straight into the object.

Thresholds can also vary with specific vehicle design.

Frontal airbags are not intended to inflate during vehicle rollovers, rear impacts, or in many side impacts.

In addition, the vehicle has dual-stage frontal airbags. Dual-stage airbags adjust the restraint according to crash severity. The vehicle has electronic frontal sensors, which help the sensing system distinguish between a moderate frontal impact and a more severe frontal impact. For moderate frontal impacts, dual-stage airbags inflate at a level less than full deployment. For more severe frontal impacts, full deployment occurs.

The vehicle has seat-mounted side impact and roof-rail airbags. See *Airbag System on page 1-56*. Seat-mounted side impact and roof-rail airbags are intended to inflate in moderate to severe side crashes. Seat-mounted side impact and roof-rail airbags will inflate if the crash severity is above the system's designed threshold level. The threshold level can vary with specific vehicle design.

Seat-mounted side impact and roof-rail airbags are not intended to inflate in frontal impacts, near-frontal impacts, rollovers, or rear impacts. A seat-mounted side impact airbag is intended to deploy on the side of the vehicle that is struck. A roof-rail airbag is intended to deploy on the side of the vehicle that is struck.

In any particular crash, no one can say whether an airbag should have inflated simply because of the damage to a vehicle or because of what the repair costs were. For frontal airbags, inflation is determined by what the vehicle hits, the angle of the impact, and how quickly the vehicle slows down. For seat-mounted side impact and roof-rail airbags, deployment is determined by the location and severity of the side impact.

What Makes an Airbag Inflate?

In a deployment event, the sensing system sends an electrical signal triggering a release of gas from the inflator. Gas from the inflator fills the airbag causing the bag to break out of the cover and deploy. The inflator, the airbag, and related hardware are all part of the airbag module.

Frontal airbag modules are located inside the steering wheel and instrument panel. For vehicles with seat-mounted side impact airbags, there are airbag modules in the side of the front seatbacks closest to the door. For vehicles with roof-rail airbags, there are airbag modules in the ceiling of the vehicle, near the side windows that have occupant seating positions.

How Does an Airbag Restrain?

In moderate to severe frontal or near frontal collisions, even belted occupants can contact the steering wheel or the instrument panel. In moderate to severe side collisions, even belted occupants can contact the inside of the vehicle.

Airbags supplement the protection provided by safety belts. Frontal airbags distribute the force of the impact more evenly over the occupant's upper body, stopping the occupant more gradually. Seat-mounted side impact and roof-rail airbags distribute the force of the impact more evenly over the occupant's upper body.

But airbags would not help in many types of collisions, primarily because the occupant's motion is not toward those airbags. See *When Should an Airbag Inflate? on page 1-61* for more information.

Airbags should never be regarded as anything more than a supplement to safety belts.

What Will You See After an Airbag Inflates?

After the frontal airbags and seat-mounted side impact airbags inflate, they quickly deflate, so quickly that some people may not even realize an airbag inflated. Roof-rail airbags may still be at least partially inflated for some time after they deploy. Some components of the airbag module may be hot for several minutes. For location of the airbag modules, see *What Makes an Airbag Inflate? on page 1-63*.

The parts of the airbag that come into contact with you may be warm, but not too hot to touch. There may be some smoke and dust coming from the vents in the deflated airbags. Airbag inflation does not prevent the driver from seeing out of the windshield or being able to steer the vehicle, nor does it prevent people from leaving the vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION:

When an airbag inflates, there may be dust in the air. This dust could cause breathing problems for people with a history of asthma or other breathing trouble. To avoid this, everyone in the vehicle should get out as soon as it is safe to do so. If you have breathing problems but cannot get out of the vehicle after an airbag inflates, then get fresh air by opening a window or a door. If you experience breathing problems following an airbag deployment, you should seek medical attention.

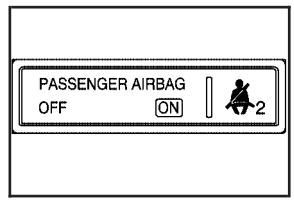
The vehicle has a feature that may automatically unlock the doors, turn the interior lamps on, and turn the hazard warning flashers on when the airbags inflate. You can lock the doors, turn the interior lamps off, and turn the hazard warning flashers off by using the controls for those features.

In many crashes severe enough to inflate the airbag, windshields are broken by vehicle deformation. Additional windshield breakage may also occur from the right front passenger airbag.

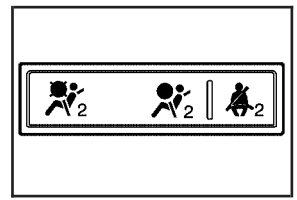
- Airbags are designed to inflate only once. After an airbag inflates, you will need some new parts for the airbag system. If you do not get them, the airbag system will not be there to help protect you in another crash. A new system will include airbag modules and possibly other parts. The service manual for your vehicle covers the need to replace other parts.
- The vehicle has a crash sensing and diagnostic module which records information after a crash. See *Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy on page 7-16* and *Event Data Recorders on page 7-17*.
- Let only qualified technicians work on the airbag systems. Improper service can mean that an airbag system will not work properly. See your dealer/retailer for service.

Passenger Sensing System

The vehicle has a passenger sensing system for the right front passenger position. The passenger airbag status indicator will be visible on the instrument panel when the vehicle is started.



United States



Canada

The words ON and OFF, or the symbol for on and off, are visible during the system check. If you are using remote start, if equipped, to start the vehicle from a distance, you may not see the system check. When the system check is complete, either the word ON or OFF, or the symbol for on or off, will be visible. See *Passenger Airbag Status Indicator on page 3-31*.

The passenger sensing system turns off the right front passenger frontal airbag and seat-mounted side impact airbag under certain conditions. The driver airbags and the roof-rail airbags are not affected by the passenger sensing system.

The passenger sensing system works with sensors that are part of the right front passenger seat. The sensors are designed to detect the presence of a properly-seated occupant and determine if the right front passenger frontal airbag and seat-mounted side impact airbag should be enabled (may inflate) or not.

According to accident statistics, children are safer when properly secured in a rear seat in the correct child restraint for their weight and size.

We recommend that children be secured in a rear seat, including: an infant or a child riding in a rear-facing child restraint; a child riding in a forward-facing child seat; an older child riding in a booster seat; and children, who are large enough, using safety belts.

A label on the sun visor says, “Never put a rear-facing child seat in the front.” This is because the risk to the rear-facing child is so great, if the airbag deploys.

⚠ CAUTION:

A child in a rear-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the right front passenger airbag inflates. This is because the back of the rear-facing child restraint would be very close to the inflating airbag. A child in a forward-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the right front passenger airbag inflates and the passenger seat is in a forward position.

Even if the passenger sensing system has turned off the right front passenger frontal airbag and seat-mounted side impact airbag (if equipped), no system is fail-safe. No one can guarantee that an airbag will not deploy under some unusual circumstance, even though the airbag(s) are off.

Secure rear-facing child restraints in a rear seat, even if the airbag(s) are off. If you secure a forward-facing child restraint in the right front seat, always move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go. It is better to secure the child restraint in a rear seat.

The passenger sensing system is designed to turn off the right front passenger airbag and seat-mounted side impact airbag if:

- The right front passenger seat is unoccupied.
- The system determines that an infant is present in a rear-facing infant seat.
- The system determines that a small child is present in a child restraint.
- The system determines that a small child is present in a booster seat.
- A right front passenger takes his/her weight off of the seat for a period of time.
- The right front passenger seat is occupied by a smaller person, such as a child who has outgrown child restraints.
- Or, if there is a critical problem with the airbag system or the passenger sensing system.

When the passenger sensing system has turned off the right front passenger frontal airbag and seat-mounted side impact airbag, the off indicator will light and stay lit to remind you that the airbags are off. See *Passenger Airbag Status Indicator on page 3-31*.

The passenger sensing system is designed to turn on (may inflate) the right front passenger frontal airbag and seat-mounted side impact airbag anytime the system senses that a person of adult size is sitting properly in the right front passenger seat.

When the passenger sensing system has allowed the airbags to be enabled, the on indicator will light and stay lit to remind you that the airbags are active.

For some children who have outgrown child restraints and for very small adults, the passenger sensing system may or may not turn off the right front passenger frontal airbag and seat-mounted side impact airbag, depending upon the person's seating posture and body build. Everyone in the vehicle who has outgrown child restraints should wear a safety belt properly — whether or not there is an airbag for that person.

⚠ CAUTION:

If the airbag readiness light ever comes on and stays on, it means that something may be wrong with the airbag system. To help avoid injury to yourself or others, have the vehicle serviced right away. See *Airbag Readiness Light on page 3-30* for more information, including important safety information.

If the On Indicator is Lit for a Child Restraint

If a child restraint has been installed and the on indicator is lit:

1. Turn the vehicle off.
2. Remove the child restraint from the vehicle.
3. Remove any additional items from the seat such as blankets, cushions, seat covers, seat heaters, or seat massagers.
4. Reinstall the child restraint following the directions provided by the child restraint manufacturer and refer to *Securing a Child Restraint in the Right Front Seat Position on page 1-52*.
5. If, after reinstalling the child restraint and restarting the vehicle, the on indicator is still lit, turn the vehicle off. Then slightly recline the vehicle seatback and adjust the seat cushion, if adjustable, to make sure that the vehicle seatback is not pushing the child restraint into the seat cushion.

   Also make sure the child restraint is not trapped under the vehicle head restraint. If this happens, adjust the head restraint. See *Head Restraints on page 1-7*.
6. Restart the vehicle.

   If the on indicator is still lit with an infant present in a child restraint, secure the child restraint in a rear seat position in the vehicle and check with your dealer/retailer.

If the Off Indicator is Lit for an Adult-Size Occupant

If a person of adult-size is sitting in the right front passenger seat, but the off indicator is lit, it could be because that person is not sitting properly in the seat.

If this happens, use the following steps to allow the system to detect that person and enable the right front passenger frontal airbag and seat-mounted side impact airbag:

1. Turn the vehicle off.
2. Remove any additional material from the seat, such as blankets, cushions, seat covers, seat heaters, or seat massagers.
3. Place the seatback in the fully upright position.
4. Have the person sit upright in the seat, centered on the seat cushion, with legs comfortably extended.
5. Restart the vehicle and have the person remain in this position for two to three minutes after the on indicator is lit.

Additional Factors Affecting System Operation

Safety belts help keep the passenger in position on the seat during vehicle maneuvers and braking, which helps the passenger sensing system maintain the passenger airbag status. See “Safety Belts” and “Child Restraints” in the Index for additional information about the importance of proper restraint use.

A thick layer of additional material, such as a blanket or cushion, or aftermarket equipment such as seat covers, seat heaters, and seat massagers can affect how well the passenger sensing system operates. We recommend that you not use seat covers or other aftermarket equipment except when approved by GM for your specific vehicle. See *Adding Equipment to Your Airbag-Equipped Vehicle on page 1-71* for more information about modifications that can affect how the system operates.

⚠ CAUTION:

Stowing of articles under the passenger seat or between the passenger seat cushion and seatback may interfere with the proper operation of the passenger sensing system.

Servicing Your Airbag-Equipped Vehicle

Airbags affect how the vehicle should be serviced. There are parts of the airbag system in several places around the vehicle. Your dealer/retailer and the service manual have information about servicing the vehicle and the airbag system. To purchase a service manual, see *Service Publications Ordering Information on page 7-15*.

⚠ CAUTION:

For up to 10 seconds after the ignition is turned off and the battery is disconnected, an airbag can still inflate during improper service. You can be injured if you are close to an airbag when it inflates. Avoid yellow connectors. They are probably part of the airbag system. Be sure to follow proper service procedures, and make sure the person performing work for you is qualified to do so.

Adding Equipment to Your Airbag-Equipped Vehicle

Q: Is there anything I might add to or change about the vehicle that could keep the airbags from working properly?

A: Yes. If you add things that change your vehicle's frame, bumper system, height, front end or side sheet metal, they may keep the airbag system from working properly. Changing or moving any parts of the front seats, safety belts, the airbag sensing and diagnostic module, steering wheel, instrument panel, roof-rail airbag modules, ceiling headliner or pillar garnish trim, overhead console, front sensors, side impact sensors, or airbag wiring can affect the operation of the airbag system.

In addition, your vehicle has a passenger sensing system for the right front passenger's position, which includes sensors that are part of the passenger's seat. The passenger sensing system may not operate properly if the original seat trim is replaced with non-GM covers, upholstery or trim, or with GM covers, upholstery or trim designed for a different vehicle. Any object, such as an aftermarket seat heater or a comfort enhancing pad or device, installed under or on top of the seat fabric, could also interfere with the operation of the passenger sensing system. This could either prevent proper deployment of the passenger airbag(s) or prevent the passenger sensing system from properly turning off the passenger airbag(s). See *Passenger Sensing System on page 1-65*.

If you have any questions about this, you should contact Customer Assistance before you modify your vehicle. The phone numbers and addresses for Customer Assistance are in Step Two of the Customer Satisfaction Procedure in this manual. See *Customer Satisfaction Procedure on page 7-2*.

Q: Because I have a disability, I have to get my vehicle modified. How can I find out whether this will affect my airbag system?

A: If you have questions, call Customer Assistance. The phone numbers and addresses for Customer Assistance are in Step Two of the Customer Satisfaction Procedure in this manual. See *Customer Satisfaction Procedure on page 7-2*.

In addition, your dealer/retailer and the service manual have information about the location of the airbag sensors, sensing and diagnostic module and airbag wiring.

Restraint System Check

Checking the Restraint Systems

Safety Belts

Now and then, check that the safety belt reminder light, safety belts, buckles, latch plates, retractors, and anchorages are all working properly.

Look for any other loose or damaged safety belt system parts that might keep a safety belt system from doing its job. See your dealer/retailer to have it repaired. Torn or frayed safety belts may not protect you in a crash. They can rip apart under impact forces. If a belt is torn or frayed, get a new one right away.

Make sure the safety belt reminder light is working. See *Safety Belt Reminders on page 3-29* for more information.

Keep safety belts clean and dry. See *Care of Safety Belts on page 5-84*.

Airbags

The airbag system does not need regularly scheduled maintenance or replacement. Make sure the airbag readiness light is working. See *Airbag Readiness Light on page 3-30* for more information.

Notice: **If an airbag covering is damaged, opened, or broken, the airbag may not work properly. Do not open or break the airbag coverings. If there are any opened or broken airbag covers, have the airbag covering and/or airbag module replaced. For the location of the airbag modules, see *What Makes an Airbag Inflate? on page 1-63*. See your dealer/retailer for service.**

Replacing Restraint System Parts After a Crash

⚠ CAUTION:

A crash can damage the restraint systems in your vehicle. A damaged restraint system may not properly protect the person using it, resulting in serious injury or even death in a crash. To help make sure your restraint systems are working properly after a crash, have them inspected and any necessary replacements made as soon as possible.

If the vehicle has been in a crash, do you need new safety belts or LATCH system (if equipped) parts?

After a very minor crash, nothing may be necessary. But the safety belt assemblies that were used during any crash may have been stressed or damaged. See your dealer/retailer to have the safety belt assemblies inspected or replaced.

If the vehicle has the LATCH system and it was being used during a crash, you may need new LATCH system parts.

New parts and repairs may be necessary even if the safety belt or LATCH system (if equipped), was not being used at the time of the crash.

If an airbag inflates, you will need to replace airbag system parts. See the part on the airbag system earlier in this section.

Have the safety belt pretensioners checked if the vehicle has been in a crash, if the airbag readiness light stays on after the vehicle is started, or while you are driving. See *Airbag Readiness Light on page 3-30*.

✍ NOTES

Section 2 Features and Controls

Keys 2-3
- Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System 2-4
- Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation 2-5
- Remote Vehicle Start 2-7

Doors and Locks 2-10
- Door Locks 2-10
- Power Door Locks 2-10
- Door Ajar Reminder 2-10
- Delayed Locking 2-11
- Programmable Automatic Door Locks 2-11
- Rear Door Security Locks 2-12
- Lockout Protection 2-12
- Trunk 2-13

Windows 2-15
- Power Windows 2-16
- Sun Visors 2-17

Theft-Deterrent Systems 2-18
- Content Theft-Deterrent 2-18
- PASS-Key® III+ Electronic Immobilizer 2-19
- PASS-Key® III+ Electronic Immobilizer Operation 2-20

Starting and Operating Your Vehicle 2-21
- New Vehicle Break-In 2-21
- Ignition Positions 2-22
- Retained Accessory Power (RAP) 2-23
- Starting the Engine 2-23
- Engine Coolant Heater 2-25
- Automatic Transmission Operation (Six Speed Transmission) 2-26
- Parking Brake 2-29
- Shifting Into Park 2-30
- Shifting Out of Park 2-32
- Parking Over Things That Burn 2-32
- Engine Exhaust 2-33
- Running the Vehicle While Parked 2-34

Section 2 Features and Controls

Mirrors 2-35
- Manual Rearview Mirror 2-35
- Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror 2-35
- Compass 2-36
- Outside Power Mirrors 2-37
- Outside Automatic Dimming Mirror 2-37
- Outside Heated Mirrors 2-37

OnStar® System 2-38

Universal Home Remote System 2-41
- Universal Home Remote System Operation (With Three Round LED) 2-42

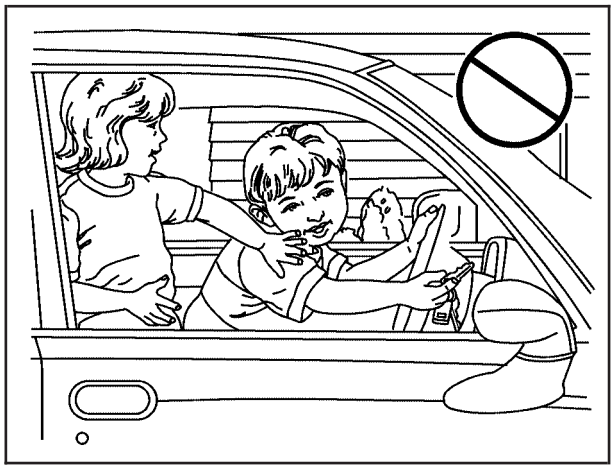
Storage Areas 2-48
- Glove Box 2-48
- Cupholders 2-48
- Center Console Storage 2-49
- Garment Hooks 2-49
- Convenience Net 2-49

Sunroof 2-49

Keys

⚠ CAUTION:

Leaving children in a vehicle with the ignition key is dangerous for many reasons, children or others could be badly injured or even killed. They could operate the power windows or other controls or even make the vehicle move. The windows will function with the keys in the ignition and children could be seriously injured or killed if caught in the path of a closing window. Do not leave the keys in a vehicle with children.



The key can be used for the ignition and all locks.

The key has a bar-coded key tag that the dealer/retailer or qualified locksmith can use to make new keys. Store this information in a safe place, not in your vehicle.

Notice: **If you ever lock your keys in the vehicle, you may have to damage the vehicle to get in. Be sure you have spare keys.**

If you are locked out of your vehicle, contact Roadside Assistance. See *Roadside Assistance Program on page 7-7*.

Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System

If this vehicle has the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) system, it operates on a radio frequency subject to Federal Communications Commission (FCC) Rules and with Industry Canada.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause interference.
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

This device complies with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause interference.
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Changes or modifications to this system by other than an authorized service facility could void authorization to use this equipment.

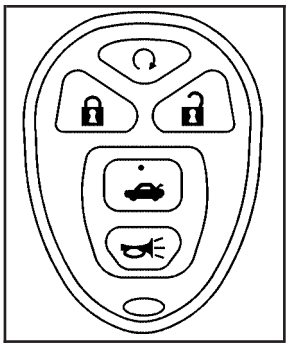
If there is a decrease in the RKE operating range, try this:

- Check the distance. The transmitter may be too far from the vehicle. Stand closer during rainy or snowy weather.
- Check the location. Other vehicles or objects may be blocking the signal. Take a few steps to the left or right, hold the transmitter higher, and try again.
- Check the transmitter's battery. See "Battery Replacement" later in this section.
- If the transmitter is still not working correctly, see your dealer/retailer or a qualified technician for service.

Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation

The Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter functions work up to 195 feet (60 m) away from the vehicle.

There are other conditions which can affect the performance of the transmitter. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System on page 2-4*.



With Remote Start Shown, Without Remote Start Similar

(Remote Vehicle Start): For vehicles with this feature, press to operate the remote start feature. See *Remote Vehicle Start on page 2-7* for additional information.

(Lock): Press to lock all the doors. The interior lamps turn off after all of the doors are closed. If enabled through the Driver Information Center (DIC), the remote lock feedback can be programmed to have the horn chirp and/or the turn signals flash to confirm locking. See “LOCK HORN” and “LIGHT FLASH” under *DIC Vehicle Personalization on page 3-50* for more information.

Pressing may also arm the content theft-deterrent system. See *Content Theft-Deterrent on page 2-18*.

(Unlock): Press once to unlock the driver door. Press again within five seconds to unlock all remaining doors. The interior lamps turn on and stay on for 20 seconds or until the ignition is turned on. If enabled through the DIC, the remote unlock feedback can be programmed to have the horn chirp and/or the turn signals flash to confirm unlocking. See “UNLOCK HORN” and “LIGHT FLASH” under *DIC Vehicle Personalization on page 3-50* for more information.

The high-beam headlamps, parking lamps, and back-up lamps may come on each time is pressed. See “EXT (Exterior) LIGHTS” under *DIC Vehicle Personalization on page 3-50* for additional information.

Pressing on the RKE transmitter disarms the content theft-deterrent system. See *Content Theft-Deterrent on page 2-18*.

(Remote Trunk Release): Press and hold for about one second to unlock the trunk. The trunk can be opened with the transmitter when the vehicle speed is less than 2 mph (3 km/h) or when the ignition is off.

(Vehicle Locator/Panic Alarm): Press and release to locate the vehicle. The horn sounds three times and the headlamps and turn signals flash three times.

Press and hold for about three seconds to initiate the panic alarm. The horn sounds and the headlamps and turn signals flash for 30 seconds. Press again to cancel the panic alarm.

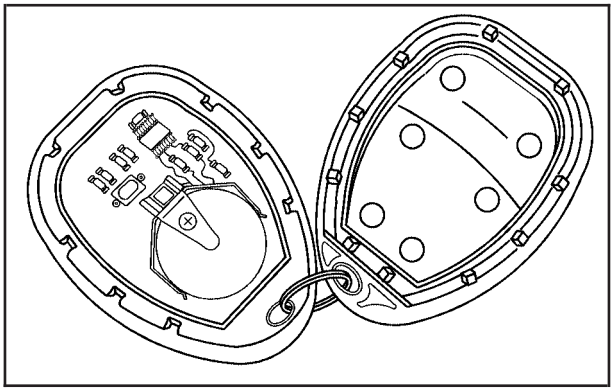
Programming Transmitters to the Vehicle

Only RKE transmitters programmed to the vehicle will work. If a transmitter is lost or stolen, a replacement can be purchased and programmed through your dealer/retailer. When the replacement transmitter is programmed to the vehicle, all remaining transmitters must also be programmed. Any lost or stolen transmitters no longer work once the new transmitter is programmed. Each vehicle can have up to four transmitters programmed to it.

Battery Replacement

Replace the battery if the KEY FOB BATT (Battery) LOW message displays in the DIC. See “KEY FOB BATT (Battery) LOW” under *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-45* for additional information.

Notice: **When replacing the battery, do not touch any of the circuitry on the transmitter. Static from your body could damage the transmitter.**



To replace the battery:

1. Separate the transmitter with a flat, thin object inserted into the notch on the side.
2. Remove the old battery. Do not use a metal object.
3. Insert the new battery, positive side facing up. Replace with a CR2032 or equivalent battery.
4. Snap the transmitter back together.

Remote Vehicle Start

Your vehicle may have a remote starting feature that allows you to start the engine from outside the vehicle. It may also start the vehicle's heating or air conditioning systems and rear window defogger. When the remote start system is active and the vehicle has an automatic climate control system, it will automatically regulate the inside temperature. Normal operation of these systems will return after the ignition key is turned to ON/RUN.

Laws in some communities may restrict the use of remote starters. For example, some laws may require a person using remote start to have the vehicle in view when doing so. Check local regulations for any requirements on remote starting of vehicles.

Do not use the remote start feature if your vehicle is low on fuel. Your vehicle may run out of fuel.

If your vehicle has the remote start feature, the RKE transmitter functions will have an increased range of operation. However, the range may be less while the vehicle is running.

There are other conditions which can affect the performance of the transmitter, see *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System on page 2-4* for additional information.

(Remote Start): This button will be on the RKE transmitter if you have remote start.

To start the vehicle using the remote start feature:

1. Aim the transmitter at the vehicle.
2. Press and release the transmitter's lock button, then immediately press and hold the transmitter's remote start button for about four seconds or until the vehicle's turn signal lamps flash. The doors will lock.

   When the vehicle starts, the parking lamps turn on and remain on while the engine is running.

The remote start feature provides two separate starts per ignition cycle, each with 10 minutes of engine running time, or one start with a time extension. The first start must expire or be canceled to get two separate 10 minute starts.

If it is the first remote start since the vehicle has been driven, repeat the previous steps, while the engine is still running, to extend the engine running time by 10 minutes from the time you repeat the steps for remote starting. The remote start running time can be extended one time and only after the first remote start.

After entering the vehicle during a remote start, insert and turn the key to ON/RUN to drive the vehicle.

The engine will shut off automatically after 10 minutes, unless a time extension has been done or the vehicle's key is inserted into the ignition switch and turned to ON/RUN.

To manually shut off a remote start, do any of the following.

- Aim the RKE transmitter at the vehicle and press and release the remote start button.
- Turn on the hazard warning flashers.
- Turn the ignition switch out of LOCK/OFF position and then back to LOCK/OFF.

The parking lamps turn off to indicate the engine is off.

After the engine has been started two times, or one time with a time extension, the vehicle's ignition must be turned to ON/RUN using the key before the remote start procedure can be used again. See *Ignition Positions on page 2-22* for information regarding the ignition positions on your vehicle.

The remote vehicle start feature will not operate if any of the follow occur:

- The remote start system is disabled through the DIC.
- The vehicle's key is in the ignition.
- The vehicle's hood is open.
- The hazard warning flashers are on.
- The check engine light is on. See *Malfunction Indicator Lamp on page 3-37*.
- The engine coolant temperature is too high.
- The oil pressure is low.
- Two remote vehicle starts, or one start with a time extension, have already been provided for that ignition cycle.

Vehicles that have the remote vehicle start feature are shipped from the factory with the remote start system enabled. The system may be enabled or disabled through the DIC. See "REMOTE START" under *DIC Vehicle Personalization on page 3-50* for additional information.

Doors and Locks

Door Locks

⚠ CAUTION:

Unlocked doors can be dangerous.

- Passengers, especially children, can easily open the doors and fall out of a moving vehicle. When a door is locked, the handle will not open it. The chance of being thrown out of the vehicle in a crash is increased if the doors are not locked. So, all passengers should wear safety belts properly and the doors should be locked whenever the vehicle is driven.
- Young children who get into unlocked vehicles may be unable to get out. A child can be overcome by extreme heat and can suffer permanent injuries or even death from heat stroke. Always lock the vehicle whenever leaving it.
- Outsiders can easily enter through an unlocked door when you slow down or stop your vehicle. Locking your doors can help prevent this from happening.

There are several ways to lock and unlock the vehicle.

To lock or unlock the door from the outside, use the key in the driver or front passenger door or press the lock or unlock button on the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter, if the vehicle has one.

To lock a door from the inside, push the manual lock knob down or use the power door lock switches.

Power Door Locks

The power door lock switches are located on the driver's and front passenger's door.

Press the outboard side of the switch to unlock all doors. Press the inboard side of the switch to lock all doors.

The rear doors do not have power door lock switches. Rear seat passengers must use the manual lock knob on their doors.

Door Ajar Reminder

A chime will sound and the DOOR AJAR message will display if one of the doors is not fully closed. This happens when the ignition is on and the shift lever is moved out of P (Park) or N (Neutral).
See *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-45*.

Delayed Locking

This feature allows the driver to delay the locking of the vehicle. It will not operate with the key in the ignition. See *Lockout Protection on page 2-12*.

Press the driver power door lock switch or the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter lock button once. With the key removed from the ignition and the driver door open, the following occurs:

- Three chimes sound to signal the delay.
- All doors will lock and the turn signals flash once five seconds after the last door has been closed.
- The horn chirps if the horn chirp feature is enabled. See *DIC Vehicle Personalization on page 3-50*.

If a door is opened before the five seconds has elapsed, the doors do not lock until five seconds after all doors are closed.

If the power door lock switch or the transmitter lock button is pressed twice when leaving the vehicle, the doors lock immediately.

If the power door unlock switch or the transmitter unlock button is pressed, the doors unlock immediately and do not lock automatically after the doors are closed.

This feature is turned on at the factory but may be turned off through the Driver Information Center (DIC). See *DIC Vehicle Personalization on page 3-50*.

Programmable Automatic Door Locks

The vehicle is programmed to lock all doors automatically when the following are met:

- All doors are closed.
- The ignition is on.
- The vehicle is shifted out of (P) Park.

This feature cannot be disabled.

All doors will unlock when the vehicle is shifted into (P) Park.

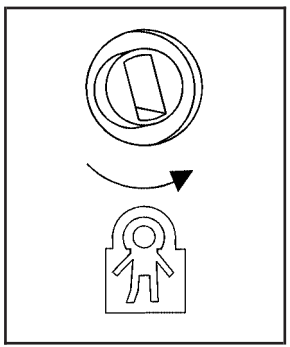
The power door unlock function can be programmed through prompts displayed on the Driver Information Center (DIC). See *DIC Vehicle Personalization on page 3-50*.

Rear Door Security Locks

Rear door security locks prevent passengers from opening the rear doors from the inside.

The rear door security locks are located on the inside edge of each rear door. The rear doors must be opened to access them.

To assist in finding the lock, the vehicle has the following:



To use the lock:

1. Insert the key into the security lock slot and turn it so the slot is in the horizontal position.
2. Close the door.
3. Do the same for the other rear door.

To open a rear door when the security lock is on, do the following:

1. Unlock the door using the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter, if the vehicle has one, the power door lock switch, or by lifting the rear door manual lock.
2. Open the door from the outside.

To cancel the rear door security lock:

1. Unlock the door and open it from the outside.
2. Insert the key into the security lock slot and turn it so the slot is in the vertical position.
3. Do the same for the other rear door.

Lockout Protection

This feature prevents the driver door from being locked using the power door locks, if the key is left in the ignition and a door is open.

Press the power door lock switch to lock all the doors and then unlock the driver door.

Press and hold the power door lock switch for more than three seconds to override this feature.

If the key is removed from the ignition, or if the manual door lock or the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter is used, the key could still be locked inside the vehicle. Always remember to take the key with you.

Trunk

To open the trunk from the outside, press the trunk release button on the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter.

⚠ CAUTION:

Exhaust gases can enter the vehicle if it is driven with the liftgate, trunk/hatch open, or with any objects that pass through the seal between the body and the trunk/hatch or liftgate. Engine exhaust contains Carbon Monoxide (CO) which cannot be seen or smelled. It can cause unconsciousness and even death.

CAUTION: (Continued)

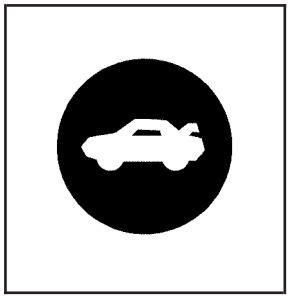
CAUTION: (Continued)

If the vehicle must be driven with the liftgate, or trunk/hatch open:

- Close all of the windows.
- Fully open the air outlets on or under the instrument panel.
- Adjust the Climate Control system to a setting that brings in only outside air and set the fan speed to the highest setting. See Climate Control System in the Index.
- If the vehicle is equipped with a power liftgate, disable the power liftgate function.

For more information about carbon monoxide, see *Engine Exhaust on page 2-33*.

Remote Trunk Release

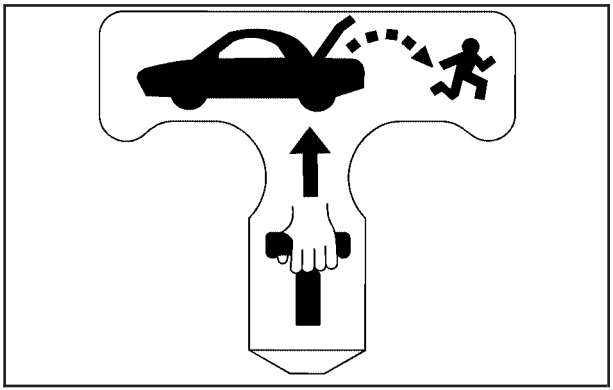


Press the button located on the driver's door near the map pocket to open the trunk.

The trunk can only be opened while the vehicle is in P (Park).

To close the trunk use the pullstrap located on the trunk lid.

Emergency Trunk Release Handle



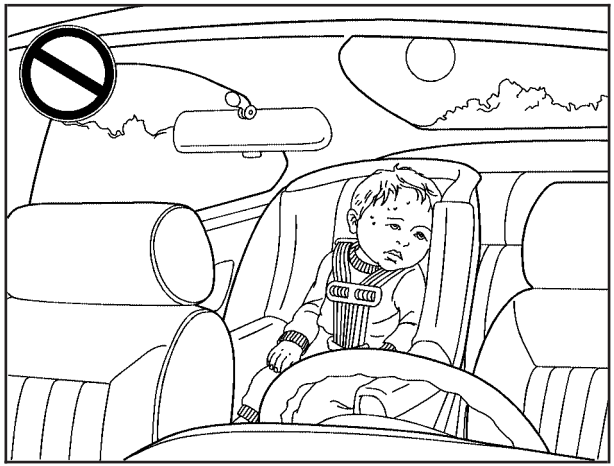
Notice: **Do not use the emergency trunk release handle as a tie-down or anchor point when securing items in the trunk as it could damage the handle. The emergency trunk release handle is only intended to aid a person trapped in a latched trunk, enabling them to open the trunk from the inside.**

There is a glow-in-the-dark emergency trunk release handle located inside the trunk on the trunk latch. This handle glows following exposure to light. Pull the release handle up to open the trunk from the inside.

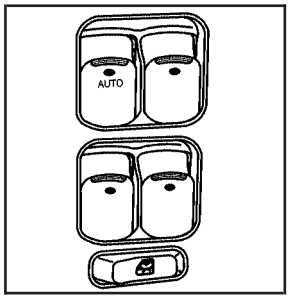
Windows

⚠ CAUTION:

Leaving children, helpless adults, or pets in a vehicle with the windows closed is dangerous. They can be overcome by the extreme heat and suffer permanent injuries or even death from heat stroke. Never leave a child, a helpless adult, or a pet alone in a vehicle, especially with the windows closed in warm or hot weather.



Power Windows



The power window switches are located on the armrest on the driver's door. In addition, there is a switch on each passenger door.

Express-Down Window

The driver window has an express-down feature. This switch is labeled AUTO. Press the front all the way down and release, to automatically lower.

To stop the window while it is lowering, pull the front of the switch momentarily. To raise the window, pull and hold the front of the switch.

Express-Up Window

On windows with this feature, pull the switch up to the second position and release the switch to activate the express-up feature. To stop the window as it is going up, pull up or press down briefly on the switch again.

Programming the Power Windows

If the battery on the vehicle has been recharged, disconnected, or is not working, the driver power window will need to be re-programmed for the express-up feature to work. Replace or recharge the vehicle's battery before reprogramming.

To program the driver window, follow these steps:

1. With the ignition in ACC/ACCESSORY, ON/RUN, or when Retained Accessory Power (RAP) is active, close all doors.
2. Press and hold the power window switch until the window is fully open.
3. Pull the power window switch up until the window is fully closed.
4. Continue holding the switch up for approximately two seconds after the window is completely closed.

The window is now reprogrammed.

Express Window Anti-Pinch Feature

If any object is in the path of the window when the express-up is active, the window stops at the obstruction and auto-reverse to a preset factory position. Weather conditions such as severe icing may also cause the window to auto-reverse. The window returns to normal operation once the obstruction or condition is removed.

Express Window Anti-Pinch Override

⚠ CAUTION:

If express override is activated, the window will not reverse automatically. You or others could be injured and the window could be damaged. Before you use express override, make sure that all people and obstructions are clear of the window path.

In an emergency, the anti-pinch feature can be overridden in a supervised mode. Hold the window switch all the way up to the second position. The window rises for as long as the switch is held. Once the switch is released, the express mode is re-activated.

In this mode, the window can still close on an object in its path. Use care when using the override mode.

Window Lockout

The driver power window controls also include a lockout button.

(Window Lockout): Press the lockout button to stop the rear passengers from using their window switches. The driver and front passenger can still operate all the windows with the lock on. When the red part of the switch is visible, you have returned to normal window operation.

Sun Visors

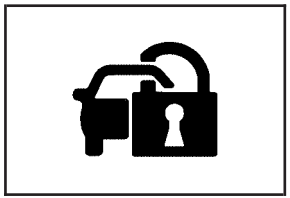
To block out glare, you can swing down the visors. You can also remove them from the center mount and swing them to the side, to block out glare from the side.

Your vehicle may have lighted visor vanity mirrors located on the passenger and driver's side visor. When you lift the cover, the light will turn on.

Theft-Deterrent Systems

Vehicle theft is big business, especially in some cities. This vehicle has theft-deterrent features, however, they do not make it impossible to steal.

Content Theft-Deterrent



Your vehicle may have a content theft-deterrent alarm system.

Arming the System

With the ignition off, press the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter lock button to arm the system.

The system will arm 30 seconds after all the doors are closed, or 60 seconds with any door open.

If you press the lock button on the transmitter a second time while all the doors are closed, the system will arm immediately. The system will still arm in 60 seconds if a door is open. When the open door is closed, the system will arm.

The security light, located on the instrument panel cluster, comes on to indicate that arming has been initiated. Once the system is armed, the security light flashes once every three seconds.

If the security light is flashing twice per second, this means that a door is open.

If the system is armed and the key is used to unlock the vehicle, the alarm will be activated.

If you do not want to arm the content theft system, lock the vehicle with the manual lock knob on the doors or with the inside power door lock switches.

The alarm will sound and the exterior lights will flash if any door is opened while armed.

Disarming the System

To disarm the system, do one of the following:

- Press the RKE transmitter unlock button.
- Turn the ignition to ON/RUN.

Once the system is disarmed, the security light will stop flashing.

How the System Alarm is Activated

To activate the system if it is armed:

- Open the driver's door or trunk. A ten second pre-alarm chirp will sound followed by a thirty second full alarm of horn and lights.
- Open any other door. A full alarm of horn and lights will immediately sound for thirty seconds.
- Open the hood. If the vehicle has the remote start feature, it will activate the full alarm.

When an alarm event has finished, the system will re-arm itself automatically.

How to Turn Off the System Alarm

To turn off the system alarm:

- Press the lock button on the RKE transmitter. The system will then re-arm itself.
- Press the unlock button on the RKE transmitter. This will also disarm the system.
- Insert the key in the ignition and turn it on. This will also disarm the system.

How to Detect a Tamper Condition

If three chirps are heard when the unlock or lock button is pressed on the RKE transmitter, it means that the content theft security system alarm was previously triggered.

PASS-Key® III+ Electronic Immobilizer

The PASS-Key III+ system operates on a radio frequency subject to Federal Communications Commission (FCC) Rules and with Industry Canada.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference.
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

This device complies with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause interference.
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Changes or modifications to this system by other than an authorized service facility could void authorization to use this equipment.

PASS-Key III+ uses a radio frequency transponder in the key that matches a decoder in the vehicle.

PASS-Key® III+ Electronic Immobilizer Operation

Your vehicle has PASS-Key® III+ (Personalized Automotive Security System) theft-deterrent system. PASS-Key® III+ is a passive theft-deterrent system.

The system is automatically armed when the key is removed from the ignition.

You do not have to manually arm or disarm the system.

The security light will come on if there is a problem with arming or disarming the theft-deterrent system.

When the PASS-Key® III+ system senses that someone is using the wrong key, it prevents the vehicle from starting. Anyone using a trial-and-error method to start the vehicle will be discouraged because of the high number of electrical key codes.

When trying to start the vehicle if the engine does not start and the security light on the instrument panel cluster comes on, there may be a problem with your theft-deterrent system. Turn the ignition off and try again. If the engine still does not start, and the key appears to be not damaged, try another ignition key. At this time, you may also want to check the fuse. See *Fuses on page 5-91*. If the engine still does not start with the other key, your vehicle needs service. If your vehicle does start, the first key may be faulty. See your dealer/retailer who can service the PASS-Key® III+ to have a new key made. In an emergency, contact Roadside Assistance. See *Roadside Assistance Program on page 7-7*.

It may be possible for the PASS-Key® III+ decoder to “learn” the transponder value of a new or replacement key. Up to 10 keys may be programmed for the vehicle. The following procedure is for programming additional keys only. If all the currently programmed keys are lost or do not operate, you must see your dealer/retailer or a locksmith who can service PASS-Key® III+ to have keys made and programmed to the system.

See your dealer/retailer or a locksmith who can service PASS-Key® III+ to get a new key blank that is cut exactly as the ignition key that operates the system.

To program the new key:

1. Verify that the new key has a ⊕ stamped on it.
2. Insert the already programmed key in the ignition and start the engine. If the engine will not start, see your dealer/retailer for service.
3. After the engine has started, turn the key to LOCK/OFF, and remove the key.
4. Insert the key to be programmed and turn it to the ON/RUN position within five seconds of the original key being turned to the LOCK/OFF position.

   The security light will turn off once the key has been programmed.
5. Repeat Steps 1 through 4 if additional keys are to be programmed.

If you are ever driving and the security light comes on and stays on, you may be able to restart your engine if you turn it off. Your PASS-Key® III+ system, however, is not working properly and must be serviced by your dealer/retailer. Your vehicle is not protected by the PASS-Key® III+ system at this time.

If the PASS-Key® III+ key is lost or damaged, see your dealer/retailer or a locksmith who can service PASS-Key® III+ to have a new key made.

Do not leave the key or device that disarms or deactivates the theft deterrent system in the vehicle.

Starting and Operating Your Vehicle

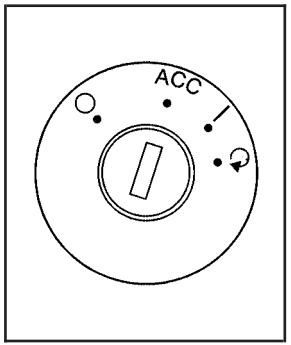
New Vehicle Break-In

Notice: **The vehicle does not need an elaborate break-in. But it will perform better in the long run if you follow these guidelines:**

- **Do not drive at any one constant speed, fast or slow, for the first 500 miles (805 km). Do not make full-throttle starts. Avoid downshifting to brake or slow the vehicle.**
- **Avoid making hard stops for the first 200 miles (322 km) or so. During this time the new brake linings are not yet broken in. Hard stops with new linings can mean premature wear and earlier replacement. Follow this breaking-in guideline every time you get new brake linings.**
- **Do not tow a trailer during break-in. See *Towing a Trailer on page 4-30* for the trailer towing capabilities of your vehicle and more information.**

Following break-in, engine speed and load can be gradually increased.

Ignition Positions



The ignition switch has four different positions.

To shift out of P (Park), the ignition must be in ON/RUN or ACC/ACCESSORY and the brake pedal must be applied.

Notice: **Using a tool to force the key to turn in the ignition could cause damage to the switch or break the key. Use the correct key, make sure it is all the way in, and turn it only with your hand. If the key cannot be turned by hand, see your dealer/retailer.**

◯ **(LOCK/OFF):** This position locks the ignition. It also locks the transmission. The key can only be removed in LOCK/OFF.

The shift lever must be in P (Park) to turn the ignition switch to LOCK/OFF.

The steering can bind with the wheels turned off center. If this happens, move the steering wheel from right to left while turning the key to ACC/ACCESSORY. If this doesn't work, the vehicle needs service.

ACC (ACC/ACCESSORY): This position lets you use things like the radio and windshield wipers while the engine is not running.

(ON/RUN): This position can be used to operate the electrical accessories and to display some instrument panel warning lights. The switch will stay in this position while the engine is running.

If you leave the key in the ACC/ACCESSORY or ON/RUN position with the engine off, the battery could be drained. You may not be able to start the vehicle if the battery is allowed to drain for an extended period of time.

(START): This position starts the engine. When the engine starts, release the key. The ignition switch will return to the ON/RUN position for driving.

A warning tone will sound when the driver door is opened, the ignition is in ACC/ACCESSORY or LOCK/OFF and the key is in the ignition.

Retained Accessory Power (RAP)

These vehicle accessories can be used for up to 10 minutes after the engine is turned off:

- Audio System
- Power Windows
- Heated Seats (if equipped)
- Sunroof (if equipped)

These features continue to work up to 10 minutes after the ignition is turned to LOCK/OFF.

The power windows, heated seats, and sunroof will work until any door is opened.

The radio continues to work until the driver door is opened.

All these features operate when the key is in the ON/RUN or ACC/ACCESSORY.

Starting the Engine

Move the shift lever to P (Park) or N (Neutral). The engine will not start in any other position. To restart the engine when the vehicle is already moving, use N (Neutral) only.

Notice: **Do not try to shift to P (Park) if the vehicle is moving. If you do, you could damage the transmission. Shift to P (Park) only when the vehicle is stopped.**

Starting Procedure

1. With your foot off the accelerator pedal, turn the ignition to START. When the engine starts, let go of the key. The idle speed will slow down as the engine warms. Do not race the engine immediately after starting it. Operate the engine and transmission gently to allow the oil to warm up and lubricate all moving parts.

The vehicle has a Computer-Controlled Cranking System. This feature assists in starting the engine and protects components. If the ignition key is turned to the START position, and then released when the engine begins cranking, the engine will continue cranking for a few seconds or until the vehicle starts. If the engine does not start and the key is held in START, cranking will be stopped after 15 seconds to prevent cranking motor damage. To prevent gear damage, this system also prevents cranking if the engine is already running. Engine cranking can be stopped by turning the ignition switch to the ACC/ACCESSORY or LOCK/OFF position.

Notice: **Cranking the engine for long periods of time, by returning the key to the START position immediately after cranking has ended, can overheat and damage the cranking motor, and drain the battery. Wait at least 15 seconds between each try, to let the cranking motor cool down.**

2. If the engine does not start after 5-10 seconds, especially in very cold weather (below 0°F or –18°C), it could be flooded with too much gasoline. Try pushing the accelerator pedal all the way to the floor and holding it there as you hold the key in START for up to a maximum of 15 seconds. Wait at least 15 seconds between each try, to allow the cranking motor to cool down. When the engine starts, let go of the key and accelerator. If the vehicle starts briefly but then stops again, repeat these steps. This clears the extra gasoline from the engine. Do not race the engine immediately after starting it. Operate the engine and transmission gently until the oil warms up and lubricates all moving parts.

Notice: **The engine is designed to work with the electronics in the vehicle. If you add electrical parts or accessories, you could change the way the engine operates. Before adding electrical equipment, check with your dealer/retailer. If you do not, the engine might not perform properly. Any resulting damage would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.**

Engine Coolant Heater

The engine coolant heater can provide easier starting and better fuel economy during engine warm-up in cold weather conditions at or below 0°F (–18°C). Vehicles with an engine coolant heater should be plugged in at least four hours before starting. Some models may have an internal thermostat in the cord which will prevent engine coolant heater operation at temperatures above 0°F (–18°C).

To Use the Engine Coolant Heater

1. Turn off the engine.
2. Open the hood and unwrap the electrical cord. The engine coolant heater cord is located near the air cleaner box on the passenger side of the engine compartment. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 5-12* for more information on location.
3. Plug the cord into a normal, grounded 110-volt AC outlet.

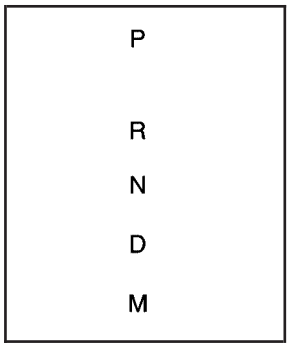
⚠ CAUTION:

Plugging the cord into an ungrounded outlet could cause an electrical shock. Also, the wrong kind of extension cord could overheat and cause a fire. You could be seriously injured. Plug the cord into a properly grounded three-prong 110-volt AC outlet. If the cord will not reach, use a heavy-duty three-prong extension cord rated for at least 15 amps.

4. Before starting the engine, be sure to unplug and store the cord as it was before to keep it away from moving engine parts. If you do not, it could be damaged.

The length of time the heater should remain plugged in depends on several factors. Ask a dealer/retailer in the area where you will be parking the vehicle for the best advice on this.

Automatic Transmission Operation (Six Speed Transmission)



The automatic transmission has a shift lever located on the console between the seats.

P (Park): This position locks the front wheels. It is the best position to use when you start the engine because the vehicle cannot move easily.

⚠ CAUTION:

It is dangerous to get out of the vehicle if the shift lever is not fully in P (Park) with the parking brake firmly set. The vehicle can roll.

Do not leave the vehicle when the engine is running unless you have to. If you have left the engine running, the vehicle can move suddenly. You or others could be injured. To be sure the vehicle will not move, even when you are on fairly level ground, always set the parking brake and move the shift lever to P (Park). See *Shifting Into Park on page 2-30*. If you are pulling a trailer, see *Towing a Trailer on page 4-30*.

Make sure the shift lever is fully in P (Park) before starting the engine. The vehicle has an automatic transmission shift lock control system. You must fully apply the brake pedal then press the shift lever button before you can shift from P (Park) while the ignition key is in ON/RUN. If you cannot shift out of P (Park), ease pressure on the shift lever and push the shift lever all the way into P (Park) as you maintain brake application. Then move the shift lever into another gear. See *Shifting Out of Park on page 2-32*.

R (Reverse): Use this gear to back up.

Notice: **Shifting to R (Reverse) while the vehicle is moving forward could damage the transmission. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Shift to R (Reverse) only after the vehicle is stopped.**

To rock the vehicle back and forth to get out of snow, ice, or sand without damaging the transmission, see *If Your Vehicle is Stuck in Sand, Mud, Ice, or Snow on page 4-20*.

N (Neutral): In this position, the engine does not connect with the wheels. To restart the engine when the vehicle is already moving, use N (Neutral) only. Also, use N (Neutral) when the vehicle is being towed.

⚠ CAUTION:

Shifting into a drive gear while the engine is running at high speed is dangerous. Unless your foot is firmly on the brake pedal, the vehicle could move very rapidly. You could lose control and hit people or objects. Do not shift into a drive gear while the engine is running at high speed.

Notice: **Shifting out of P (Park) or N (Neutral) with the engine running at high speed may damage the transmission. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Be sure the engine is not running at high speed when shifting the vehicle.**

D (Drive): This position is for normal driving. It provides the best fuel economy. If you need more power for passing, and you are:

- Going less than 35 mph (56 km/h), push the accelerator pedal about halfway down.
- Going about 35 mph (56 km/h) or more, push the accelerator all the way down.

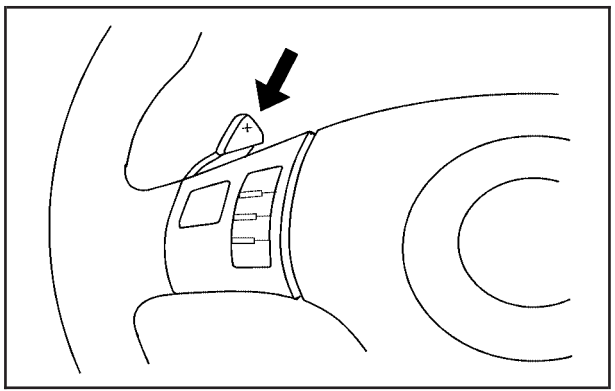
M (Manual Mode): This position, allows you to change gears similar to a manual transmission. If the vehicle has this feature, see Driver Shift Control (DSC).

Driver Shift Control (DSC)

To use this feature, do the following:

1. Move the shift lever from D (Drive) rearward to M (Manual).

   While driving in manual mode, the transmission will remain in the driver selected gear. When coming to a stop in the manual position, the vehicle will automatically shift into 1 (First) gear.



2. Press the + (plus) paddle located on top of the steering wheel controls forward to upshift, or push the backside of the shift paddle rearward to downshift.

The Driver Information Center (DIC) in the instrument cluster will change from the currently displayed message to the letter “M”, For Manual position, and a number indicating the requested gear range when moving the shift lever forward or rearward.

While using the DSC feature the transmission will have firmer shifting and sportier performance. You can use this for sport driving or when climbing hills to stay in gear longer or to downshift for more power or engine braking.

The transmission will only allow you to shift into gears appropriate for the vehicle speed and engine revolutions per minute (RPM):

- The transmission will not automatically shift to the next higher gear if the vehicle speed or engine RPM is too low.
- The transmission will not allow shifting to the next lower gear if the vehicle speed or engine RPM is too high.

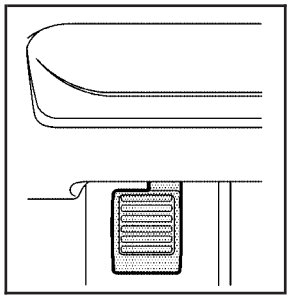
Second or Third Gear Start Feature

When accelerating the vehicle from a stop in snowy and icy conditions, you may want to shift the gear select tap switch into Second or Third gear. A higher gear allows you to gain more traction on slippery surfaces.

With the DSC feature, the vehicle can be set to pull away in Second or Third gear.

1. Move the shift lever from D (Drive) into the M (Manual Mode).
2. With the vehicle stopped, press (+) end of the button to select Second or Third gear. The vehicle will start from a stop position in Second or Third gear.
3. Once moving select the desired drive gear.

Parking Brake



To set the parking brake, push down the parking brake pedal. If the ignition is in ON/RUN, the brake system warning light will come on. See *Brake System Warning Light on page 3-33*.

To release the parking brake, hold the regular brake pedal down, then push down momentarily on the parking brake pedal until you feel the pedal release.

If the parking brake is not released when you begin to drive, the brake system warning light will be on and a chime will sound warning you that the parking brake is still on.

The PUSH PARK PEDAL message will also appear in the Driver Information Center (DIC) to remind you to release the parking brake. See *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-45*.

Notice: **Driving with the parking brake on can overheat the brake system and cause premature wear or damage to brake system parts. Make sure that the parking brake is fully released and the brake warning light is off before driving.**

If you are towing a trailer and are parking on a hill, see *Towing a Trailer on page 4-30*.

Shifting Into Park

⚠ CAUTION:

It can be dangerous to get out of the vehicle if the shift lever is not fully in P (Park) with the parking brake firmly set. The vehicle can roll. If you have left the engine running, the vehicle can move suddenly. You or others could be injured. To be sure the vehicle will not move, even when you are on fairly level ground, use the steps that follow. If you are pulling a trailer, see *Towing a Trailer on page 4-30*.

1. Hold the brake pedal down and set the parking brake. See *Parking Brake on page 2-29* for more information.
2. Move the shift lever into P (Park) by holding in the button on the shift lever and pushing the shift lever all the way toward the front of the vehicle.
3. Turn the ignition key to LOCK/OFF.
4. Remove the key and take it with you. If you can leave the vehicle with the ignition key in your hand, the vehicle is in P (Park).

Leaving the Vehicle with the Engine Running

⚠ CAUTION:

It can be dangerous to leave the vehicle with the engine running. The vehicle could move suddenly if the shift lever is not fully in P (Park) with the parking brake firmly set. And, if you leave the vehicle with the engine running, it could overheat and even catch fire. You or others could be injured. Do not leave the vehicle with the engine running.

If you have to leave the vehicle with the engine running, be sure the vehicle is in P (Park) and the parking brake is firmly set before you leave it. After you have moved the shift lever into P (Park), hold the regular brake pedal down. Then, see if you can move the shift lever away from P (Park) without first pushing the button.

If you can, it means that the shift lever was not fully locked in P (Park).

Torque Lock

Torque lock is when the weight of the vehicle puts too much force on the parking pawl in the transmission. This happens when parking on a hill and shifting the transmission into P (Park) is not done properly and then it is difficult to shift out of P (Park). To prevent torque lock, set the parking brake and then shift into P (Park). To find out how, see “Shifting Into Park” listed previously.

If torque lock does occur, your vehicle may need to be pushed uphill by another vehicle to relieve the parking pawl pressure, so you can shift out of P (Park).

Shifting Out of Park

The vehicle is equipped with an electronic shift lock release system. The shift lock release is designed to:

- Prevent ignition key removal unless the shift lever is in P (Park) with the shift lever button fully released, and
- Prevent movement of the shift lever out of P (Park), unless the ignition is in ON/RUN or ACC/ ACCESSORY and the regular brake pedal is applied.

The shift lock release is always functional except in the case of an uncharged or low voltage (less than 9 volt) battery.

If the vehicle has an uncharged battery or a battery with low voltage, try charging or jump starting the battery. See *Jump Starting on page 5-37* for more information.

To shift out of P (Park):

1. Apply the brake pedal.
2. Press the shift lever button.
3. Move the shift lever to the desired position.

If you still are unable to shift out of P (Park):

1. Fully release the shift lever button.
2. While holding down the brake pedal, press the shift lever button again.
3. Move the shift lever to the desired position.

If you still cannot move the shift lever from P (Park), see your dealer/retailer.

Parking Over Things That Burn

⚠ CAUTION:

Things that can burn could touch hot exhaust parts under the vehicle and ignite. Do not park over papers, leaves, dry grass, or other things that can burn.

Engine Exhaust

⚠ CAUTION:

Engine exhaust contains Carbon Monoxide (CO) which cannot be seen or smelled. Exposure to CO can cause unconsciousness and even death.

Exhaust may enter the vehicle if:

- The vehicle idles in areas with poor ventilation (parking garages, tunnels, deep snow that may block underbody airflow or tail pipes).
- The exhaust smells or sounds strange or different.
- The exhaust system leaks due to corrosion or damage.

CAUTION: (Continued)

CAUTION: (Continued)

- The vehicle's exhaust system has been modified, damaged or improperly repaired.
- There are holes or openings in the vehicle body from damage or after-market modifications that are not completely sealed.

If unusual fumes are detected or if it is suspected that exhaust is coming into the vehicle:

- Drive it only with the windows completely down.
- Have the vehicle repaired immediately.

Never park the vehicle with the engine running in an enclosed area such as a garage or a building that has no fresh air ventilation.

Running the Vehicle While Parked

It is better not to park with the engine running. But if you ever have to, here are some things to know.

⚠ CAUTION:

Idling a vehicle in an enclosed area with poor ventilation is dangerous. Engine exhaust may enter the vehicle. Engine exhaust contains Carbon Monoxide (CO) which cannot be seen or smelled. It can cause unconsciousness and even death. Never run the engine in an enclosed area that has no fresh air ventilation. For more information, see *Engine Exhaust on page 2-33*.

⚠ CAUTION:

It can be dangerous to get out of the vehicle if the automatic transmission shift lever is not fully in P (Park) with the parking brake firmly set. The vehicle can roll. Do not leave the vehicle when the engine is running unless you have to. If you have left the engine running, the vehicle can move suddenly. You or others could be injured. To be sure the vehicle will not move, even when you are on fairly level ground, always set the parking brake and move the shift lever to P (Park).

Follow the proper steps to be sure the vehicle will not move. See *Shifting Into Park on page 2-30*.

If parking on a hill and pulling a trailer, see *Towing a Trailer on page 4-30*.

Mirrors

Manual Rearview Mirror

Hold the inside rearview mirror in the center to move it for a clearer view of behind your vehicle. Adjust the mirror to reduce the glare of headlamps from behind you. Push the tab forward for daytime use and pull it for nighttime use.

There are also three additional OnStar® control buttons located at the bottom of the mirror. See your dealer/retailer for more information on the system and how to subscribe to OnStar®. See *OnStar® System on page 2-38* for more information about the services OnStar® provides.

Cleaning the Mirror

Do not spray glass cleaner directly on the mirror. Use a soft towel dampened with water.

Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror

The vehicle may have an automatic dimming inside rearview mirror with a compass display and OnStar®.

Vehicles with OnStar® have three additional control buttons located at the bottom of the mirror. See your retailer/dealer for more information on the system and how to subscribe to OnStar. See *OnStar® System on page 2-38* for more information about the services OnStar provides.

⏻ **(On/Off):** Press to turn the dimming feature on or off. This button is located on the lower left side of the mirror.

Automatic Dimming Mirror Operation

Automatic dimming reduces the glare of lights from behind the vehicle. The dimming feature comes on and the indicator light illuminates each time the vehicle is started.

Cleaning the Mirror

Do not spray glass cleaner directly on the mirror. Use a soft towel dampened with water.

Compass

Compass Operation

There is a compass display in the upper right corner of the mirror.

Press ⏻ to turn the compass display on or off.

When the ignition and the compass feature are on, the compass displays the current compass direction, after a few seconds.

Compass Calibration

The compass can be calibrated by driving the vehicle in circles at 5 mph (8 km) or less until the display reads a direction.

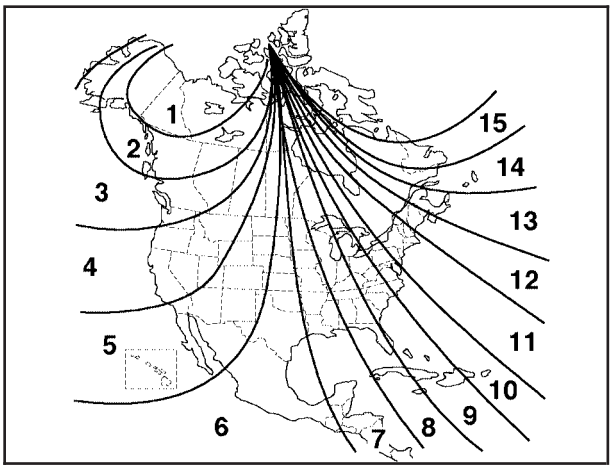
If after a few seconds the display does not show a compass direction, (N for North for example), there may be a strong magnetic field interfering with the compass. Interference can be caused by a magnetic antenna mount, note pad holder, or similar object. If the letter C appears in the compass window, the compass may need to be reset or calibrated.

Compass Variance

The mirror is set to zone eight. If you do not live in zone eight or drive out of the area, the compass variance needs to be changed to the appropriate zone.

To adjust for compass variance:

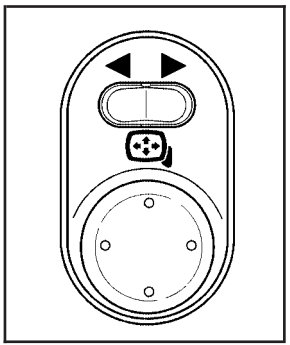
1. Find your current location and variance zone number on the following zone map.



2. Press and hold ⏻ until the zone number displays. The number shown is the current zone number.

3. Scroll through the zone numbers that appear in the window on the mirror by pressing the ⏻ button. Once you find your zone number, release the button. After about four seconds, the mirror returns to the compass display, and the new zone number is set. If C appears in the compass window, the compass may need calibration. See “Compass Calibration” listed previously.

Outside Power Mirrors



Controls for the outside power mirrors are located on the inside of the vehicle near the driver side mirror.

Use the selector switch located above the four-way control panel to choose either the left or right outside mirror. Then press the control pad to move the selected mirror in the desired direction.

To maximize the viewing area, adjust each mirror to see the side of your vehicle and the area beside and behind your vehicle.

Outside Automatic Dimming Mirror

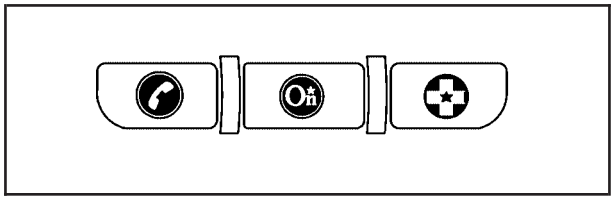
If the vehicle has this feature, the driver side mirror adjusts for the glare of headlamps behind you.

Outside Heated Mirrors

For vehicles with heated mirrors:

(Rear Window Defogger): Press to heat the mirrors. See “Rear Window Defogger” under *Climate Control System on page 3-19*.

OnStar® System



OnStar uses several innovative technologies and live advisors to provide a wide range of safety, security, information, and convenience services. If the airbags deploy, the system is designed to make an automatic call to OnStar Emergency advisors who can request emergency services be sent to your location. If the keys are locked in the vehicle, call OnStar at 1-888-4-ONSTAR to have a signal sent to unlock the doors. OnStar Hands-Free Calling, including 30 trial minutes good for 60 days, is available on most vehicles. OnStar Turn-by-Turn Navigation service, with one trial route, is available on most vehicles. Press the OnStar button to have an OnStar advisor contact Roadside Service.

OnStar service is provided subject to the OnStar Terms and Conditions included in the OnStar Subscriber glove box literature.

Some services such as Remote Door Unlock or Stolen Vehicle Location Assistance may not be available until the owner of the vehicle registers with OnStar. After the first prepaid year, contact OnStar to select a monthly or annual subscription payment plan. If a payment plan is not selected, the OnStar system and all services, including airbag notification and emergency services, may be deactivated and no longer available. For more information visit onstar.com (U.S.) or onstar.ca (Canada), or press the OnStar button to speak with an advisor.

Not all OnStar services are available on all vehicles. To check if this vehicle is able to provide the services described below, or for a full description of OnStar services and system limitations, see the OnStar Owner's Guide in the glove box or visit onstar.com (U.S.) or onstar.ca (Canada), contact OnStar at 1-888-4-ONSTAR (1-888-466-7827) or TTY 1-877-248-2080, or press the OnStar button to speak with an OnStar advisor 24 hours a day, 7 days a week.

OnStar Services Available with the Safe & Sound Plan

- Automatic Notification of Airbag Deployment
- Advanced Automatic Crash Notification (AACN) (If equipped)
- Link to Emergency Services
- Roadside Assistance
- Stolen Vehicle Location Assistance
- Remote Door Unlock/Vehicle Alert
- OnStar Vehicle Diagnostic Email
- GM Goodwrench On Demand Diagnostics
- OnStar Hands-Free Calling with 30 trial minutes
- OnStar Virtual Advisor (U.S. Only)

OnStar Services Included with Directions & Connections Plan

- All Safe and Sound Plan Services
- OnStar Turn-by-Turn Navigation (If equipped) or Driving Directions - Advisor delivered
- RideAssist
- Information and Convenience Services

OnStar Hands-Free Calling

OnStar Hands-Free Calling allows eligible OnStar subscribers to make and receive calls using voice commands. Hands-Free Calling is fully integrated into the vehicle, and can be used with OnStar Pre-Paid Minute Packages. Most vehicles include 30 trial minutes good for 60 days. Hands-Free Calling can also be linked to a Verizon Wireless service plan in the U.S. or a Bell Mobility service plan in Canada, depending on eligibility. To find out more, refer to the OnStar Owner's Guide in the vehicle's glove box, visit onstar.com or onstar.ca, or speak with an OnStar advisor by pressing the OnStar button or calling 1-888-4-ONSTAR (1-888-466-7827).

OnStar Turn-by-Turn Navigation

Vehicles with the OnStar Turn-by-Turn Navigation system can provide voice-guided driving directions. Press the OnStar button to have an OnStar advisor locate a business or address and download driving directions to the vehicle. Voice-guided directions to the desired destination will play through the audio system speakers. See the OnStar Owner's Guide for more information.

OnStar Virtual Advisor

OnStar Virtual Advisor is a feature of OnStar Hands-Free Calling that uses minutes to access location-based weather, local traffic reports, and stock quotes. Press the phone button and give a few simple voice commands to browse through the various topics. See the OnStar Owner's Guide for more information. This feature is only available in the continental U.S.

OnStar Steering Wheel Controls

This vehicle may have a Talk/Mute button that can be used to interact with OnStar Hands-Free Calling. See *Audio Steering Wheel Controls on page 3-89* for more information.

On some vehicles, the mute button can be used to dial numbers into voice mail systems, or to dial phone extensions. See the OnStar Owner's Guide for more information.

How OnStar Service Works

The OnStar system can record and transmit vehicle information. This information is automatically sent to an OnStar Call Center when the OnStar button is pressed, the emergency button is pressed, or if the airbags or AACN system deploy. This information usually includes the vehicle's GPS location and, in the event of a crash, additional information regarding the crash that the vehicle was involved in (e.g. the direction from which the vehicle was hit). When the Virtual Advisor feature of OnStar Hands-Free Calling is used, the vehicle also sends OnStar the vehicle's GPS location so they can provide services where it is located.

OnStar service cannot work unless the vehicle is in a place where OnStar has an agreement with a wireless service provider for service in that area. OnStar service also cannot work unless the vehicle is in a place where the wireless service provider OnStar has hired for that area has coverage, network capacity and reception when the service is needed, and technology that is compatible with the OnStar service. Not all services are available everywhere, particularly in remote or enclosed areas, or at all times.

Location information about the vehicle is only available if the GPS satellite signals are unobstructed and available.

The vehicle must have a working electrical system, including adequate battery power, for the OnStar equipment to operate. There are other problems OnStar cannot control that may prevent OnStar from providing OnStar service at any particular time or place. Some examples are damage to important parts of the vehicle in a crash, hills, tall buildings, tunnels, weather or wireless phone network congestion.

Your Responsibility

Increase the volume of the radio if the OnStar advisor cannot be heard. If the light next to the OnStar buttons is red, the system may not be functioning properly. Press the OnStar button and request a vehicle diagnostic. If the light appears clear (no light is appearing), your OnStar subscription has expired and all services have been deactivated. Press the OnStar button to confirm that the OnStar equipment is active.

Universal Home Remote System

The Universal Home Remote System provides a way to replace up to three hand-held Radio-Frequency (RF) transmitters used to activate devices such as garage door openers, security systems, and home lighting.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

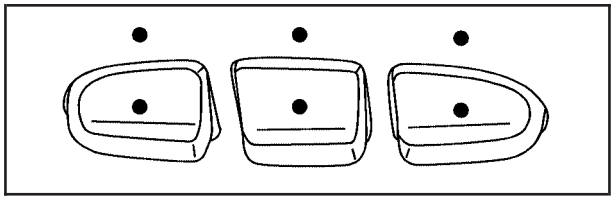
1. This device may not cause harmful interference.
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

This device complies with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause interference.
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Changes or modifications to this system by other than an authorized service facility could void authorization to use this equipment.

Universal Home Remote System Operation (With Three Round LED)



This vehicle may have the Universal Home Remote System. If there are three round Light Emitting Diode (LED) indicator lights above the Universal Home Remote buttons, follow the instructions below.

This system provides a way to replace up to three remote control transmitters used to activate devices such as garage door openers, security systems, and home automation devices.

Do not use this system with any garage door opener that does not have the stop and reverse feature. This includes any garage door opener model manufactured before April 1, 1982.

Read the instructions completely before attempting to program the transmitter. Because of the steps involved, it may be helpful to have another person assist with programming the transmitter.

Be sure to keep the original remote control transmitter for use in other vehicles, as well as, for future programming. Only the original remote control transmitter is needed for Fixed Code programming. The programmed buttons should be erased when the vehicle is sold or the lease ends. See “Erasing Universal Home Remote Buttons” later in this section.

Park the vehicle outside of the garage when programming a garage door. Be sure that people and objects are clear of the garage door or gate that is being programmed.

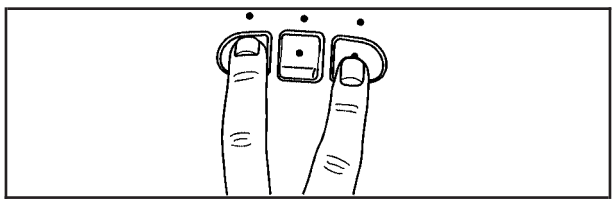
Programming Universal Home Remote — Rolling Code

For questions or help programming the Universal Home Remote System, call 1-866-572-2728 or go to learcar2u.com.

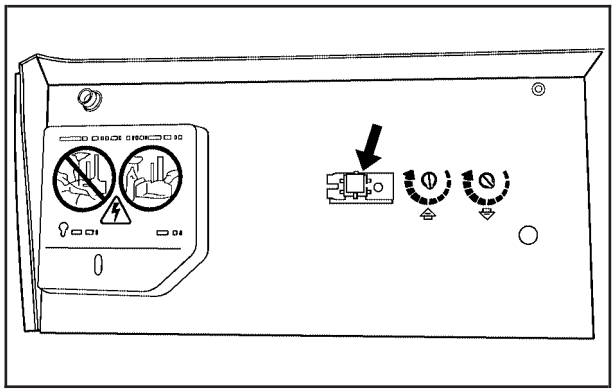
Most garage door openers sold after 1996 are Rolling Code units.

Programming a garage door opener involves time-sensitive actions, so read the entire procedure before starting. Otherwise, the device will time out and the procedure will have to be repeated.

To program up to three devices:



1. From inside the vehicle, press the two outside buttons at the same time for one to two seconds, and immediately release them.



2. Locate in the garage, the garage door opener receiver (motor-head unit). Locate the “Learn” or “Smart” button. It can usually be found where the hanging antenna wire is attached to the motor-head unit and may be a colored button. Press this button. After pressing this button, complete the following steps in less than 30 seconds.
3. Immediately return to the vehicle. Press and hold the Universal Home Remote button that will be used to control the garage door until the garage door moves. The indicator light, above the selected button, should slowly blink. This button may need to be held for up to 20 seconds.

4. Immediately, within one second, release the button when the garage door moves. The indicator light will blink rapidly until programming is complete.
5. Press and release the same button again. The garage door should move, confirming that programming is successful and complete.

To program another Rolling Code device such as an additional garage door opener, a security device, or home automation device, repeat Steps 1 through 5, choosing a different function button in Step 3 than what was used for the garage door opener.

If these instructions do not work, the garage door opener is probably a Fixed Code unit. Follow the Programming instructions that follow for a Fixed Code garage door opener.

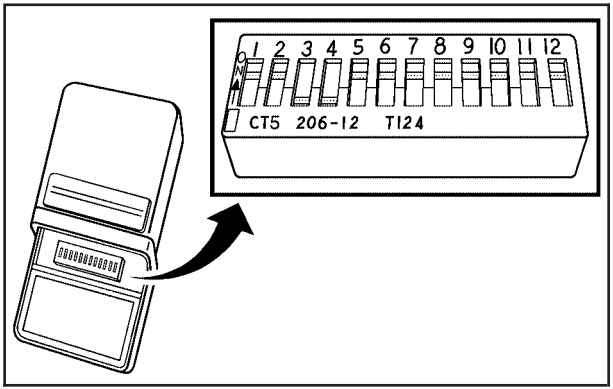
Programming Universal Home Remote — Fixed Code

For questions or help programming the Universal Home Remote System, call 1-866-572-2728 or go to learcar2u.com.

Most garage door openers sold before 1996 are Fixed Code units.

Programming a garage door opener involves time-sensitive actions, so read the entire procedure before starting. Otherwise, the device will time out and the procedure will have to be repeated.

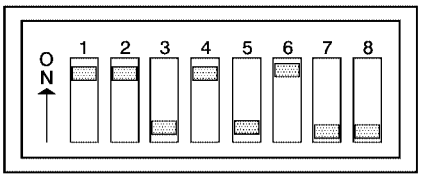
To program up to three devices:



1. To verify that the garage door opener is a Fixed Code unit, remove the battery cover on the hand held transmitter supplied by the manufacturer of the garage door opener motor. If there are a row of dip switches similar to the graphic above, the garage door opener is a Fixed Code unit. If you do not see a row of dip switches, return to the previous section for Programming Universal Home Remote – Rolling Code.

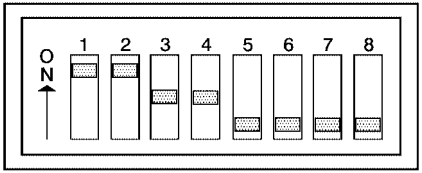
   Your hand held transmitter can have between eight to 12 dip switches depending on the brand of transmitter.

The garage door opener receiver (motor head unit) could also have a row of dip switches that can be used when programming the Universal Home Remote. If the total number of switches on the motor head and hand held transmitter are different, or if the dip switch settings are different, use the dip switch settings on the motor head unit to program the Universal Home Remote. The motor head dip switch settings can also be used when the original hand held transmitter is not available.



Switch Number	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
Switch Position	On	On	Off	On	Off	On	Off	Off
Your Universal Home Remote Button	Left	Left	Right	Left	Right	Left	Right	Right

Example of Eight Dip Switches with Two Positions



Switch Number	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
Switch Position	On	On	Neutral	Neutral	Off	Off	Off	Off
Your Universal Home Remote Button	Left	Left	Middle	Middle	Right	Right	Right	Right

Example of Eight Dip Switches with Three Positions

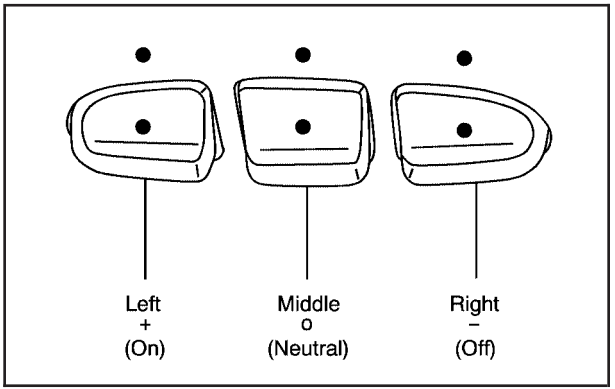
The panel of switches might not appear exactly as they do in the examples above, but they should be similar.

The switch positions on the hand-held transmitter could be labeled, as follows:

- A switch in the up position could be labeled as “Up,” “+,” or “On.”
- A switch in the down position could be labeled as “Down,” “–,” or “Off.”
- A switch in the middle position could be labeled as “Middle,” “0,” or “Neutral.”

2. Write down the eight to 12 switch settings from left to right as follows:
   - When a switch is in the up position, write “Left.”
   - When a switch is in the down position, write “Right.”
   - If a switch is set between the up and down position, write “Middle.”

   The switch settings written down in Step 2 now become the button strokes to be entered into the Universal Home Remote in Step 4. Be sure to enter the switch settings written down in Step 2, in order from left to right, into the Universal Home Remote, when completing Step 4.
3. From inside your vehicle, first firmly press all three buttons at the same time for about three seconds. Release the buttons to put the Universal Home Remote into programming mode.



4. The indicator lights will blink slowly. Enter each switch setting from Step 2 into your vehicle’s Universal Home Remote. You will have two and one-half minutes to complete Step 4. Now press one button on the Universal Home Remote for each switch setting as follows:
   - If you wrote “Left,” press the left button in the vehicle.
   - If you wrote “Right,” press the right button in the vehicle.
   - If you wrote “Middle,” press the middle button in the vehicle.

5. After entering all of the switch positions, again, firmly press and release all three buttons at the same time. The indicator lights will turn on.
6. Press and hold the button that will be used to control the garage door until the garage door moves. The indicator light above the selected button should slowly blink. This button may need to be held for up to 55 seconds.
7. Immediately release the button when the garage door moves. The indicator light will blink rapidly until programming is complete.
8. Press and release the same button again. The garage door should move, confirming that programming is successful and complete.

To program another Fixed Code device such as an additional garage door opener, a security device, or home automation device, repeat Steps 1-8, choosing a different button in Step 6 than what was used for the garage door opener.

Using Universal Home Remote

Press and hold the appropriate button for at least half of a second. The indicator light will come on while the signal is being transmitted.

Reprogramming Universal Home Remote Buttons

Any of the three buttons can be reprogrammed by repeating the instructions.

Erasing Universal Home Remote Buttons

The programmed buttons should be erased when the vehicle is sold or the lease ends.

To erase either Rolling Code or Fixed Code on the Universal Home Remote device:

1. Press and hold the two outside buttons at the same time for approximately 20 seconds, until the indicator lights, located directly above the buttons, begin to blink rapidly.
2. Once the indicator lights begin to blink, release both buttons. The codes from all buttons will be erased.

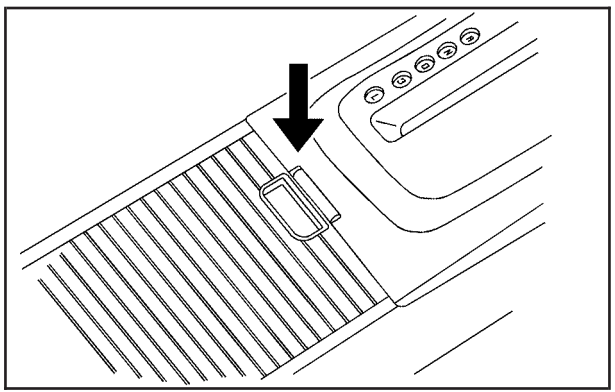
For help or information on the Universal Home Remote System, call the customer assistance phone number under *Customer Assistance Offices on page 7-6*.

Storage Areas

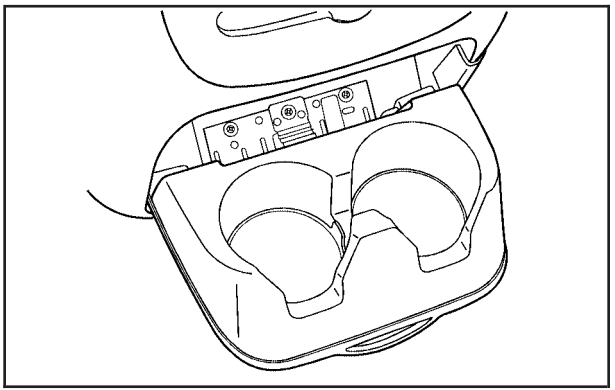
Glove Box

Lift up on the glove box lever to open it.

Cupholders



Two removable cupholders and additional storage areas are located at the rear of the shift lever. Push the button and the cover will slide back automatically for access. Slide the cover forward and lock into place to close.



Pull down the door on the back of the center console to use the rear seat cupholders.

Center Console Storage

There is a center console with two storage areas. Lift the passenger side lever to access the upper storage tray. Lift the driver side lever to access the lower storage area.

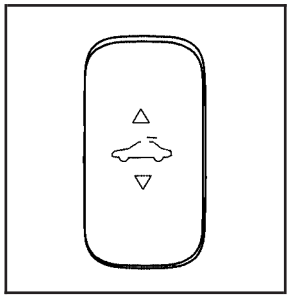
Garment Hooks

Garment hooks are located above the rear passenger doors.

Convenience Net

Use the convenience net, located in the rear, to store small loads as far forward as possible. The net should not be used to store heavy loads.

Sunroof



On vehicles with a sunroof, the switch is located on the headliner between the map lamps.

The sunroof will only operate while the ignition is in ON/RUN, ACC/ACCESSORY, or if Retained Accessory Power (RAP) is active. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP) on page 2-23*.

Press the back of the switch and release it to open the sunroof to the vent position. From the vent position, press and release the back of the switch to express-open the sunroof. To stop the sunroof from express opening, press the switch again. If the sunshade is closed, it will open automatically when the sunroof opens past the vented position.

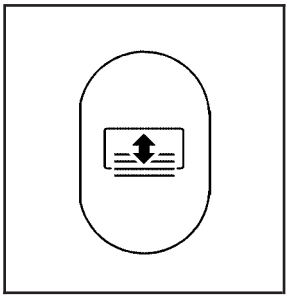
A deflector will automatically raise when the sunroof is opened. The deflector will retract when the sunroof is closed.

To close the sunroof, press the front of the switch and hold it until the sunroof is closed. The sunroof will stop if the switch is released. Close the sunshade by hand.

The sunroof glass panel cannot be opened or closed if the vehicle has an electrical failure.

Notice: **Forcing the sunshade forward of the sliding glass panel may cause damage and the sunroof may not operate properly. Always close the glass panel before closing the sunshade.**

Sunshade



The automatic sunshade control is located on the headliner, between the map lamp controls.

The sunshade can be independently opened or closed while the panoramic sunroof is closed. To express-open or express-close the sunshade, press and release the control rearward or forward. The sunshade will retract to the full-open or closed position. To stop the movement of the sunshade, press the control a second time. To close the sunshade to a particular position, continue to press the control and release it when the desired position is reached.

The sunshade cannot be opened or closed if the vehicle has an electrical failure.

Section 3 Instrument Panel

Instrument Panel Overview 3-4
- Hazard Warning Flashers 3-6
- Horn 3-6
- Tilt and Telescopic Steering Wheel 3-6
- Turn Signal/Multifunction Lever 3-7
- Turn and Lane-Change Signals 3-7
- Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer 3-8
- Flash-to-Pass 3-8
- Windshield Wipers 3-8
- Windshield Washer 3-9
- Cruise Control 3-10
- Headlamps 3-13
- Headlamps on Reminder 3-13
- Headlamps Off in Park 3-13
- Delayed Headlamps 3-14
- Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) 3-14
- Automatic Headlamp System 3-15
- Fog Lamps 3-15
- Instrument Panel Brightness 3-16
- Dome Lamps 3-16
- Entry/Exit Lighting 3-16
- Parade Dimming 3-16
- Reading Lamps 3-16
- Electric Power Management 3-17
- Battery Run-Down Protection 3-18
- Accessory Power Outlet(s) 3-18

Climate Controls 3-19
- Climate Control System 3-19
- Automatic Climate Control System 3-23
- Outlet Adjustment 3-26

Warning Lights, Gages, and Indicators 3-27
- Instrument Panel Cluster 3-28
- Speedometer and Odometer 3-29
- Trip Odometer 3-29
- Tachometer 3-29
- Safety Belt Reminders 3-29
- Airbag Readiness Light 3-30
- Passenger Airbag Status Indicator 3-31
- Charging System Light 3-32
- Brake System Warning Light 3-33
- Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light 3-34
- Electronic Stability Control (ESC)/ Traction Control System (TCS) Indicator/ Warning Light 3-34
- Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Light 3-35
- Engine Coolant Temperature Gage 3-36
- Tire Pressure Light 3-36
- Malfunction Indicator Lamp 3-37
- Oil Pressure Light 3-40
- Security Light 3-41
- Cruise Control Light 3-41
- Highbeam On Light 3-41
- Fuel Gage 3-42

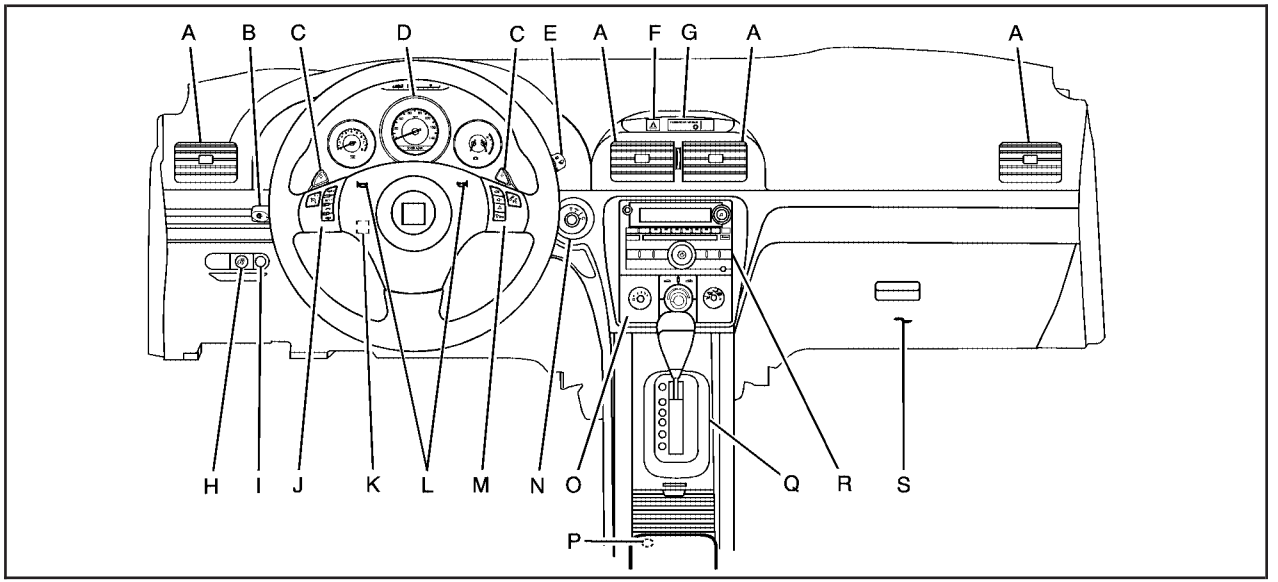
Section 3 Instrument Panel

Driver Information Center (DIC) 3-43
DIC Operation and Displays 3-43
DIC Warnings and Messages 3-45
DIC Vehicle Personalization 3-50

Audio System(s) 3-55
Setting the Clock 3-56
Radio(s) 3-57
Using an MP3 3-67
XM Radio Messages 3-74
Bluetooth® 3-75
Rear Seat Audio (RSA) 3-86
Theft-Deterrent Feature 3-89
Audio Steering Wheel Controls 3-89
Radio Reception 3-91
Backglass Antenna 3-92
XM™ Satellite Radio Antenna System 3-92
Chime Level Adjustment 3-92

✍ NOTES

Instrument Panel Overview



The main components of the instrument panel are the following:

A. *Outlet Adjustment on page 3-26*.

B. *Turn Signal/Multifunction Lever on page 3-7*.

C. Driver Shift Control (If Equipped). *Automatic Transmission Operation (Six Speed Transmission) on page 2-26*.

D. *Instrument Panel Cluster on page 3-28*.

E. *Windshield Wipers on page 3-8* and *Windshield Washer on page 3-9*.

F. *Hazard Warning Flashers on page 3-6*.

G. *Passenger Airbag Status Indicator on page 3-31*.

H. Instrument Panel Brightness Control. See *Instrument Panel Brightness on page 3-16*.

I. *Fog Lamps on page 3-15*.

J. *Cruise Control on page 3-10*. *Driver Information Center (DIC) on page 3-43*.

K. *Tilt and Telescopic Steering Wheel on page 3-6*.

L. *Horn on page 3-6*.

M. *Audio Steering Wheel Controls on page 3-89* (If Equipped).

N. *Ignition Positions on page 2-22*.

O. *Climate Control System on page 3-19* or *Automatic Climate Control System on page 3-23*.

P. *Traction Control System (TCS) on page 4-8*.

Q. Shift Lever. See *Automatic Transmission Operation (Six Speed Transmission) on page 2-26*.

R. *Audio System(s) on page 3-55*.

S. *Glove Box on page 2-48*.

Hazard Warning Flashers

⚠ **(Hazard Warning Flasher):** Press this button located on the instrument panel, to make the front and rear turn signal lamps flash on and off. This warns others that you are having trouble.

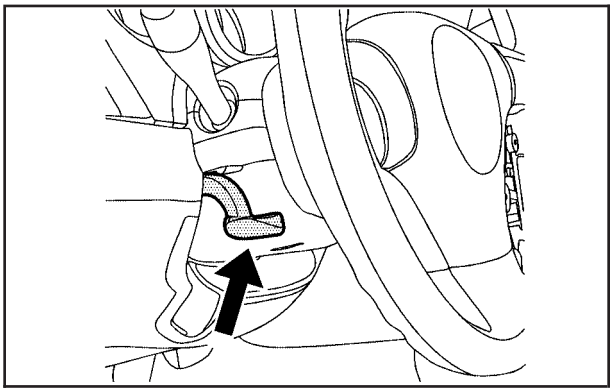
Press ⚠ again to turn the flashers off.

Horn

Press near or on the horn symbols on the steering wheel pad to sound the horn.

Tilt and Telescopic Steering Wheel

A tilt and telescope wheel lets the steering wheel be adjusted.

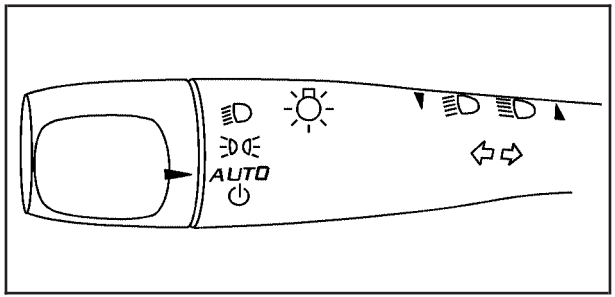


The lever is located on the left side of the steering column.

To tilt and telescope the steering wheel, pull down the lever. Then move the steering wheel up or down or backward or forward into a comfortable position. Pull the lever up to lock the steering wheel in place.

Do not adjust the steering wheel while driving.

Turn Signal/Multifunction Lever



The lever on the left side of the steering column includes the following:

⇦⇨ : Turn and Lane-Change Signals

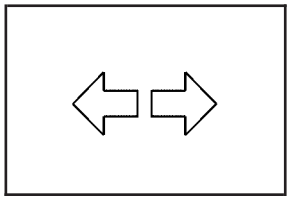
: Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer

: Exterior Lamp Control

Flash-to-Pass.

Information for these features is on the pages following.

Turn and Lane-Change Signals



An arrow on the instrument panel cluster flashes in the direction of the turn or lane change.

Move the lever all the way up or down to signal a turn.

Raise or lower the lever until the arrow starts to flash to signal a lane change. Hold it there until lane change is complete.

The lever returns to its starting position when it is released.

If after signaling a turn or lane change the arrows flash rapidly or do not come on, a signal bulb could be burned out.

Have the bulbs replaced. If the bulb is not burned out, check the fuse. See *Fuses on page 5-91*.

Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer

To change the headlamps from low beam to high beam, push the turn signal/multifunction lever away from you.

This instrument panel cluster light comes on if the high beam lamps are turned on while the ignition is in ON/RUN.

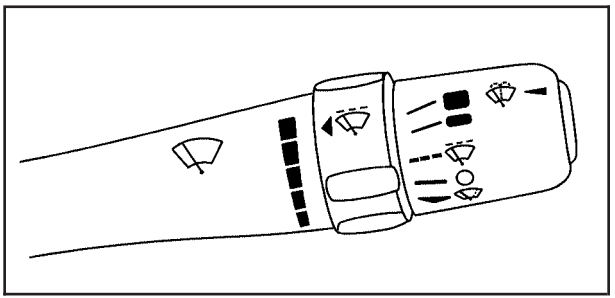
To change the headlamps from high beam to low beam, pull the turn signal lever toward you.

Flash-to-Pass

This feature lets the high-beam headlamps be used to signal a driver in front of you that you want to pass.

Pull the turn signal/multifunction lever toward you until the high-beam headlamps come on, then release the lever to turn them off.

Windshield Wipers



The windshield wiper lever is located on the right side of the steering wheel.

Move the lever to control the windshield wipers.

(Off): Turns off the windshield wipers.

(Intermittent; Speed Sensitive Wipers): For intermittent or speed sensitive operation. The amount of delay time varies between wiping cycles due to the delay setting selected or the speed of the vehicle. As vehicle speed is increased or decreased, the wiper interval also increases or decreases.

(Delay): While the lever is in the intermittent position, turn the intermittent adjust band with this symbol on it up or down to select a shorter or longer delay between wiping cycles. To the left of the adjust band are bars, increasing in size from bottom to top, that indicate the frequency of the wipes. Smaller bars mean the wipers movement is less frequent. Larger bars mean the movement is more frequent.

(Low Speed): For steady wiping at low speed.

(High Speed): For wiping at a high speed.

(Mist): Move the lever all the way down for a single wiping cycle. Hold it there until the windshield wipers start; then release. The wipers stop after one wiping cycle. Hold the lever down longer, for more wipe cycles.

Clear ice and snow from the wiper blades before using them.

If the wiper blades are frozen to the windshield, carefully loosen or thaw them. If they become damaged, install new blades.

Heavy snow or ice can overload the wiper motor. A circuit breaker stops the motor until it cools. If the motor gets stuck, turn the wipers off, clear away the snow or ice, and then turn the wipers back on.

As an added safety feature, if the wipers are on for more than 15 seconds, the vehicle's headlamps turn on automatically. They turn off 15 seconds after the wipers are turned off.

Windshield Washer

Press the button at the end of the windshield wiper lever until the washers begin.

⚠ CAUTION:

In freezing weather, do not use your washer until the windshield is warmed. Otherwise the washer fluid can form ice on the windshield, blocking your vision.

When the button is released, the washers stop, but the wipers continue to wipe about three times or resume the previous speed.

Cruise Control

Cruise control lets a speed of about 25 mph (40 km/h) or more be maintained without keeping your foot on the accelerator. Cruise control does not work at speeds below 25 mph (40 km/h).

⚠ CAUTION:

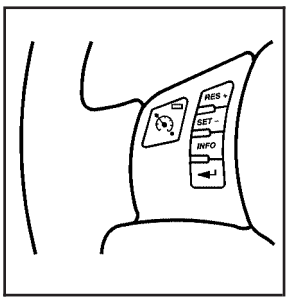
Cruise control can be dangerous where you cannot drive safely at a steady speed. So, do not use the cruise control on winding roads or in heavy traffic.

Cruise control can be dangerous on slippery roads. On such roads, fast changes in tire traction can cause excessive wheel slip, and you could lose control. Do not use cruise control on slippery roads.

Setting Cruise Control

⚠ CAUTION:

If you leave your cruise control on when you are not using cruise, you might hit a button and go into cruise when you do not want to. You could be startled and even lose control. Keep the cruise control switch off until you want to use cruise control.



The cruise control buttons are located on the steering wheel.

(On/Off): Press to turn the cruise control system on and off.

RES+ (Resume): Press to resume a set speed and to accelerate the speed.

SET– (Set): Press to set a speed and to decrease the speed.

To set a speed do the following:

1. Press to turn cruise control on. The indicator light on the button comes on.
2. Get up to the desired speed.
3. Press the SET– and release it. The cruise symbol displays in the instrument panel cluster to show the system is engaged.
4. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

When the brakes are applied, the cruise control shuts off.

If the vehicle is in cruise control and the Traction Control System (TCS) begins to limit wheel spin, the cruise control automatically disengages. See *Traction Control System (TCS) on page 4-8*. When road conditions allow, the cruise control can be used again.

Resuming a Set Speed

If the cruise control is set at a desired speed and then the brakes are applied, the cruise control is disengaged. But it does not need to be reset. The cruise symbol in the instrument panel cluster also goes out indicating cruise is no longer engaged. Once the vehicle speed is 25 mph (40 km/h) or more, briefly press the RES+.

The vehicle returns to the previously set speed and stays there.

Increasing Speed While Using Cruise Control

There are two ways to increase the vehicle speed while using cruise control:

- If the cruise control system is already engaged, press and hold the RES+ button until the desired speed is reached, then release it.
- To increase the vehicle speed in small amounts, briefly press the RES+ and then release it. Each time this is done, the vehicle goes about 1 mph (1.6 km/h) faster.

Reducing Speed While Using Cruise Control

If the cruise control system is already engaged:

- Press and hold the SET– until the desired lower speed is reached, then release it.
- To slow down in very small amounts, briefly push the SET–. Each time this is done, the vehicle goes about 1 mph (1.6 km/h) slower.

Passing Another Vehicle While Using Cruise Control

Use the accelerator pedal to increase the vehicle's speed. When you take your foot off the pedal, the vehicle slows down to the previously set cruise control speed.

Using Cruise Control on Hills

How well the cruise control works on hills depends upon the vehicle's speed, load, and the steepness of the hills. When going up steep hills, you might have to step on the accelerator pedal to maintain the vehicle's speed. When going downhill, you might have to brake or shift to a lower gear to keep the vehicle at a lower speed. When the brakes are applied this ends the cruise control.

Ending Cruise Control

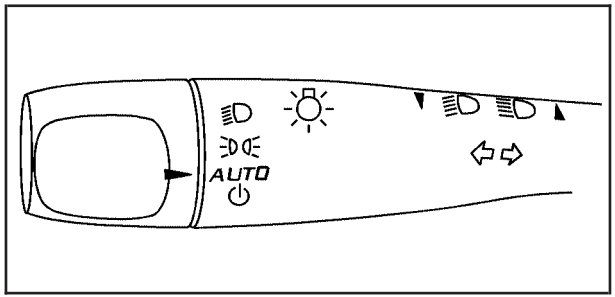
There are two ways to disengage the cruise control:

- Step lightly on the brake pedal; when cruise control disengages, the cruise symbol in the instrument panel cluster goes out.
- Press the button, to turn off the cruise control system.

Erasing Speed Memory

The cruise control set speed memory is erased when the cruise control or the ignition is turned off.

Headlamps



The band on the lever on the outboard side of the steering column operates the exterior lamps.

The exterior lamp control has the following four positions:

(Headlamps): Turns on the headlamps, parking lamps, and taillamps.

(Parking Lamps): Turns on the parking lamps and taillamps only.

AUTO (Automatic Headlamp System): Automatically turns on the Daytime Running Lamps during daytime, and the headlamps, parking lamps, and taillamps at night.

(Off/On): Turn the band to this position to turn on the Automatic Headlamp System. In Canada, this position only works when a vehicle is in the P (Park) position.

To turn on the Automatic Headlamp System, turn the switch to off/on. To turn them off, turn the switch to off/on again. This is a momentary control switch that springs back when released. The Automatic Headlamp System always turns on at the beginning of an ignition cycle.

Headlamps on Reminder

If the driver's door is opened and the ignition is turned off while leaving the lamps on, a warning chime will sound.

Headlamps Off in Park

This feature works when the ignition is in the ON/RUN position and it is dark outside. To turn the headlamps off when it is dark outside but keep other exterior lights on, turn the exterior lamp control to the parking lamp position.

To turn on the headlamps along with the other lamps when it is dark outside, turn the exterior lamp control to the AUTO or headlamp position.

This function does not work for vehicles first sold in Canada.

Delayed Headlamps

The delayed headlamps feature keeps the headlamps on for 20 seconds after the key is turned to LOCK/OFF, then the headlamps automatically turn off.

To override the 20 second delayed headlamp feature while it is active turn the turn signal/multifunction lever up one position and then back to AUTO.

Daytime Running Lamps (DRL)

Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) can make it easier for others to see the front of your vehicle during the day. Fully functional DRL are required on all vehicles first sold in Canada. The vehicle has a light sensor on top of the instrument panel that controls the DRL. Do not cover this sensor or the head lamps will be on when they are not needed.

The DRL system makes the low-beam headlamps come on at a reduced brightness when the following conditions are met:

- The ignition is on.
- The exterior lamps control is in AUTO.
- The exterior lamps control is in the parking lamps only position (This applies only to vehicles that are first sold in Canada).
- The light sensor detects daytime light.
- The parking brake is released or the vehicle is not in P (Park).

When the DRL system is on, the taillamps, sidemarker lamps, parking lamps, and instrument panel lights are not on unless you turn the exterior lamps control to the parking lamp position.

The regular headlamp system should be turned on when they are needed.

Automatic Headlamp System

When it is dark enough outside, the automatic headlamp system turns on the headlamps at the normal brightness along with other lamps such as the taillamps, sidemarker, parking lamps, and the instrument panel lights. The radio lights will also be dim.

The vehicle has a light sensor on top of the instrument panel that controls the automatic headlamp system. Do not cover the sensor or the automatic headlamp system will turn on when it is not needed.

There is a delay in the transition between the daytime and nighttime operation of the DRL and the automatic headlamp systems so that driving under bridges or bright overhead street lights does not affect the system. The DRL and automatic headlamp systems will only be affected when the light sensor sees a change in lighting lasting longer than this delay.

If vehicle is started in a dark garage, the automatic headlamp system comes on immediately. Once the vehicle leaves the garage, it takes about one minute for the automatic headlamp system to change to DRL if it is light outside. During that delay, the instrument panel cluster may not be as bright as usual. Make sure the instrument panel brightness control is in the full bright position. See *Instrument Panel Brightness on page 3-16*.

To idle the vehicle with the automatic headlamp system off, turn the ignition on and set the exterior light switch to the off/on position. For vehicles first sold in Canada, the transmission must stay in P (Park) for this function.

The regular headlamps should be used when needed.

Fog Lamps

For vehicles with fog lamps, the button for this feature is located on the instrument panel, to the left of the steering wheel.

The ignition must be on for the fog lamps to work.

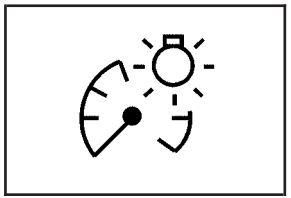
: Press to turn the fog lamps on or off. An indicator light comes on when the fog lamps are on.

The parking lamps automatically turn on and off when the fog lamps are turned on and off.

The fog lamps turn off while the high-beam headlamps are turned on.

Some localities have laws that require the headlamps to be on along with the fog lamps.

Instrument Panel Brightness



The knob with this symbol is located on the instrument panel to the left of the steering column.

Turn the knob clockwise or counterclockwise to brighten or dim the lights.

Turn the knob completely clockwise to turn on the interior lamps.

Dome Lamps

The dome lamps come on when any door is opened. They turn off after all the doors are closed.

The dome lamps can also be turned on by turning the instrument panel brightness knob, located on the instrument panel to the left of the steering column, clockwise to the farthest position. In this position, the dome lamps remain on whether a door is opened or closed.

Entry/Exit Lighting

The lamps inside the vehicle come on when any door is opened. These lamps fade out about 20 seconds after all of the doors have been closed or when the ignition is turned to ON/RUN. They also come on when the unlock symbol button or the horn symbol is pressed on the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) system transmitter.

The lamps inside the vehicle stay on for about 20 seconds after the key is removed from the ignition to provide light as you exit.

Parade Dimming

Parade dimming is a separate lighting mode that comes on while the parking lamps are turned on during the day. It prevents the display lights and indicator lights from being dim, while the parking lamps are used during the day.

Reading Lamps

For vehicles with front and rear reading lamps, press the lens to turn the lamp on and off, while the doors are closed. These lamps come on automatically when any door is opened.

Electric Power Management

The vehicle has Electric Power Management (EPM) that estimates the battery's temperature and state of charge. It then adjusts the voltage for best performance and extended life of the battery.

When the battery's state of charge is low, the voltage is raised slightly to quickly bring the charge back up. When the state of charge is high, the voltage is lowered slightly to prevent overcharging. If the vehicle has a voltmeter gage or a voltage display on the Driver Information Center (DIC), you may see the voltage move up or down. This is normal. If there is a problem, an alert will be displayed.

The battery can be discharged at idle if the electrical loads are very high. This is true for all vehicles. This is because the generator (alternator) may not be spinning fast enough at idle to produce all the power that is needed for very high electrical loads.

A high electrical load occurs when several of the following are on, such as: headlamps, high beams, fog lamps, rear window defogger, climate control fan at high speed, heated seats, engine cooling fans, trailer loads, and loads plugged into accessory power outlets.

EPM works to prevent excessive discharge of the battery. It does this by balancing the generator's output and the vehicle's electrical needs. It can increase engine idle speed to generate more power, whenever needed. It can temporarily reduce the power demands of some accessories.

Normally, these actions occur in steps or levels, without being noticeable. In rare cases at the highest levels of corrective action, this action may be noticeable to the driver. If so, a Driver Information Center (DIC) message might be displayed, such as BATTERY SAVER ACTIVE, BATTERY VOLTAGE LOW, or LOW BATTERY. If this message is displayed, it is recommended that the driver reduce the electrical loads as much as possible. See *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-45*.

Battery Run-Down Protection

The battery run-down feature is designed to protect the vehicle's battery.

When any interior lamp (trunk, reading lamps, or dome lamp) is left on when the ignition is turned off, the battery run-down protection system automatically shuts the lamp off after 20 minutes. This prevents draining of the battery.

To reactivate the interior lamps, do one of the following:

- Open any door.
- Press any Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter button.
- Press the power door lock switch.
- Press the remote trunk release.
- Turn the lamp that was left on to off and then to on again.

Accessory Power Outlet(s)

Accessory power outlets can be used to connect auxiliary electrical equipment, such as a cellular telephone.

There are two accessory power outlets. One accessory power outlet is inside the center storage console and the other is located on the center storage console below the climate controls.

To use an outlet, lift the protective cap. When not in use, always cover the outlet with the protective cap. The accessory power outlet is operational at all times.

Notice: **Leaving electrical equipment plugged in for an extended period of time while the vehicle is off will drain the battery. Power is always supplied to the outlets. Always unplug electrical equipment when not in use and do not plug in equipment that exceeds the maximum 20 ampere rating.**

Certain electrical accessories may not be compatible with the accessory power outlet and could result in blown vehicle or adapter fuses. If you experience a problem, see your retailer for additional information on the accessory power outlet.

Notice: **Adding any electrical equipment to your vehicle can damage it or keep other components from working as they should. The repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Do not use equipment exceeding maximum amperage rating of 20 amperes. Check with your dealer/retailer before adding electrical equipment.**

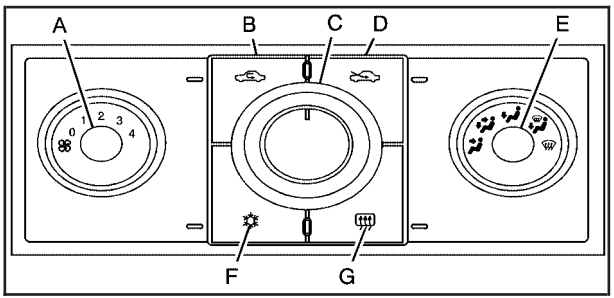
When adding electrical equipment, be sure to follow the proper installation instructions included with the equipment.

Notice: **Improper use of the power outlet can cause damage not covered by the warranty. Do not hang any type of accessory or accessory bracket from the plug because the power outlets are designed for accessory power plugs only.**

Climate Controls

Climate Control System

The heating, cooling and ventilation for the vehicle can be controlled with this system.



A. Fan Control
B. Recirculation
C. Temperature Control
D. Outside Air
E. Air Delivery Mode Control
F. Air Conditioning
G. Rear Window Defogger

Operation

Temperature Control: Turn clockwise or counterclockwise to increase or decrease the temperature inside the vehicle.

When it is cold outside 0°F (–18°C) or lower, use the engine coolant heater, if vehicle has one, to provide warmer air faster to the vehicle. An engine coolant heater warms the coolant the engine uses that provides heat to warm the inside of the vehicle. For more information, see *Engine Coolant Heater on page 2-25*.

(Fan Control): Turn clockwise or counterclockwise to increase or decrease the fan speed. The fan must be on to run the air-conditioning compressor.

Air Delivery Mode Control: Turn clockwise or counterclockwise to change the current airflow mode.

Select from the following:

(Vent): Air is directed to the instrument panel outlets.

(Bi-Level): Air is divided between the instrument panel and floor outlets. Some air will be directed toward the side windows.

(Floor): Air is directed to the floor outlets with some air directed to the windshield and side window outlets.

(Defog): This mode clears the windows of fog or moisture. Air is directed to the windshield and floor outlets, with some air directed to the side windows. When this mode is selected, the system automatically turns off recirculation and runs the air-conditioning compressor unless the outside temperature is at or below freezing. The air-conditioning compressor operates although the indicator light is not on. The air-conditioning indicator light turns off when defog is selected. If the air-conditioning button is pressed while in defog mode, the indicator light will turn on. If the button is pressed again, the light will turn off. The recirculation mode cannot be selected while in the defog mode. Do not drive the vehicle until all the windows are clear.

(Defrost): This mode quickly clears the windshield of fog or frost. Air is directed to the windshield with some air directed to the floor vents. In this mode, outside air is pulled into the vehicle. The air-conditioning compressor will not run unless the outside temperature is at or below freezing. The air-conditioning compressor operates although the indicator light is not on. The air-conditioning indicator light turns off when defrost is selected. If the air-conditioning button is pressed while in defrost mode, the indicator light turns on. If the button is pressed again, the light turns off. Recirculation cannot be selected while in the defrost mode.

To help clear the windshield quickly, do the following:

1. Select .
2. Select the highest temperature.
3. Select the highest fan speed.

(Air Conditioning): Press to turn the air conditioning system on or off. An indicator light comes on to show it is on.

The air-conditioning system removes moisture from the air, so a small amount of water might drip under the vehicle while it is idling or after the engine is turned off is normal.

Maximum Air Conditioning

On hot days, open the windows to let hot inside air escape; then close them. This helps reduce the time it takes for the vehicle to cool down. It also helps the air conditioning system operate more efficiently.

For quick cool down on hot days, do the following:

1. Select the vent mode.
2. Select the highest fan speed.
3. Select air conditioning.
4. Select the recirculation mode.
5. Select the coolest temperature.

Using these settings together for long periods of time can cause the air inside of the vehicle to become too dry. To prevent this from happening, after the air in the vehicle has cooled, turn the recirculation mode off.

(Outside Air): Press to turn the outside air mode on. An indicator light comes on to show that it is on. Air from outside the vehicle will circulate throughout the vehicle. The outside air mode can be used with all modes, but it cannot be used with the recirculation mode. Press to cancel the recirculation mode.

(Recirculation): Press to turn the recirculation mode on. An indicator light comes on to show that it is on. This mode recirculates and helps to quickly cool the air inside the vehicle. It can be used to prevent outside air and odors from entering the vehicle. The recirculation indicator light blinks three times if you try to use recirculation in a mode in which it cannot function.

Pressing this button cancels the outside air mode. When switching to the defog or defrost modes the system automatically moves from recirculation to outside air. When the vehicle or fan is turned off and back on, the system defaults to outside air automatically. Only use recirculation mode when it is needed for comfort, since window fogging can occur.

Rear Window Defogger

The rear window defogger uses a warming grid to remove fog or frost from the rear window.

REAR: Press to turn the rear window defogger on or off. An indicator light comes on to show that the rear window defogger is on. Be sure to clear as much snow from the rear window as possible.

If driving below 50 mph (80 km/h), the rear window defogger turns off about 15 minutes after the button is pressed. If turned on again, the defogger only runs for about seven minutes before turning off. The defogger can also be turned off by turning off the engine.

If the vehicle's speed is maintained above 50 mph (80 km/h), the rear window defogger remains on once the button is pressed.

If the vehicle has heated outside mirrors, the surface of the outside mirrors heat when the rear window defogger is activated. See *Outside Power Mirrors on page 2-37*.

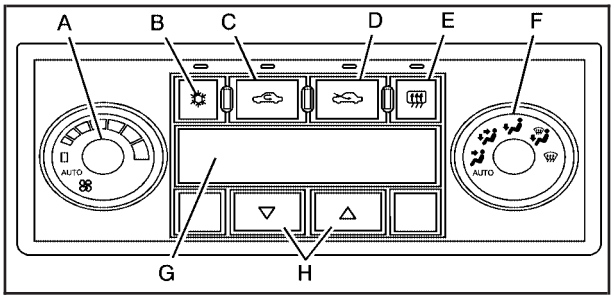
Notice: **Do not use anything sharp on the inside of the rear window. If you do, you could cut or damage the warming grid, and the repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Do not attach a temporary vehicle license, tape, a decal or anything similar to the defogger grid.**

Remote Start Climate Control Operation

For vehicles with the remote start feature, when it is activated the climate control system heats or cools the inside of the vehicle using the modes that were set before the vehicle was turned off. The climate control knobs will remain active during a remote start. However, the climate control buttons will be inactive until the ignition is turned on by the key. If the fan is off, the climate control system will not operate during remote start. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation on page 2-5*.

Automatic Climate Control System

For vehicles with this system, the heating, cooling, and ventilation can be automatically controlled.



A. Fan Control
B. Air Conditioning
C. Recirculation
D. Outside Air
E. Rear Window Defogger
F. Air Delivery Mode Control
G. Display
H. Temperature Control

Automatic Operation

AUTO (Automatic): Select AUTO on both the fan speed control and the air delivery mode control knobs to activate the automatic system. When automatic operation is active the system controls the inside temperature and air delivery.

To place the system in automatic mode do the following:

1. Turn the fan knob and the mode knob to the AUTO position.

   The current set temperature displays. When AUTO is selected, the air conditioning operation and air inlet is automatically controlled. The air conditioning compressor runs while the outside temperature is over about 40°F (4°C). The air inlet will normally be set to outside air. If it is hot outside, the air inlet may automatically switch to recirculate inside air to help quickly cool down the vehicle.

2. Set the temperature.

   An initial setting of 73°F (23°C) is recommended. Allow about 20 minutes for the system to regulate. Press △ or ▽ to adjust the temperature setting as necessary. If the temperature is set at 60°F (15°C) the system remains at the maximum cooling setting. If the temperature is set at 90°F (32°C) the system remains at the maximum heat setting. Choosing either maximum setting does not cause the vehicle to heat or cool any faster.

Do not to cover the sensor located on the top of the instrument panel near the windshield. This sensor regulates air temperature based on the intensity of the sun.

Also do not cover the sensor grille on the lower right side of the climate control faceplate, as this regulates the inside temperature.

To avoid blowing cold air at engine start-up in cold weather, the system delays turning on the fan until warm air is available. The length of delay depends on the engine coolant temperature. Turning the fan knob overrides this delay and changes the fan to the selected speed.

Manual Operation

(Off): Select this position on the fan knob to turn off the entire climate control system. Outside air still enters the vehicle. The airflow direction and temperature can be adjusted.

/ Temperature Control: Press the arrows to increase or decrease the temperature inside the vehicle.

(Fan Control): Turn clockwise or counterclockwise to increase or decrease the fan speed.

Air Delivery Mode Control: Turn clockwise or counterclockwise to change the direction of the airflow in the vehicle.

Select from the following:

(Vent): Air is directed to the instrument panel outlets.

(Bi-Level): Air is divided between the instrument panel outlets and the floor outlets.

(Floor): Air is directed to the floor outlets with some air directed to the side window outlets.

(Defog): This mode clears the windows of fog or moisture. Air is directed to the floor and windshield outlets.

(Defrost): This mode clears the windows of fog or frost more quickly. The system automatically controls the fan speed if defrost is selected from the AUTO mode. If the outside temperature is 40°F (4°C) or warmer, the air conditioning compressor automatically runs to help dehumidify the air and dry the windshield. The air conditioning indicator light blinks three times if the compressor is turned off while in this mode.

(Air Conditioning): Press turn the air conditioning on and off. An indicator light turns on to show the air conditioning is on.

When air conditioning is selected or is in AUTO mode, the system runs the air conditioning automatically to cool and dehumidify the air entering the vehicle.

On hot days, open the windows long enough to let hot inside air escape. This reduces the time it takes for the vehicle to cool down. Then keep the windows closed for the air conditioner to work its best.

On cool, but sunny days while using manual operation of the automatic system, use bi-level to deliver warm air to the floor and cooler air to the instrument panel outlets. To warm or cool the air delivered, press the temperature buttons to the desired setting.

In AUTO mode the system cools and dehumidifies the air inside the vehicle. Also while in AUTO mode, the system maximizes its performance by using recirculation as necessary.

Heating: On cold days when using manual operation of the automatic system, use floor mode to deliver air to the floor outlets. To warm or cool the air delivered, press ▽ or △ to the desired temperature setting.

To use the automatic mode, turn the knob to AUTO and press ▽ or △ to adjust the temperature.

(Outside Air): Press to turn the outside air mode on. An indicator light comes on to show it is on. Air from outside the vehicle will circulate throughout the vehicle. The outside air mode can be used with all modes, but it cannot be used with the recirculation mode. Pressing this button cancels the recirculation mode.

(Recirculation): Press to turn the recirculation mode on. An indicator light above the button comes on to show it is on. This mode recirculates and helps to quickly cool the air inside the vehicle. It can be used to help prevent outside air and odors from entering the vehicle. The recirculation indicator light blinks three times if you try to use recirculation in a mode in which it cannot function.

Pressing this button cancels the auto recirculation feature. Each time the vehicle is started, the system reverts to the auto recirculation function.

The recirculation mode cannot be used with the floor, defrost, or defog modes. If recirculation is selected in these modes, the indicator flashes three times and turns off to indicate that this is not allowed. This is to prevent window fogging.

When the weather is cool or damp, operating the system in recirculation for extended periods of time can cause fogging of the vehicle's windows. To clear the fog, select either defog or defrost. Make sure the air conditioning is on. Allow the air conditioning to run automatically to help dehumidify the air.

Rear Window Defogger

The rear window defogger uses a warming grid to remove fog from the rear window.

(Rear): Press to turn the rear window defogger on or off. An indicator light comes on to show that the rear window defogger is on.

If driving below 50 mph (80 km/h), the rear window defogger turns off about 15 minutes after the button is pressed. If additional warming time is needed, press the button again.

If the vehicle's speed is maintained above 50 mph (80 km/h), the rear window defogger remains on once the button is pressed.

For vehicles with heated outside mirrors, the surface of the outside mirrors will also heat when the rear window defogger is activated. See *Outside Power Mirrors on page 2-37*.

Notice: **Do not use a razor blade or sharp object to clear the inside rear window. Do not adhere anything to the defogger grid lines in the rear glass. These actions may damage the rear defogger. Repairs would not be covered by your warranty.**

Remote Start Climate Control Operation

For vehicles with remote start, when it is activated the climate control system heats and cools the inside of the vehicle using the previous system settings before the vehicle was turned off. The climate control knobs will remain active during a remote start. However, the climate control buttons will be inactive until the ignition is turned on by the key. If the fan is off, the climate control system will not operate during remote start.

With the automatic climate control system, the climate control displays "RS" in place of the temperature to indicate that remote start is activated. For best performance, turn both the fan and mode knobs to AUTO. If the temperature is cold enough and the mode knob is set to AUTO, the system begins in defrost to clear the windows. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation on page 2-5*.

Outlet Adjustment

There are four main air outlets on the instrument panel. Move the lever located in the center of each outlet side-to-side or up and down, to change the direction and amount of airflow in the vehicle. The center thumbwheel does not control the main outlets.

Rear Seat Air Outlet

For vehicles with this feature, the rear seat air outlet is located in the center of the instrument panel above the two main center outlets.

Use the thumbwheel in the center of the outlet to turn the airflow on or off.

Operation Tips

- Clear away any ice, snow, or leaves from the air inlets at the base of the windshield that can block the flow of air into the vehicle.
- Do not use non-GM approved hood deflectors as they could adversely affect the performance of the system.
- Keep the path under the front seats clear of objects to help circulate the air inside of the vehicle more effectively.

Warning Lights, Gages, and Indicators

Warning lights and gages can signal that something is wrong before it becomes serious enough to cause an expensive repair or replacement. Paying attention to the warning lights and gages could prevent injury.

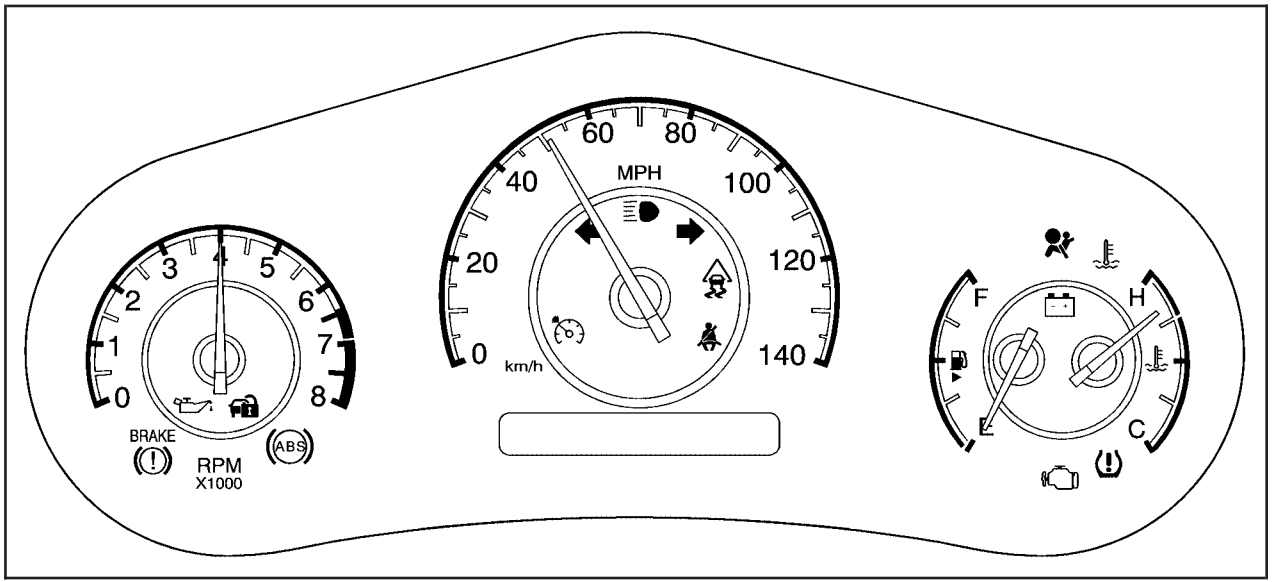
Warning lights come on when there may be or is a problem with one of the vehicle's functions. Some warning lights come on briefly when the engine is started to indicate they are working.

Gages can indicate when there may be or is a problem with one of the vehicle's functions. Often gages and warning lights work together to indicate a problem with the vehicle.

When one of the warning lights comes on and stays on while driving, or when one of the gages shows there may be a problem, check the section that explains what to do. Follow this manual's advice. Waiting to do repairs can be costly and even dangerous.

Instrument Panel Cluster

The instrument panel cluster is designed to show how the vehicle is running. It shows fast the vehicle is going, how much fuel the vehicle has used, and many other things needed to drive safely and economically.



United States version shown, Canada Similar

Speedometer and Odometer

The speedometer shows the speed in miles per hour (mph) or kilometers per hour (km/h). See *DIC Vehicle Personalization on page 3-50* for more information.

The odometer shows how far the vehicle has been driven, in either miles (used in the United States) or kilometers (used in Canada).

This vehicle has a tamper resistant odometer. The digital odometer will read 999,999 if it is turned back.

If the vehicle needs a new odometer installed, if possible, it must be set to the mileage total of the old odometer. If that is not possible, then it is set at zero and a label must be put on the driver's door to show the old mileage reading when the new odometer was installed.

Trip Odometer

The trip odometer can show how far the vehicle has been driven since the odometer was last reset.

The trip odometer is accessed and reset through the Driver Information Center (DIC). See *DIC Operation and Displays on page 3-43* for more information.

Tachometer

The tachometer displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute (rpm).

Safety Belt Reminders

Safety Belt Reminder Light

When the engine is started, a chime sounds for several seconds to remind a driver to fasten the safety belt, unless the driver safety belt is already buckled.

The safety belt light comes on and stays on for several seconds, then flashes for several more.

This chime and light are repeated if the driver remains unbuckled and the vehicle is in motion. If the driver safety belt is already buckled, neither the chime nor the light comes on.

Passenger Safety Belt Reminder Light

Several seconds after the engine is started, a chime sounds for several seconds to remind the front passenger to buckle their safety belt. This only occurs if the passenger airbag is enabled. See *Passenger Sensing System on page 1-65* for more information. The passenger safety belt light, located on the instrument panel, comes on and stays on for several seconds and then flashes for several more.

This chime and light are repeated if the passenger remains unbuckled and the vehicle is in motion.

If the passenger safety belt is buckled, neither the chime nor the light comes on.

The front passenger safety belt warning light and chime may turn on if an object is put on the seat such as a briefcase, handbag, grocery bag, laptop or other electronic device. To turn off the warning light and or chime, remove the object from the seat or buckle the safety belt.

Airbag Readiness Light

The system checks the airbag's electrical system for possible malfunctions. If the light stays on it indicates there is an electrical problem. The system check includes the airbag sensor, the pretensioners, the airbag modules, the wiring and the crash sensing and diagnostic module. For more information on the airbag system, see *Airbag System on page 1-56*.

The airbag readiness light flashes for a few seconds when the engine is started. If the light does not come on then, have it fixed immediately.

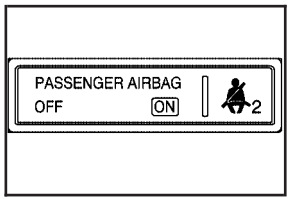
⚠ CAUTION:

If the airbag readiness light stays on after the vehicle is started or comes on while driving, it means the airbag system might not be working properly. The airbags in the vehicle might not inflate in a crash, or they could even inflate without a crash. To help avoid injury, have the vehicle serviced right away.

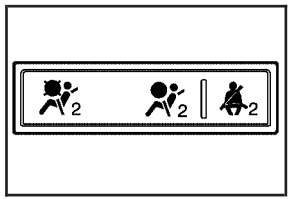
If there is a problem with the airbag system, an airbag Driver Information Center (DIC) message can also come on. See *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-45* for more information.

Passenger Airbag Status Indicator

The vehicle has a passenger sensing system. See *Passenger Sensing System on page 1-65* for important safety information. The instrument panel has a passenger airbag status indicator.



United States



Canada

When the vehicle is started, the passenger airbag status indicator will light ON and OFF, or the symbol for on and off, for several seconds as a system check. If you are using remote start to start the vehicle from a distance, if equipped, you may not see the system check. Then, after several more seconds, the status indicator will light either ON or OFF, or either the on or off symbol to let you know the status of the right front passenger frontal and seat-mounted side impact airbags.

If the word ON or the on symbol is lit on the passenger airbag status indicator, it means that the right front passenger frontal airbag and seat-mounted side impact airbag are enabled (may inflate).

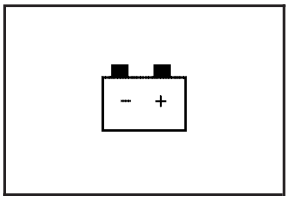
If the word OFF or the off symbol is lit on the passenger airbag status indicator, it means that the passenger sensing system has turned off the right front passenger frontal and seat-mounted side impact airbag.

If, after several seconds, both status indicator lights remain on, or if there are no lights at all, there may be a problem with the lights or the passenger sensing system. See your dealer/retailer for service.

⚠ CAUTION:

If the airbag readiness light ever comes on and stays on, it means that something may be wrong with the airbag system. To help avoid injury to yourself or others, have the vehicle serviced right away. See *Airbag Readiness Light on page 3-30* for more information, including important safety information.

Charging System Light



This light comes on briefly when the ignition key is turned to START, but the engine is not running, as a check to show it is working.

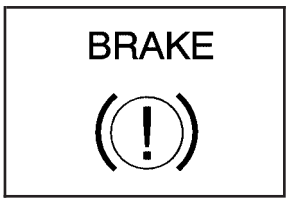
If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer/retailer.

The light should go out once the engine starts. If it stays on, or comes on while driving, there could be a problem with the charging system. A charging system message in the Driver Information Center (DIC) can also appear. See *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-45* for more information. This light could indicate that there are problems with a generator drive belt, or that there is an electrical problem. Have it checked right away. If the vehicle must be driven a short distance with the light on, turn off accessories, such as the radio and air conditioner.

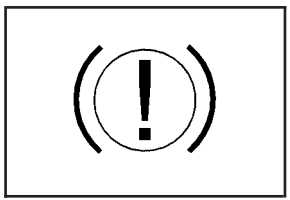
Brake System Warning Light

The vehicle's hydraulic brake system is divided into two parts. If one part is not working, the other part can still work and stop the vehicle. For good braking both parts need to be working.

If the warning light comes on, there is a brake problem. Have the brake system inspected right away.



United States



Canada

⚠ CAUTION:

The brake system might not be working properly if the brake system warning light is on. Driving with the brake system warning light on can lead to a

CAUTION: (Continued)

CAUTION: (Continued)

crash. If the light is still on after the vehicle has been pulled off the road and carefully stopped, have the vehicle towed for service.

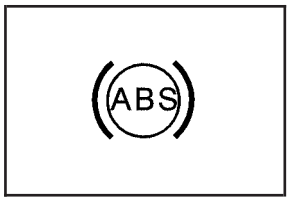
This light comes on briefly when the ignition key is turned to ON/RUN. If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer/retailer. If the system is working normally the indicator light will then go off.

When the ignition is on, the brake system warning light also comes on when the parking brake is set. The light stays on if the parking brake does not fully release. If it stays on after the parking brake is fully released, it means there is a brake problem.

The Driver Information Center (DIC) may display a BRAKE FLUID message. See *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-45* for more information.

If the light comes on while driving, pull off the road and stop carefully. The pedal may be harder to push or it may go closer to the floor. It may take longer to stop. Try turning off and restarting the vehicle one or two times, if the light is still on, have the vehicle towed for service. See *Towing Your Vehicle on page 4-26*.

Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light



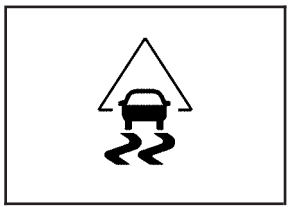
This light comes on briefly while the starting the engine.

If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by the dealer/retailer. If the system is working normally the indicator light will then go off.

If the ABS light stays on, turn the ignition off, if the light comes on while driving, stop as soon as it is safely possible and turn the ignition off. Then start the engine again to reset the system. If the ABS light still stays on, or comes on again while driving, the vehicle needs service. If the regular brake system warning light is not on, the vehicle still has brakes, but it does not have antilock brakes. If the regular brake system warning light is also on, the vehicle does not have antilock brakes and there is a problem with the regular brakes. See *Brake System Warning Light on page 3-33*.

For vehicles with a Driver Information Center (DIC), see *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-45* for all brake related DIC messages.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC)/ Traction Control System (TCS) Indicator/Warning Light



For vehicles with the Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system or the Traction Control System (TCS), the indicator/ warning light comes on briefly when the engine is started.

If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by the dealer/ retailer. If the system is working normally the indicator light goes off.

If this light is on while certain DIC messages display, this indicates that the ESC and TCS are not working or are disabled.

If this light is on and not flashing, the TCS and potentially the ESC system have been disabled. Check the DIC messaging to determine which feature(s) is no longer functioning and whether it is because of the driver turning off the feature(s), or because the system is not working properly and the vehicle requires service.

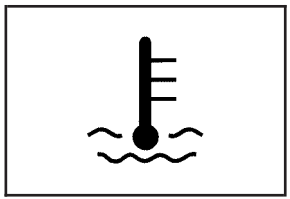
If the TCS is disabled, wheel spin is not limited. If the ESC system is disabled, the system does not aid in maintaining directional control of the vehicle.

If the indicator/warning light is on and flashing, the TCS or the ESC system is actively working. Check the DIC messaging for details to determine which system is working. If the LOW TRACTION message appears, the system is limiting wheel spin. If the ESC ACTIVE message appears, the system is aiding in maintaining directional control of the vehicle.

See *Electronic Stability Control (ESC) on page 4-6* and *Traction Control System (TCS) on page 4-8* for more information.

See *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-45* for more information on the messages associated with this light.

Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Light



This light comes on briefly while starting the vehicle.

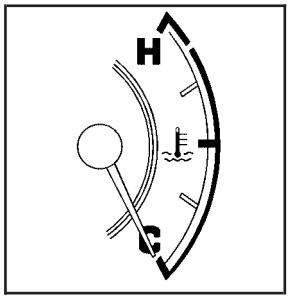
If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by the dealer/retailer. If the system is working normally the indicator light goes off.

Notice: **Driving with the engine coolant temperature warning light on could cause the vehicle to overheat. See *Engine Overheating on page 5-27*. The vehicle's engine could be damaged, and it might not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Never drive with the engine coolant temperature warning light on.**

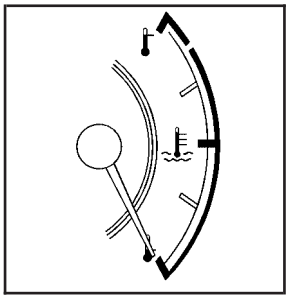
The engine coolant temperature warning light comes on when the engine has overheated.

If this happens pull over and turn off the engine as soon as possible. See *Engine Overheating on page 5-27* for more information.

Engine Coolant Temperature Gage



United States



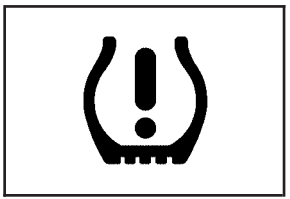
Canada

This gage shows the engine coolant temperature. If the gage pointer moves into the red area, the light comes on and a chime sounds, the engine is too hot. It means that the engine coolant has overheated.

If the vehicle has been operating under normal driving conditions and the gage reads hot, pull off the road, stop the vehicle and turn off the engine as soon as possible.

See *Engine Overheating on page 5-27*.

Tire Pressure Light



For vehicles with a tire pressure monitoring system, this light comes on briefly when the engine is started.

It provides information about tire pressures and the Tire Pressure Monitoring System.

When the Light is On Steady

This indicates that one or more of the tires is significantly underinflated.

A tire pressure message in the Driver Information Center (DIC), can accompany the light. See *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-45* for more information. Stop and check the tires as soon as it is safe to do so. If a tire is underinflated, inflate to the proper pressure. See *Tires on page 5-45* for more information.

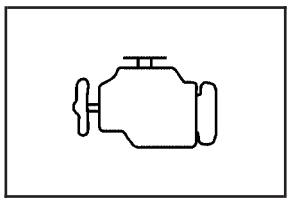
When the Light Flashes First and Then is On Steady

This indicates that there could be a problem with the Tire Pressure Monitor System. The light flashes for about a minute and stays on steady for the remainder of the ignition cycle. This sequence repeats with every ignition cycle. See *Tire Pressure Monitor System on page 5-54* for more information.

Malfunction Indicator Lamp

Check Engine Light

A computer system called OBD II (On-Board Diagnostics-Second Generation) monitors operation of the fuel, ignition, and emission control systems. It ensures that emissions are at acceptable levels for the life of the vehicle, helping to produce a cleaner environment.



This light should come on when the ignition is on, but the engine is not running, as a check to show it is working. If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer/retailer.

If the check engine light comes on and stays on, while the engine is running, this indicates that there is an OBD II problem and service is required.

Malfunctions often are indicated by the system before any problem is apparent. Being aware of the light can prevent more serious damage to the vehicle. This system assists the service technician in correctly diagnosing any malfunction.

Notice: **If the vehicle is continually driven with this light on, after a while, the emission controls might not work as well, the vehicle's fuel economy might not be as good, and the engine might not run as smoothly. This could lead to costly repairs that might not be covered by the vehicle warranty.**

Notice: **Modifications made to the engine, transmission, exhaust, intake, or fuel system of the vehicle or the replacement of the original tires with other than those of the same Tire Performance Criteria (TPC) can affect the vehicle's emission controls and can cause this light to come on. Modifications to these systems could lead to costly repairs not covered by the vehicle warranty. This could also result in a failure to pass a required Emission Inspection/Maintenance test. See *Accessories and Modifications on page 5-3*.**

This light comes on during a malfunction in one of two ways:

Light Flashing: A misfire condition has been detected. A misfire increases vehicle emissions and could damage the emission control system on the vehicle. Diagnosis and service might be required.

To prevent more serious damage to the vehicle:

- Reduce vehicle speed.
- Avoid hard accelerations.
- Avoid steep uphill grades.
- If towing a trailer, reduce the amount of cargo being hauled as soon as it is possible.

If the light continues to flash, when it is safe to do so, stop the vehicle. Find a safe place to park the vehicle. Turn the key off, wait at least 10 seconds, and restart the engine. If the light is still flashing, follow the previous steps and see your dealer/retailer for service as soon as possible.

Light On Steady: An emission control system malfunction has been detected on the vehicle. Diagnosis and service might be required.

An emission system malfunction might be corrected by doing the following:

- Make sure the fuel cap is fully installed. See *Filling the Tank on page 5-8*. The diagnostic system can determine if the fuel cap has been left off or improperly installed. A loose or missing fuel cap allows fuel to evaporate into the atmosphere. A few driving trips with the cap properly installed should turn the light off.
- If the vehicle has been driven through a deep puddle of water, the vehicle's electrical system might be wet. The condition is usually corrected when the electrical system dries out. A few driving trips should turn the light off.
- Make sure to fuel the vehicle with quality fuel. Poor fuel quality causes the engine not to run as efficiently as designed and can cause: stalling after start-up, stalling when the vehicle is changed into gear, misfiring, hesitation on acceleration, or stumbling on acceleration. These conditions might go away once the engine is warmed up.

  If one or more of these conditions occurs, change the fuel brand used. It will require at least one full tank of the proper fuel to turn the light off.

  See *Gasoline Octane on page 5-5*.

If none of the above have made the light turn off, your dealer/retailer can check the vehicle. The dealer/retailer has the proper test equipment and diagnostic tools to fix any mechanical or electrical problems that might have developed.

Emissions Inspection and Maintenance Programs

Some state/provincial and local governments have or might begin programs to inspect the emission control equipment on the vehicle. Failure to pass this inspection could prevent getting a vehicle registration.

Here are some things to know to help the vehicle pass an inspection:

- The vehicle will not pass this inspection if the check engine light is on with the engine running, or if the key is in ON/RUN and the light is not on.
- The vehicle will not pass this inspection if the OBD II (on-board diagnostic) system determines that critical emission control systems have not been completely diagnosed by the system. The vehicle would be considered not ready for inspection. This can happen if the battery has recently been replaced or if the battery has run down. The diagnostic system is designed to evaluate critical emission control systems during normal driving. This can take several days of routine driving. If this has been done and the vehicle still does not pass the inspection for lack of OBD II system readiness, your dealer/retailer can prepare the vehicle for inspection.

Oil Pressure Light

⚠ CAUTION:

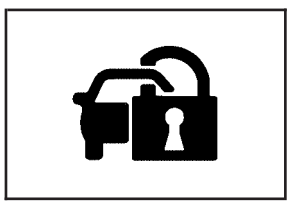
Do not keep driving if the oil pressure is low. The engine can become so hot that it catches fire. Someone could be burned. Check the oil as soon as possible and have the vehicle serviced.

Notice: **Lack of proper engine oil maintenance can damage the engine. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Always follow the maintenance schedule in this manual for changing engine oil.**

This light comes on briefly while starting the engine. If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer/retailer. If the system is working normally the indicator light then goes off.

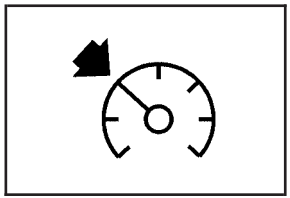
If the light comes on and stays on, it means that oil is not flowing through the engine properly. The vehicle could be low on oil and it might have some other system problem.

Security Light



For information regarding this light and the vehicle's security system, see *Content Theft-Deterrent on page 2-18*.

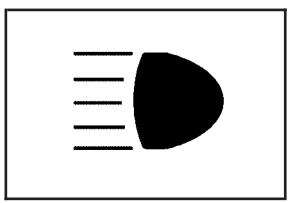
Cruise Control Light



The cruise control light comes on whenever the cruise control is set.

The light goes out when the cruise control is turned off. See *Cruise Control on page 3-10* for more information.

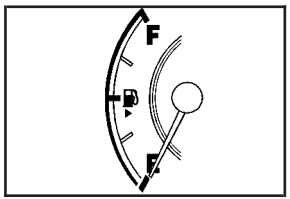
Highbeam On Light



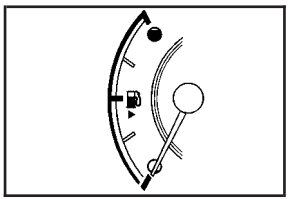
This light comes on when the high-beam headlamps are in use.

See *Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer on page 3-8* for more information.

Fuel Gage



United States



Canada

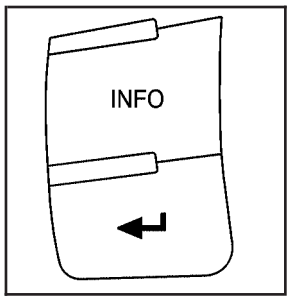
When the ignition is on, the fuel gage shows how much fuel is left in the fuel tank. When the indicator nears empty, a LOW FUEL message appears on the Driver Information Center (DIC). See *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-45* for more information. The vehicle still has a little fuel left, but the vehicle should be fueled soon. An arrow on the fuel gage indicates the side of the vehicle the fuel door is on.

Here are four things that some owners ask about. These are normal and do not indicate a problem with the fuel gage:

- At the service station, the gas pump shuts off before the gage reads full.
- It takes a little more or less fuel to fill up than the gage indicated. For example, the gage may have indicated the fuel tank was half full, but it actually took a little more or less than half the fuel tank's capacity to fill it.
- The indicator moves a little when while turning a corner or speeding up.
- The gage goes back to empty when the ignition is turned off.

Driver Information Center (DIC)

Your vehicle has a Driver Information Center (DIC). The DIC display gives you the status of many of your vehicle's systems. The DIC is also used to display driver personalization menu modes and warning/status messages. All messages will appear in the DIC display, located at the bottom of the instrument panel cluster.



The DIC buttons are located on the left side of the steering wheel.

INFO (Information): Press this button to scroll through the vehicle information mode displays.

(Reset): Press this button to reset some vehicle information mode displays, select a personalization menu mode setting, or acknowledge a warning message.

Press and hold the information and reset buttons at the same time for one second, then release the buttons to enter the personalization menu. See *DIC Vehicle Personalization on page 3-50* for more information.

DIC Operation and Displays

The DIC comes on when the ignition is on. The DIC has different modes which can be accessed by pressing the DIC buttons. The button functions are detailed in the following.

Information Modes

INFO (Information): Press this button to scroll through the following vehicle information modes:

Outside Air Temperature

The outside air temperature will be displayed at the same time as the Odometer and the Trip Odometer. The temperature outside of the vehicle will be displayed in either degrees Fahrenheit (°F) or degrees Celsius (°C). The outside air temperature appears on the left side of the DIC display and the odometer, or trip odometer, appears on the right side of the display.

Odometer

Press the information button until the outside air temperature and the odometer displays. This mode shows the total distance the vehicle has been driven in either miles (mi) or kilometers (km).

To change the DIC display to English or metric units, see “UNITS” under *DIC Vehicle Personalization on page 3-50*.

Trip Odometer

Press the information button until the outside air temperature along with A or B displays. These modes show the current distance traveled since the last reset for each trip odometer in either miles (mi) or kilometers (km). Both odometers can be used at the same time.

To reset the trip odometer to zero, press and hold the reset button for a few seconds while the desired trip odometer is displayed.

FUEL RANGE

Press the information button until FUEL RANGE displays. This mode shows the remaining distance you can drive without refueling in either miles (mi) or kilometers (km). It is based on fuel economy and the fuel remaining in the tank.

When the fuel level is low, FUEL RANGE LOW displays.

The fuel economy data used to determine fuel range is an average of recent driving conditions. As your driving conditions change, this data is gradually updated. The FUEL RANGE mode cannot be reset.

MPG (L/100 KM) AVG (Average)

Press the information button until MPG (L/100 KM) AVG displays. This mode shows how many miles per gallon (mpg) or liters per 100 kilometers (L/100 km) your vehicle is getting based on current and past driving conditions.

To reset the average fuel economy, press and hold the reset button while MPG (L/100 KM) AVG is displayed. Average fuel economy is then calculated starting from that point. If the average fuel economy is not reset, it is continually updated each time you drive.

MPG (L/100 KM) INST (Instantaneous)

Press the information button until MPG (L/100 KM) INST displays. This mode shows the current fuel economy at a particular moment and changes frequently as driving conditions change. This mode shows the instantaneous fuel economy in miles per gallon (mpg) or liters per 100 kilometers (L/100 km). Unlike average fuel economy, this screen cannot be reset.

AV (Average) SPEED

Press the information button until AV SPEED displays. This mode shows the vehicle's average speed in miles per hour (mph) or kilometers per hour (km/h).

To reset the average vehicle speed, press and hold the reset button while AV SPEED is displayed.

OIL LIFE

Press the information button until OIL LIFE displays. The engine oil life system shows an estimate of the oil's remaining useful life. It shows 100% when the system is reset after an oil change. It alerts you to change the oil on a schedule consistent with your driving conditions.

In addition to the engine oil life system monitoring the oil life, additional maintenance is recommended in the Maintenance Schedule in this manual. See *Engine Oil on page 5-15* and *Scheduled Maintenance on page 6-4*.

Always reset the engine oil life system after an oil change. See "How to Reset the Engine Oil Life System" under *Engine Oil Life System on page 5-18*.

Tire Pressure

On vehicles with the Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS), the pressure for each tire can be viewed in the DIC. The tire pressure is shown in either pounds per square inch (psi) or kilopascals (kPa).

Press the information button until LF ## PSI (kPa) ## RF displays for the front tires. Press the information button again until LR ## PSI (kPa) ## RR displays for the rear tires.

If a low tire pressure condition is detected by the system while driving, a message advising you to check the tire pressure appears in the display. See *Inflation - Tire Pressure on page 5-52* and *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-45* for more information.

DIC Warnings and Messages

These messages appear if there is a problem detected in one of your vehicle's systems.

A message clears when the vehicle's condition is no longer present. To acknowledge a message and clear it from the display, press and hold any of the DIC buttons. If the condition is still present, the warning message comes back on the next time the vehicle is turned off and back on. With most messages, a warning chime sounds when the message displays. Your vehicle may have other warning messages.

AUTO (Automatic) LIGHTS OFF

This message displays if the automatic headlamp system is disabled with the headlamp switch. See *Automatic Headlamp System on page 3-15* for more information.

AUTO (Automatic) LIGHTS ON

This message displays if the automatic headlamp system is enabled with the headlamp switch. See *Automatic Headlamp System on page 3-15* for more information.

BRAKE FLUID

This message displays, while the ignition is on, when the brake fluid level is low. The brake system warning light on the instrument panel cluster also comes on. See *Brake System Warning Light on page 3-33* for more information. Have the brake system serviced by your dealer/retailer as soon as possible.

CHANGE OIL SOON

This message displays when the life of the engine oil has expired and it should be changed.

When this message is acknowledged and cleared from the display, the engine oil life system must still be reset separately. See *Engine Oil Life System on page 5-18*, *Engine Oil on page 5-15*, and *Scheduled Maintenance on page 6-4* for more information.

CHECK GAS CAP

This message displays if the fuel cap has not been fully tightened. Recheck the fuel cap to make sure that it is on properly. A few driving trips with the cap properly installed should turn the message off.

CHECK TIRE PRESS (Pressure)

On vehicles with the Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS), this message displays when the pressure in one or more of the vehicle's tires needs to be checked. If a tire pressure message appears on the DIC, stop as soon as you can. Have the tire pressures checked and set to those shown on the Tire Loading Information label. See *Tires on page 5-45*, *Loading the Vehicle on page 4-21*, and *Inflation - Tire Pressure on page 5-52*. The DIC also shows the tire pressure values. See *DIC Operation and Displays on page 3-43*. If the tire pressure is low, the low tire pressure warning light comes on. See *Tire Pressure Light on page 3-36*.

CRUISE ENGAGED

This message displays when the cruise control system is active. See *Cruise Control on page 3-10* for more information.

DOOR AJAR

This message displays if one or more of the vehicle's doors are not closed properly. Make sure that the door(s) are closed completely.

ENGINE DISABLED

This message displays if the starting of the engine is disabled. Have your vehicle serviced by your dealer/retailer immediately.

ENG (Engine) PWR (Power) REDUCED

This message displays when the vehicle's engine power is reduced. Reduced engine power can affect the vehicle's ability to accelerate. If this message is on, but there is no reduction in performance, proceed to your destination. The performance may be reduced the next time the vehicle is driven. The vehicle may be driven at a reduced speed while this message is on, but acceleration and speed may be reduced. Anytime this message stays on, the vehicle should be taken to your dealer/retailer for service as soon as possible.

ESC (Electronic Stability Control) ACTIVE

If your vehicle has Electronic Stability Control (ESC), this message displays and the ESC/TCS light on the instrument panel cluster flashes when ESC is assisting you with directional control of the vehicle. You may feel or hear the system working and see this message displayed in the DIC. Slippery road conditions may exist when this message is displayed, so adjust your driving accordingly. This message may stay on for a few seconds after ESC stops assisting you with directional control of the vehicle. This is normal when the system is operating. See *Electronic Stability Control (ESC) on page 4-6* and *Electronic Stability Control (ESC)/Traction Control System (TCS) Indicator/Warning Light on page 3-34* for more information.

ESC (Electronic Stability Control) OFF

If your vehicle has Electronic Stability Control (ESC), this message displays and the ESC/TCS light on the instrument panel cluster comes on solid when ESC is turned off. Adjust your driving accordingly. See *Electronic Stability Control (ESC) on page 4-6* and *Electronic Stability Control (ESC)/Traction Control System (TCS) Indicator/Warning Light on page 3-34* for more information.

ICE POSSIBLE

This message displays when the outside air temperature is cold enough to create icy road conditions. Adjust your driving accordingly.

KEY FOB BATT (Battery) LOW

This message displays if the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter battery is low. Replace the battery in the transmitter. See "Battery Replacement" under *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation on page 2-5*.

LOW FUEL

This message displays when your vehicle is low on fuel. Refill the fuel tank as soon as possible. See *Fuel Gage on page 3-42*, *Fuel on page 5-5*, and *Filling the Tank on page 5-8* for more information.

LOW TRACTION

If your vehicle has the Traction Control System (TCS), this message displays and the ESC/TCS light on the instrument panel cluster flashes when the system is actively limiting wheel spin. Slippery road conditions may exist if this message is displayed, so adjust your driving accordingly. This message stays on for a few seconds after the system stops limiting wheel spin. See *Traction Control System (TCS) on page 4-8* and *Electronic Stability Control (ESC)/Traction Control System (TCS) Indicator/Warning Light on page 3-34* for more information.

LOW WASHER FLUID

This message displays when the vehicle's windshield washer fluid is low. Fill the windshield washer fluid reservoir to the proper level as soon as possible. See *Windshield Washer Fluid on page 5-32*.

POWER STEERING

On some vehicles, this message displays if a problem has been detected with the electric power steering. Have your vehicle serviced by your dealer/retailer immediately.

PUSH PARK PEDAL

This message displays if the parking brake is left engaged. See *Parking Brake on page 2-29* for more information.

SERVICE AIR BAG

This message displays when there is a problem with the airbag system. Have your vehicle serviced by your dealer/retailer immediately.

SERVICE ESC (ELECTRONIC STABILITY CONTROL)

If your vehicle has Electronic Stability Control (ESC), this message displays and a chime sounds if there has been a problem detected with ESC. The ESC/TCS light also appears on the instrument panel cluster. This light stays on solid as long as the detected problem remains present. When this message displays, the system is not working. Adjust your driving accordingly. See *Electronic Stability Control (ESC) on page 4-6* and *Electronic Stability Control (ESC)/Traction Control System (TCS) Indicator/Warning Light on page 3-34* for more information.

If this message turns on while you are driving, pull off the road as soon as possible and stop carefully. Try resetting the system by turning the ignition off and then back on. If this message still stays on or turns back on again while you are driving, your vehicle needs service. Have the ESC inspected by your dealer/retailer as soon as possible.

SERVICE TRACTION

If your vehicle has the Traction Control System (TCS), this message displays and a chime sounds when the system is not functioning properly. The ESC/TCS light also appears on the instrument panel cluster. This light stays on solid as long as the detected problem remains present. When this message displays, the system is not working. Adjust your driving accordingly. See *Traction Control System (TCS) on page 4-8* and *Electronic Stability Control (ESC)/Traction Control System (TCS) Indicator/Warning Light on page 3-34* for more information. Have the system serviced by your dealer/retailer as soon as possible.

SVC (Service) TIRE MONITOR

On vehicles with the Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS), this message displays if a part on the TPMS is not working properly. The tire pressure light also flashes and then remains on during the same ignition cycle. See *Tire Pressure Light on page 3-36*. Several conditions may cause this message to appear. See *Tire Pressure Monitor Operation on page 5-55* for more information. If the warning comes on and stays on, there may be a problem with the TPMS. See your dealer/retailer.

TRACTION OFF

If your vehicle has the Traction Control System (TCS), this message displays and the ESC/TCS light on the instrument panel cluster comes on solid when the system is turned off. Adjust your driving accordingly. See *Traction Control System (TCS) on page 4-8* and *Electronic Stability Control (ESC)/Traction Control System (TCS) Indicator/Warning Light on page 3-34* for more information.

TRUNK AJAR

This message displays when the trunk is not closed completely. Make sure that the trunk is closed completely. See *Trunk on page 2-13* for more information.

DIC Vehicle Personalization

Your vehicle has personalization capabilities that allow you to program certain features to a preferred setting. All of the features listed may not be available on your vehicle. Only the features available will be displayed on the DIC.

The default settings for the features were set when your vehicle left the factory, but may have been changed from their default state since that time.

To change feature settings, use the following procedure:

Entering Personalization Menu

1. Turn the ignition on while the vehicle is stopped. To avoid excessive drain on the battery, it is recommended that the headlamps are turned off.
2. Press and hold the information and reset buttons at the same time for one second, then release to enter the personalization menu.
   If the vehicle speed is greater than 2 mph (3 km/h), only the UNITS menu will be accessible.
3. Press the information button to scroll through the available personalization menu modes.
   Press the reset button to scroll through the available settings for each mode.
   If you do not make a selection within ten seconds, the display will go back to the previous information displayed.

Personalization Menu Modes

OIL LIFE RESET

When this feature is displayed, you can reset the engine oil life system. To reset the system, see *Engine Oil Life System on page 5-18*. See “OIL LIFE” under *DIC Operation and Displays on page 3-43* for more information.

UNITS

This feature allows you to select the units of measurement in which the DIC will display the vehicle information. When UNITS appears on the display, press and hold the reset button for at least one second to scroll through the available settings:

ENGLISH (default in United States): All information will be displayed in English units.

METRIC (default in Canada): All information will be displayed in metric units.

To select a setting and move on to the next feature, press the information button while the desired setting is displayed on the DIC.

REMOTE START

If your vehicle has remote start, this feature allows remote start to be turned off or on. Remote start allows you to start the engine from outside of the vehicle using your Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter. When REMOTE START appears on the display, press and hold the reset button for at least one second to scroll through the available settings:

OFF: The remote start feature will be disabled.

ON (default): The remote start feature will be enabled.

See *Remote Vehicle Start on page 2-7* for more information.

To select a setting and move on to the next feature, press the information button while the desired setting is displayed on the DIC.

LOCK HORN

This feature, which allows the vehicle's horn to chirp every time the lock button on the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter is pressed, can be enabled or disabled. When LOCK HORN appears on the display, press and hold the reset button for at least one second to scroll through the available settings:

OFF (default): The horn will not chirp on the first press of the lock button on the RKE transmitter. The horn will still chirp on the second press.

ON: The horn will chirp on the first press of the lock button on the RKE transmitter.

See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation on page 2-5* for more information.

To select a setting and move on to the next feature, press the information button while the desired setting is displayed on the DIC.

UNLOCK HORN

This feature, which allows the vehicle's horn to chirp on the first press of the unlock button on the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter, can be enabled or disabled. When UNLOCK HORN appears on the display, press and hold the reset button for at least one second to scroll through the available settings:

OFF (default): The horn will not chirp when the unlock button on the RKE transmitter is pressed.

ON: The horn will chirp on the first press of the unlock button on the RKE transmitter.

See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation on page 2-5* for more information.

To select a setting and move on to the next feature, press the information button while the desired setting is displayed on the DIC.

LIGHT FLASH

This feature, which allows the vehicle's exterior hazard/turn signal lighting to flash every time the lock, unlock, or trunk release buttons on the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter are pressed, can be enabled or disabled. When LIGHT FLASH appears on the display, press and hold the reset button for at least one second to scroll through the available settings:

OFF: The exterior hazard/turn signal lighting will not flash when the lock, unlock, or trunk release buttons on the RKE transmitter are pressed.

ON (default): The exterior hazard/turn signal lighting will flash when the lock, unlock, or trunk release buttons on the RKE transmitter are pressed.

See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation on page 2-5* for more information.

To select a setting and move on to the next feature, press the information button while the desired setting is displayed on the DIC.

DELAY LOCK

This feature, which delays the actual locking of the vehicle, can be enabled or disabled. When DELAY LOCK appears on the display, press and hold the reset button for at least one second to scroll through the available settings:

ON (default): The doors will not lock until five seconds after the last door is closed. You can temporarily override delayed locking by pressing the power lock switch or the lock button on the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter a second time.

OFF: The doors will lock immediately when pressing the power lock switch or the lock button on the RKE transmitter.

See *Power Door Locks on page 2-10*, *Delayed Locking on page 2-11*, and *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation on page 2-5* for more information.

To select a setting and move on to the next feature, press the information button while the desired setting is displayed on the DIC.

AUTO UNLK (Unlock)

This feature, which allows the vehicle to automatically unlock certain doors, can be enabled or disabled. When AUTO UNLK appears on the display, press and hold the reset button for at least one second to scroll through the available settings:

ALL (default): All of the doors will automatically unlock.

DRIVER: The driver's door will automatically unlock.

NONE: None of the doors will automatically unlock. You will need to manually unlock the doors.

See *Programmable Automatic Door Locks on page 2-11* for more information.

To select a setting and move on to the next feature, press the information button while the desired setting is displayed on the DIC.

UNLK (Unlock)

This screen displays only if DRIVER or ALL is selected for the AUTO UNLK feature. This feature determines when the automatic door unlocking will occur. When UNLK appears on the display, press and hold the reset button for at least one second to scroll through the available settings:

KEY OFF: The door(s) will unlock when the key is turned off.

SHIFT TO P (Park) (default): The door(s) will unlock when the vehicle is shifted into P (Park).

See *Programmable Automatic Door Locks on page 2-11* for more information.

To select a setting and move on to the next feature, press the information button while the desired setting is displayed on the DIC.

EXT (Exterior) LIGHTS

This feature, which allows the vehicle's exterior perimeter lighting to turn on each time the unlock button on the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter is pressed, can be enabled or disabled. When EXT LIGHTS appears on the display, press and hold the reset button for at least one second to scroll through the available settings:

OFF: The exterior perimeter lighting will not turn on when the unlock button on the RKE transmitter is pressed.

ON (default): The exterior perimeter lighting will turn on when the unlock button on the RKE transmitter is pressed.

See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation on page 2-5* for more information.

To select a setting and move on to the next feature, press the information button while the desired setting is displayed on the DIC.

LANGUAGE

This feature allows you to select the language in which the DIC will display. When LANGUAGE appears on the display, press and hold the reset button for at least one second to scroll through the available settings:

ENGLISH (default): All messages will appear in English.

FRENCH: All messages will appear in French.

SPANISH: All messages will appear in Spanish.

GERMAN: All messages will appear in German.

To select a setting and exit out of the personalization menu mode, press the information button while the desired setting is displayed on the DIC.

Exiting Personalization Menu

The personalization menu will be exited when any of the following conditions occur:

- A ten second time period has elapsed.
- The ignition is turned off.
- The end of the personalization menu list is reached.

Audio System(s)

Determine which radio the vehicle has and read the following pages to become familiar with its features.

⚠ CAUTION:

Taking your eyes off the road for extended periods could cause a crash resulting in injury or death to you or others. Do not give extended attention to entertainment tasks while driving.

This system provides access to many audio and non audio listings.

To minimize taking your eyes off the road while driving, do the following while the vehicle is parked:

- Become familiar with the operation and controls of the audio system.
- Set up the tone, speaker adjustments, and preset radio stations.

For more information, see *Defensive Driving on page 4-2*.

Notice: **Contact your dealer/retailer before adding any equipment.**

Adding audio or communication equipment could interfere with the operation of the vehicle's engine, radio, or other systems, and could damage them. Follow federal rules covering mobile radio and telephone equipment.

Notice: **The chime signals related to safety belts, parking brake, and other functions of your vehicle operate through the radio/entertainment system. If that equipment is replaced or additional equipment is added to your vehicle, the chimes may not work. Make sure that replacement or additional equipment is compatible with your vehicle before installing it. See *Accessories and Modifications on page 5-3*.**

The vehicle has Retained Accessory Power (RAP). With RAP, the audio system can be played even after the ignition is turned off. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP) on page 2-23* for more information.

Setting the Clock

Radio with CD (MP3) and USB Port, and Radio with Single CD (MP3) Player

To set the time and date:

1. Turn the ignition key to ACC/ACCESSORY or ON/RUN. Press ⏻ to turn the radio on.
2. Press 🕘 and the HR, MIN, MM, DD, YYYY (hour, minute, month, day, and year) displays.
3. Press the softkey located below any one of the tabs that you want to change.
4. To increase the time or date do one of the following:
   - Press the softkey located below the selected tab.
   - Press ⏭ SEEK, or ⏩ FWD.
   - Turn ♫ clockwise.
5. To decrease the time or date do one of the following:
   - Press ⏮ SEEK or ⏪ REV.
   - Turn ♫ counterclockwise.

The date does not automatically display. To see the date press 🕘 while the radio is on. The date with display times out after a few seconds and goes back to the normal radio and time display.

To change the time default setting from 12 hour to 24 hour or to change the date default setting from month/day/year to day/month/year:

1. Press 🕘 and then the softkey located below the forward arrow label. Once the time 12H and 24H, and the date MM/DD/YYYY (month, day, and year) and DD/MM/YYYY (day, month, and year) displays.
2. Press the softkey located below the desired option.
3. Press 🕘 again to apply the selected default, or let the screen time out.

Six-Disc CD (MP3) Player

To set the time and date:

1. Turn the ignition key to ACC/ACCESSORY or ON/RUN. Press ⏻ to turn the radio on.
2. Press MENU.
3. Press the softkey below the 🕘 tab. The HR, MIN, MM, DD, YYYY displays.
4. Press the softkey below any one of the tabs you want to change.

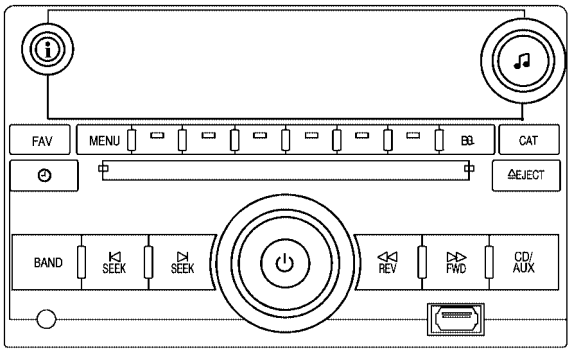
5. To increase the time or date do one of the following:
   - Press the softkey located below the selected tab.
   - Press ⏭ SEEK, or ⏩ FWD.
   - Turn ♫ clockwise.
6. To decrease the time or date do one of the following:
   - Press ⏮ SEEK or ⏪ REV.
   - Turn ♫ counterclockwise.

The date does not automatically display. To see the date press MENU and then softkey below the 🕘 tab while the radio is on. The date with display times out after a few seconds and goes back to the normal radio and time display.

To change the time default setting from 12 hour to 24 hour or to change the date default setting from month/day/year to day/month/year:

1. Press MENU, and then the softkey below the 🕘 tab. The HR, MIN, MM, DD, YYYY displays.
2. Press the softkey below the forward arrow tab. The time 12H and 24H, and the date MM/DD/YYYY (month, day, and year) and DD/MM/YYYY (day, month, and year) displays.
3. Press the softkey located below the desired option.
4. Press MENU again to apply the selected default, or let the screen time out.

Radio(s)



Radio with CD (MP3) and USB Port shown, Radio with CD (MP3) similar, Radio with Six-Disc CD (MP3) similar

The vehicle has one of these radios as its audio system.

Radio Data System (RDS)

The radio may have RDS. The RDS feature is available for use only on FM stations that broadcast RDS information. This system relies upon receiving specific information from these stations and only works when the information is available. While the radio is tuned to an FM-RDS station, the station name or call letters display. In rare cases, a radio station could broadcast incorrect information that causes the radio features to work improperly. If this happens, contact the radio station.

Playing the Radio

⏻ **(Power/Volume):** Press to turn the system on and off. Turn to increase or decrease the volume.

Speed Compensated Volume (SCV): Radios with the Speed Compensated Volume (SCV) feature automatically adjust the radio volume to compensate for road and wind noise as the vehicle speeds up or slows down, so that the volume level is consistent.

To activate SCV:

1. Set the radio volume to the desired level.
2. Press MENU to display the radio setup menu.
3. Press the softkey under the AUTO VOLUM tab on the radio display.
4. Press the softkey under the desired Speed Compensated Volume setting (OFF, Low, Med, or High) to select the level of radio volume compensation. The display times out after approximately 10 seconds. Each higher setting allows for more radio volume compensation at faster vehicle speeds.

Finding a Station

BAND: Press to choose between FM, AM, or XM™.

♫ **(Tune):** Turn to select radio stations.

⏮ **SEEK:** Press to seek or scan stations with a strong signal in the selected band.

- To seek stations, press and release ⏮ SEEK to go to the previous station and stay there.
- To scan stations, press and hold ⏮ SEEK for a few seconds until the radio beeps once. The radio goes to a station, plays for a few seconds, then goes to the next station. Press ⏮ SEEK again to stop scanning.
- To scan preset stations in the selected band, press and hold ⏮ SEEK for four seconds until a double beep sounds. The radio goes to a stored preset, plays for a few seconds, then goes to the next stored preset. Press ⏮ SEEK again to stop scanning preset stations.

⊳| **SEEK:** Press to seek or scan stations with a strong signal in the selected band.

- To seek stations, press and release ⊳| SEEK to go to the next station and stay there.
- To scan stations, press and hold ⊳| SEEK for a few seconds until the radio beeps once. The radio goes to a station, plays for a few seconds, then goes to the next station. Press ⊳| SEEK again to stop scanning.
- To scan preset stations in the selected band, press and hold ⊳| SEEK for four seconds until a double beep sounds. The radio goes to a stored preset, plays for a few seconds, then goes to the next stored preset. Press ⊳| SEEK again to stop scanning preset stations.

i (Information): For vehicles with XM, MP3, WMA, or RDS features, press i to display additional text information related to the current FM-RDS or XM station; or CD, MP3, WMA song. Song title information will be displayed on the top line of the display while the artist information will be displayed on the bottom line, if the information is available during XM, CD, MP3, or WMA playback. When information is not available, “No Info” displays.

Storing a Radio Station

Drivers are encouraged to set up radio station favorites while the vehicle is in P (Park). Tune to favorite stations using the softkeys, favorites button, and steering wheel controls. See *Defensive Driving on page 4-2* Defensive Driving.

FAV (Favorites): A maximum of 36 stations can be stored as favorites using the six softkeys located below the radio station frequency tabs and by using the radio favorites page button (FAV button). Press FAV to go through up to six pages of favorites, each having six favorite stations available per page. Each page of favorites can contain any combination of AM, FM, or XM stations. The current balance/fade and tone settings are also stored with the favorite stations.

To store a station as a favorite:

1. Tune to the desired radio station and set the balance/fade and tone settings to the desired levels.
2. Press FAV to display the page where to store the station.
3. Press and hold one of the six softkeys until a beep sounds.
4. Repeat the steps for each radio station to be stored as a favorite.

To setup the number of favorites pages:

1. Press MENU to display the radio setup menu.
2. Press the softkey located below the FAV 1-6 tab.
3. Select the desired number of favorites pages by pressing the softkey located below the displayed page numbers.
4. Press FAV, or let the menu time out, to return to the original main radio screen showing the radio station frequency tabs and to begin programming favorites.

Auto Text (Satellite Radio Service, CD, MP3, and WMA features): If additional information is available for the current song being played, Auto Text will automatically page/scroll the information every three seconds above the FAV presets on the radio display.

To activate Auto Text:

1. Press MENU to display the radio setup menu.
2. Press the softkey under AUTO TXT tab on the radio display.
3. Press the softkey under the ON tab on the radio display.

If **i** is pressed and the song title or artist information is longer than what can be displayed, the extra information will page every three seconds when Auto Text is activated.

Setting the Tone (Bass/Midrange/Treble)

BASS/MID/TREB (Bass, Midrange, or Treble): The radio may display some or all tones such as BASS, MID, and TREB.

To adjust the tone settings:

1. Press ♫ until the tone control tabs display.
2. Press the softkey below the desired tab, then turn ♫ to adjust the highlighted setting. The highlighted setting can also be adjusted by pressing either SEEK arrow, or ▷▷ FWD and ◁◁ REV.

The radio may be capable of adjusting bass, midrange, or treble to the middle position by pressing the softkey below the BASS, MID, or TREB tab for more than two seconds. The radio beeps once and the level adjusts to the middle position.

The radio may also be capable of adjusting all tone and speaker controls to the middle position by pressing ♫ for more than two seconds until the radio beeps once.

If a station's frequency is weak, or has static, decrease the treble.

EQ (Equalization): Press this button to select preset equalization settings.

To return to the manual mode, press EQ until Manual displays or start to manually adjust the bass, midrange, or treble by pressing ♫ .

Adjusting the Speakers (Balance/Fade)

To adjust balance or fade:

1. Press ♫ until the speaker control labels display.
2. Press the softkey under the desired tab, or continue pressing ♫ to highlight the desired tab.
3. Turn ♫ to adjust the highlighted setting. The highlighted setting can also be adjusted by pressing either SEEK arrow.

   On some radios, ▷▷ FWD and ◁◁ REV can also be used to adjust the highlighted level.

The radio may be capable of adjusting balance or fade to the middle position by pressing the softkey below the BAL or FADE tab for more than two seconds. The radio beeps once and the level adjusts to the middle position.

The radio may also be capable of adjusting all tone and speaker controls to the middle position by pressing ♫ for more than two seconds until the radio beeps once.

Finding a Category (CAT) Station (XM Satellite Radio Service Only)

CAT (Category): The radio may have the CAT button feature.

To select and find a desired category:

1. Press BAND until the XM frequency displays.
2. Press CAT to display the category labels on the radio display. Continue pressing the CAT button until the desired category name displays.
3. Press either of the two softkeys below the desired category tab to immediately tune to the first XM station associated with that category.
4. To go to the previous or to the next XM station within the selected category, do one of the following:
   - Turn ♫ .
   - Press the softkeys below the right or left arrows on the radio display.
   - Press ⏮ SEEK or ⏭ SEEK.
5. To exit the category search mode, press the FAV button or BAND button to display the favorites again.

Undesired XM categories can be removed through the setup menu. To remove an undesired category:

1. Press MENU to display the radio setup menu.
2. Press the softkey below the XM CAT tab.
3. Turn ♫ to display the category to be removed.
4. Press the softkey below the Remove tab until the category name along with the word Removed displays.
5. Repeat the steps to remove additional categories.

Removed categories can be restored by pressing the softkey under the Add tab when a removed category displays or by pressing the softkey below the Restore All tab.

Categories cannot be removed or added while the vehicle is moving faster than 5 mph (8 km/h).

Radio Messages

Calibration Error: Displays if the radio is no longer calibrated properly for the vehicle. The vehicle must be returned to your dealer/retailer for service.

Loc or Locked: Displays when the THEFTLOCK® system has activated. Take the vehicle to your dealer/retailer for service.

If any error occurs repeatedly or if an error cannot be corrected, contact your dealer/retailer.

XM Satellite Radio Service

XM is a satellite radio service that is based in the 48 contiguous United States and 10 Canadian provinces. XM Satellite Radio has a wide variety of programming and commercial-free music, coast-to-coast, and in digital-quality sound. During your trial or when you subscribe, you will get unlimited access to XM Radio Online for when you are not in the vehicle. A service fee is required to receive the XM service. For more information, contact XM at xmradio.com or call 1-800-929-2100 in the U.S. and xmradio.ca or call 1-877-438-9677 in Canada.

Radio Messages for XM Only

See *XM Radio Messages on page 3-74* later in this section for further detail.

Loading a CD

Radio's with a Single CD Player

Insert a CD partway into the slot, label side up. The player pulls it in and the CD begins playing.

When the CD is inserted, the CD symbol displays. As each new track starts to play, the track number displays.

The CD player can play the smaller 3 inch (8 cm) single CDs with an adapter ring. Full-size CDs and the smaller CDs are loaded in the same manner.

Radio's with a Six-Disc CD Player

LOAD : Press to load CDs into the CD player. This CD player holds up to six CDs.

To insert one CD:

1. Press and release .
2. Wait for the message to insert the disc.
3. Load a CD. Insert the CD partway into the slot, label side up. The player pulls the CD in.

To insert multiple CDs:

1. Press and hold for two seconds. A beep sounds and Load All Discs displays.
2. Follow the displayed instruction on when to insert the discs.
3. Press again to cancel loading more CDs.

Ejecting a CD

Radio's with a Single CD Player

EJECT: Press to eject the CD. If the CD is not removed, after several seconds, the CD automatically pulls back into the player.

Radio's with a Six-Disc CD Player

EJECT: Press to eject a CD. If the CD is not removed, after several seconds, the CD automatically pulls back into the player.

To eject the CD that is currently playing:

1. Press and release . The radio beeps once and Ejecting Disc displays
2. Once the disc is ejected and Remove Disc displays, remove the CD from the player.

To eject all CDs:

1. Press and hold for two seconds. A beep sounds and Ejecting All Discs displays.
2. Once the disc is ejected and Remove Disc displays, remove the CD from the player.

Playing a CD

If the ignition or radio is turned off with a CD in the player it stays in the player. When the ignition or radio is turned on, the CD starts to play where it stopped, if it was the last selected audio source.

♫ **(Tune):** Turn to select tracks on the CD currently playing.

⏮ **SEEK:** Press to go to the start of the current track, if more than ten seconds have played. Press and hold or press multiple times to continue moving backward through the tracks on the CD.

⏭ **SEEK:** Press to go to the next track. Press and hold or press multiple times to continue moving forward through the tracks on the CD.

◁◁ **REV (Reverse):** Press and hold to reverse playback quickly within a track. Sound is heard at a reduced volume and the elapsed time of the track displays. Release to resume playing the track.

▷▷ **FWD (Fast Forward):** Press and hold to advance playback quickly within a track. Sound is heard at a reduced volume and the elapsed time of the track displays. Release to resume playing the track.

RDM (Random): Tracks can be listened to in random, rather than sequential order, on one CD or all CDs in a Six-Disc CD player.

To use random on the base radio with Single CD player:

1. Press the softkey below RDM tab until Random Current Disc displays.
2. Press the softkey again to turn off random play.

To use random on a radio with a Six-Disc CD player:

1. To play tracks from all CDs loaded in random order, press the softkey below the RDM tab until Randomize All Discs displays.
2. To play tracks from the CD currently playing in random order, press the softkey below the RDM tab until Random Current Disc displays.
3. To turn off random, press the same softkey again.

BAND: Press to listen to the radio while a CD is playing. The CD remains inside the radio for future listening.

CD/AUX (CD/Auxiliary): Press to play a CD while listening to the radio. The CD icon and a message showing the track number displays when a CD is in the player. Press this button again and the system automatically searches for an auxiliary input device, such as a portable audio player. If a portable audio player is not connected, No Aux Input Device Found may display.

Playing an MP3 CD-R or CD-RW Disc

The radio may have the MP3 CD-R or CD-RW disc capability feature. For more information, see *Using an MP3 on page 3-67* later in this section.

CD Messages

CHECK DISC: If an error message displays and/or the CD comes out, it could be for one of the following reasons:

- The CD player is very hot. When the temperature returns to normal, the CD should play.
- The road is very rough. When the road becomes smoother, the CD should play.
- The CD is dirty, scratched, wet, or upside down.
- The air is very humid. If so, wait about an hour and try again.
- A problem may have occurred while burning the CD.
- The label could be caught in the CD player.

If the CD is not playing correctly, for any other reason, try a known good CD.

If any error occurs repeatedly or if an error cannot be corrected, contact your dealer/retailer. If the radio displays an error message, write it down and provide it to your dealer/retailer when reporting the problem.

Care of CDs

Store CD(s) in their original cases or other protective cases and away from direct sunlight and dust. The CD player scans the bottom of the disc. If the bottom of a CD is damaged it may not play properly or at all. Do not touch the bottom of a CD while handling it. Pick up CDs by grasping the outer edges or the edge of the hole and the outer edge.

If the surface of a CD is dirty, take a soft, lint free cloth or dampen a clean, soft cloth in a mild, neutral detergent solution mixed with water, and clean it. Make sure the wiping process starts from the center to the edge.

Care of the CD Player

Do not add labels to a CD, it could get caught in the CD player. Use a marking pen to write on the top of the CD if a description is needed.

Do not use CD lens cleaners, they could damage the CD player.

Notice: **If a label is added to a CD, or more than one CD is inserted into the slot at a time, or an attempt is made to play scratched or damaged CDs, the CD player could be damaged. While using the CD player, use only CDs in good condition without any label, load one CD at a time, and keep the CD player and the loading slot free of foreign materials, liquids, and debris.**

If an error displays, see “CD Messages” earlier in this section.

Using the Auxiliary Input Jack

The radio system may have an auxiliary input jack located on the lower right side of the faceplate. This is not an audio output; do not plug the headphone set into the front auxiliary input jack. An external audio device such as an iPod®, laptop computer, MP3 player, CD changer, etc. can be connected to the auxiliary input jack for use as another audio source.

Drivers are encouraged to set up any auxiliary device while the vehicle is in P (Park). See *Defensive Driving on page 4-2* for more information on driver distraction.

To use a portable audio player, connect a 3.5 mm (1/8 inch) cable to the radio’s front auxiliary input jack. When a device is connected, press the radio CD/AUX button to begin playing audio from the device over the vehicle speakers.

⏻ **(Power/Volume):** Turn to adjust the volume. Additional volume adjustments may have to be made from the portable device if the volume is too quiet or not loud.

BAND: Press to listen to the radio while a portable audio device is playing. The portable audio device continues playing until it is stopped or turned off.

CD/AUX (CD/Auxiliary): Press to play a CD while a portable audio device is connected to the auxiliary input. Press again and the system begins playing audio from the connected portable audio player. If a portable audio player is not connected, No Aux Input Device Found may display.

Using the USB Port

Radio's with a USB port can control a USB storage device or an iPod® using the radio buttons and knobs. See *Using an MP3 on page 3-67* for information about how to connect and control a USB storage device or an iPod.

USB Support

The USB connector is located on the front of the radio and uses the USB 2.0 standard.

USB Supported Devices

- USB Flash Drives
- Portable USB Hard Drives
- Fifth generation or later iPod
- First, Second, or Third generation iPod nano
- iPod touch
- iPod classic

Make sure the iPod has the latest firmware from Apple® for proper operation. iPod firmware can be updated using the latest iTunes® application. See apple.com/itunes.

For help with identifying your iPod, go to apple.com/support.

Using an MP3

Format

Radios that have the capability of playing MP3's can play .mp3 files that were recorded onto a CD-R or CD-RW disc. Radios that have a USB port can play .mp3 and .wma files that are stored on a USB storage device as well as AAC files that are stored on an iPod®.

Compressed Audio

The radio can play discs that contain both uncompressed CD audio and MP3 files.

Radios with a single CD player read all MP3 files first, then the uncompressed CD audio files.

Radios with a six-CD player only read MP3 files unless the CAT button is pressed to toggle to uncompressed audio files.

CD-R or CD-RW Supported File and Folder Structure

The radio supports:

- Up to 50 folders.
- Up to 8 folders in depth.
- Up to 50 playlists.
- Up to 255 files.
- Playlists with an .m3u or .wpl extension.
- Files with an .mp3 or .cda file extension.

USB Supported File and Folder Structure

The radio supports:

- Up to 700 folders.
- Up to 8 folders in depth.
- Up to 65,535 files.
- Folder and file names up to 64 bytes.
- Files with an .mp3 or .wma file extension.
- AAC files stored on an iPod.
- FAT16
- FAT32

Root Directory

The root directory is treated as a folder. Files are stored in the root directory when the disc or storage device does not contain folders. Files accessed from the root directory of a CD display as F1 ROOT.

Empty Folder

Folders that do not contain files are skipped, and the player advances to the next folder that contains files.

Order of Play

Tracks are played in the following order:

- Play begins from the first track in the first playlist and continues sequentially through all tracks in each playlist. When the last track of the last playlist has played, play continues from the first track of the first playlist.
- Play begins from the first track in the first folder and continues sequentially through all tracks in each folder. When the last track of the last folder has played, play continues from the first track of the first folder.

When play enters a new folder, the display does not automatically show the new folder name unless the folder mode has been chosen as the default display. The new track name displays.

File System and Naming

The song name that displays is the song name that is contained in the ID3 tag. If the song name is not present in the ID3 tag, then the radio displays the file name without the extension (such as .mp3) as the track name.

Track names longer than 32 characters or four pages are shortened. The display does not show parts of words on the last page of text and the extension of the filename is not displayed.

Preprogrammed Playlists

CDs that have preprogrammed playlists that were created using WinAmp™, MusicMatch™, or Real Jukebox™ software can be accessed, however, there is no playlist editing capability using the radio. These playlists are treated as special folders containing compressed audio song files.

Playlists that have an .m3u or .pls file extension and are stored on a USB device may be supported by the radio with a USB port.

Playing a CD-R or CD-RW MP3

♫ **(Tune):** Turn to select MP3 files on the CD currently playing.

⏮ **SEEK:** Press to go to the start of the track, if more than ten seconds have played. Press and hold or press multiple times to continue moving backward through tracks.

⏭ **SEEK:** Press to go to the next track. Press and hold or press multiple times to continue moving forward through tracks.

◁◁ **REV (Reverse):** Press and hold to reverse playback quickly. Sound is heard at a reduced volume and the elapsed time of the file displays. Release ◁◁ REV to resume playing.

▷▷ **FWD (Fast Forward):** Press and hold to advance playback quickly. Sound is heard at a reduced volume and the elapsed time of the file displays. Release ▷▷ FWD to resume playing. The elapsed time of the file displays.

(Previous Folder): Press the softkey below to go to the first track in the previous folder.

(Next Folder): Press the softkey below to go to the first track in the next folder.

RDM (Random): MP3 files can be listened to on a CD in random, rather than sequential order, on one CD or all discs in the Six-Disc CD player. To use random:

1. Press the softkey under the RDM tab until Random Current Disc displays to play songs from the current CD in random order. Press the same softkey again to turn off random play.
2. Press the softkey under the RDM tab until Randomize All Discs displays to play songs from all CDs loaded in the Six-Disc CD player in random order. Press the same softkey again to turn off random play.

(Music Navigator): Press the softkey below to have the files played in order by artist or album. The player scans the disc to sort the files by artist and album ID3 tag information. It can take several minutes to scan the disc depending on the number of files on the disc. The radio may begin playing while it is scanning in the background.

When the scan is finished, the disc begins playing files in order by artist. The current artist playing is shown on the second line of the display. Once all songs by that artist are played, the player moves to the next artist in alphabetical order and begins playing files by that artist.

To listen to files by another artist, press the softkey located below either arrow tab. The disc goes to the next or previous artist in alphabetical order. Continue pressing either softkey below the arrow tab until the desired artist displays.

To change from playback by artist to playback by album:

1. Press the softkey located below the Sort By tab.
2. Press one of the softkeys below the album tab from the sort screen.
3. Press the softkey below the back tab to return to the main music navigator screen.

The album name displays on the second line between the arrows and songs from the current album begins to play. Once all songs from that album have played, the player moves to the next album in alphabetical order on the CD and begins playing MP3 files from that album.

To exit music navigator mode, press the softkey below the Back tab to return to normal MP3 playback.

Connecting a USB Storage Device or iPod®

The USB Port can be used to control an iPod or a USB storage device.

To connect a USB storage device, connect the device to the USB port located on the front of the radio.

To connect an iPod, connect one end of the USB cable that came with the iPod to the iPod's dock connector and connect the other end to the USB port located on the front of the radio. If the vehicle is on and the USB connection works, "OK to disconnect" and a GM logo may appear on the iPod and iPod appears on the radio's display. The iPod music appears on the radio's display and begins playing.

The iPod charges while it is connected to the vehicle if the vehicle is in the ACC/ACCESSORY or ON/RUN position. When the vehicle is turned off, the iPod automatically powers off and will not charge or draw power from the vehicle's battery.

If you have an older iPod model that is not supported, it can still be used by connecting it to the Auxiliary Input Jack using a standard 3.5 mm (1/8 inch) stereo cable. See "Using the Auxiliary Input Jack" earlier for more information.

Using the Radio to Control a USB Storage Device or iPod

The radio can control a USB storage device or an iPod using the radio buttons and knobs and display song information on the radio's display.

(Tune): Turn to select files.

SEEK: Press to go to the start of the track, if more than ten seconds have played. Press and hold or press multiple times to continue moving backward through tracks.

SEEK: Press to go to the next track. Press and hold or press multiple times to continue moving forward through tracks.

REV (Reverse): Press and hold to reverse playback quickly. Sound is heard at a reduced volume. Release REV to resume playing. The elapsed time of the file displays.

FWD (Fast Forward): Press and hold to advance playback quickly. Sound is heard at a reduced volume. Release FWD to resume playing. The elapsed time of the file displays.

(Information): Press to display additional information about the selected track.

Using Softkeys to Control a USB Storage Device or iPod

The five softkeys below the radio display are used to control the functions listed below.

To use the softkeys:

1. Press the first or fifth softkey below the radio display to display the functions listed below, or press the softkey below the function if it is currently displayed.
2. Press the softkey below the tab with the function on it to use that function.

(Pause): Press the softkey below to pause the track. The tab appears raised when pause is being used. Press the softkey below again to resume playback.

Back: Press the softkey below the back tab to go back to the main display screen on an iPod, or the root directory on a USB storage device.

(Folder View): Press the softkey below to view the contents of the current folder on the USB drive. To browse and select files:

1. Press the softkey below .
2. Turn to scroll through the list of folders.
3. Press to select the desired folder. If there is more then one folder, repeat Steps 1 and 2 until the desired folder is reached.
4. Turn to scroll through the files in the selected folder.
5. Press to select the desired file to be played.

To skip through large lists, the five softkeys can be used to navigate in the following order:

- First softkey, first item in the list.
- Second softkey, 1% through the list each time the softkey is pressed.
- Third softkey, 5% through the list each time the softkey is pressed.
- Fourth softkey, 10% through the list each time the softkey is pressed.
- Fifth softkey, end of the list.

(Music Navigator): Press the softkey below to view and select a file on an iPod, using the iPod's menu system. Files are sorted by:

- Playlists
- Artists
- Albums

- Genres
- Songs
- Composers

To select files:

1. Press the softkey below .
2. Turn to scroll through the list of menus.
3. Press to select the desired menu.
4. Turn to scroll through the folders or files in the selected menu.
5. Press to select the desired file to be played.

To skip through large lists, the five softkeys can be used to navigate in the following order:

- First softkey, first item in the list.
- Second softkey, 1% through the list each time the softkey is pressed.
- Third softkey, 5% through the list each time the softkey is pressed.
- Fourth softkey, 10% through the list each time the softkey is pressed.
- Fifth softkey, end of the list.

Repeat Functionality

To use Repeat:

Press the softkey below or 1 to select between Repeat All and Repeat Track.

(Repeat All): Press the softkey below to repeat all tracks. The tab appears lowered when Repeat All is being used. This is the default mode when a USB storage device or iPod is first connected.

1 **(Repeat Track):** Press the softkey below 1 to repeat one track. The tab appears raised when Repeat Track is being used.

Shuffle Functionality

To use Shuffle:

Press the softkey below , S , A or F to select between Shuffle Off, Shuffle All Songs/Shuffle Songs, Shuffle Album, or Shuffle Folder.

(Shuffle Off): Press the softkey below S to turn shuffle off. This is the default mode when a USB storage device or iPod is first connected.

S **(Shuffle All Songs / Shuffle Songs):** Press the softkey below F or A to shuffle all songs on the USB storage device or iPod.

⤮A **(Shuffle Album):** Press the softkey below ⇄ to shuffle all songs in the current album on an iPod.

⤮F **(Shuffle Folder):** Press the softkey below ⇄ to shuffle all songs in the current folder on a USB storage device.

XM Radio Messages

XL (Explicit Language Channels): These channels, or any others, can be blocked at a customer's request, by calling 1-800-852-XMXM (9696).

XM Updating: The encryption code in the receiver is being updated, and no action is required. This process should take no longer than 30 seconds.

No XM Signal: The system is functioning correctly, but the vehicle is in a location that is blocking the XM™ signal. When the vehicle is moved into an open area, the signal should return.

Loading XM: The audio system is acquiring and processing audio and text data. No action is needed. This message should disappear shortly.

Channel Off Air: This channel is not currently in service. Tune in to another channel.

Channel Unauth: This channel is blocked or cannot be received with your XM Subscription package.

Channel Unavail: This previously assigned channel is no longer assigned. Tune to another station. If this station was one of the presets, choose another station for that preset button.

No Artist Info: No artist information is available at this time on this channel. The system is working properly.

No Title Info: No song title information is available at this time on this channel. The system is working properly.

No CAT Info: No category information is available at this time on this channel. The system is working properly.

No Information: No text or informational messages are available at this time on this channel. The system is working properly.

CAT Not Found: There are no channels available for the selected category. The system is working properly.

XM Theftlocked: The XM receiver in the vehicle could have previously been in another vehicle. For security purposes, XM receivers cannot be swapped between vehicles. If this message is received after having the vehicle serviced, check with your dealer/retailer.

XM Radio ID: If tuned to channel 0, this message alternates with the XM™ Radio 8 digit radio ID label. This label is needed to activate the service.

Unknown: If this message is received when tuned to channel 0, there could be a receiver fault. Consult with your dealer/retailer.

Check XM Receivr: If this message does not clear within a short period of time, the receiver could have a fault. Consult with your dealer/retailer.

XM Not Available: If this message does not clear within a short period of time, the receiver could have a fault. Consult with your dealer/retailer.

Bluetooth®

Vehicles with a Bluetooth system can use a Bluetooth capable cell phone with a Hands Free Profile to make and receive phone calls. The system can be used while the key is in ON/RUN or ACC/ACCESSORY position. The range of the Bluetooth system can be up to 30 ft. (9.1 m). Not all phones support all functions, and not all phones are guaranteed to work with the in-vehicle Bluetooth system. See gm.com/bluetooth for more information on compatible phones.

Voice Recognition

The Bluetooth system uses voice recognition to interpret voice commands to dial phone numbers and name tags.

Noise: Keep interior noise levels to a minimum. The system may not recognize voice commands if there is too much background noise.

When to Speak: A short tone sounds after the system responds indicating when it is waiting for a voice command. Wait until the tone and then speak.

How to Speak: Speak clearly in a calm and natural voice.

Audio System

When using the in-vehicle Bluetooth system, sound comes through the vehicle's front audio system speakers and overrides the audio system. Use the audio system volume knob, during a call, to change the volume level. The adjusted volume level remains in memory for later calls. To prevent missed calls, a minimum volume level is used if the volume is turned down too low.

Bluetooth Controls

Use the buttons located on the steering wheel to operate the in-vehicle Bluetooth system. See *Audio Steering Wheel Controls on page 3-89* for more information.

(Push To Talk): Press to answer incoming calls, to confirm system information, and to start speech recognition.

(Phone On Hook): Press to end a call, reject a call, or to cancel an operation.

Pairing

A Bluetooth enabled cell phone must be paired to the in-vehicle Bluetooth system first and then connected to the vehicle before it can be used. See the cell phone manufacturers user guide for Bluetooth functions before pairing the cell phone. If a Bluetooth phone is not connected, calls will be made using OnStar® Hands-Free Calling, if available. Refer to the OnStar owner's guide for more information.

Pairing Information:

- Up to five cell phones can be paired to the in-vehicle Bluetooth system.
- The pairing process is disabled when the vehicle is moving.
- The in-vehicle Bluetooth system automatically links with the first available paired cell phone in the order the phone was paired.
- Only one paired cell phone can be connected to the in-vehicle Bluetooth system at a time.
- Pairing should only need to be completed once, unless changes to the pairing information have been made or the phone is deleted.

To link to a different paired phone, see Linking to a Different Phone later in this section.

Pairing a Phone

1. Press and hold ✆ «ξ for two seconds. The system responds with “Ready” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Bluetooth”. The system responds with “Bluetooth ready” followed by a tone.
3. Say “Pair”. The system responds with instructions and a four digit PIN number. The PIN number will be used in Step 4.
4. Start the Pairing process on the cell phone that will be paired to the vehicle. Reference the cell phone manufacturers user guide for information on this process.

   Locate the device named “General Motors” in the list on the cellular phone and follow the instructions on the cell phone to enter the four digit PIN number that was provided in Step 3.
5. The system prompts for a name for the phone. Use a name that best describes the phone. This name will be used to indicate which phone is connected. The system then confirms the name provided.
6. The system responds with “<Phone name> has been successfully paired” after the pairing process is complete.
7. Repeat Steps 1 through 7 for additional phones to be paired.

Listing All Paired and Connected Phones

1. Press and hold ✆ «ξ for two seconds. The system responds with “Ready” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Bluetooth”. The system responds with “Bluetooth ready” followed by a tone.
3. Say “List”. The system lists all the paired Bluetooth devices. If a phone is connected to the vehicle, the system will say “Is connected” after the connected phone.

Deleting a Paired Phone

1. Press and hold ✆ «ξ for two seconds. The system responds with “Ready” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Bluetooth”. The system responds with “Bluetooth ready” followed by a tone.
3. Say “Delete”. The system asks which phone to delete followed by a tone.
4. Say the name of the phone to be deleted. If the phone name is unknown, use the “List” command for a list of all paired phones. The system responds with “Would you like to delete <phone name>? Yes or No” followed by a tone.
5. Say “Yes” to delete the phone. The system responds with “OK, deleting <phone name>”.

Linking to a Different Phone

1. Press and hold ✆ for two seconds. The system responds with “Ready” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Bluetooth”. The system responds with “Bluetooth ready” followed by a tone.
3. Say “Change phone”. The system responds with “Please wait while I search for other phones”.
   - If another phone is found, the response will be “<Phone name> is now connected”.
   - If another phone is not found, the original phone remains connected.

Storing Name Tags

The system can store up to thirty phone numbers as name tags that are shared between the Bluetooth and OnStar systems.

The system uses the following commands to store and retrieve phone numbers:

- Store
- Digit Store
- Directory

Using the Store Command

The store command allows a phone number to be stored without entering the digits individually.

1. Press and hold ✆ for two seconds. The system responds with “Ready” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Store”. The system responds with “Store, number please” followed by a tone.
3. Say the complete phone number to be stored at once with no pauses.
   - If the system recognizes the number it responds with “OK, Storing” and repeats the phone number.
   - If the system is unsure it recognizes the phone number, it responds with “Store” and repeats the number followed by “Please say yes or no”. If the number is correct, say “Yes”. If the number is not correct, say “No”. The system will ask for the number to be re-entered.
4. After the system stores the phone number, it responds with “Please say the name tag” followed by a tone.

5. Say a name tag for the phone number. The name tag is recorded and the system responds with “About to store <name tag>. Does that sound OK?”.
   - If the name tag does not sound correct, say “No” and repeat Step 5.
   - If the name tag sounds correct, say “Yes” and the name tag is stored. After the number is stored the system returns to the main menu.

Using the Digit Store Command

The digit store command allows a phone number to be stored by entering the digits individually.

1. Press and hold ✆ «Σ for two seconds. The system responds with “Ready” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Digit Store”. The system responds with “Please say the first digit to store” followed by a tone.
3. Say the first digit to be stored. The system will repeat back the digit it heard followed by a tone. Continue entering digits until the number to be stored is complete.
   - If an unwanted number is recognized by the system, say “Clear” at any time to clear the last number.
   - To hear all of the numbers recognized by the system, say “Verify” at any time and the system will repeat them.
4. After the complete number has been entered, say “Store”. The system responds with “Please say the name tag” followed by a tone.
5. Say a name tag for the phone number. The name tag is recorded and the system responds with “About to store <name tag>. Does that sound OK?”.
   - If the name tag does not sound correct, say “No” and repeat Step 5.
   - If the name tag sounds correct, say “Yes” and the name tag is stored. After the number is stored the system returns to the main menu.

Using the Directory Command

The directory command lists all of the name tags stored by the system. To use the directory command:

1. Press and hold ✆ «Σ for two seconds. The system responds with “Ready” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Directory”. The system responds with “Directory” and then plays back all of the stored name tags. When the list is complete, the system returns to the main menu.

Deleting Name Tags

The system uses the following commands to delete name tags:

- Delete
- Delete all name tags

Using the Delete Command

The delete command allows specific name tags to be deleted.

To use the delete command:

1. Press and hold ✆ for two seconds. The system responds with “Ready” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Delete”. The system responds with “Delete, please say the name tag” followed by a tone.
3. Say the name tag to be deleted. The system responds with “Would you like to delete, <name tag>? Please say yes or no”.
   - If the name tag is correct, say “Yes” to delete the name tag. The system responds with “OK, deleting <name tag>, returning to the main menu.”
   - If the name tag is incorrect, say “No”. The system responds with “No. OK, let’s try again, please say the name tag.”

Using the Delete All Name Tags Command

The delete all name tags command deletes all stored phone book name tags and route name tags for OnStar, if present.

To use the delete all name tags command:

1. Press and hold ✆ for two seconds. The system responds with “Ready” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Delete all name tags”. The system responds with “You are about to delete all name tags stored in your phone directory and your route destination directory. Are you sure you want to do this? Please say yes or no.”
   - Say “Yes” to delete all name tags.
   - Say “No” to cancel the function and return to the main menu.

Making a Call

Calls can be made using the following commands:

- Dial
- Digit Dial
- Call
- Re-dial

Using the Dial Command

1. Press and hold ✆ «ξ for two seconds. The system responds with “Ready” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Dial”. The system responds with “Dial using <phone name>. Number please” followed by a tone.
3. Say the entire number without pausing.
   - If the system recognizes the number, it responds with “OK, Dialing” and dials the number.
   - If the system does not recognize the number, it confirms the numbers followed by a tone. If the number is correct, say “Yes”. The system responds with “OK, Dialing” and dials the number. If the number is not correct, say “No”. The system will ask for the number to be re-entered.

Using the Digit Dial Command

1. Press and hold ✆ «ξ for two seconds. The system responds with “Ready” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Digit Dial”. The system responds with “Digit dial using <phone name>, please say the first digit to dial” followed by a tone.
3. Say the digit to be dialed one at a time. Following each digit, the system will repeat back the digit it heard followed by a tone.
4. Continue entering digits until the number to be dialed is complete. After the whole number has been entered, say “Dial”. The system responds with “OK, Dialing” and dials the number.
   - If an unwanted number is recognized by the system, say “Clear” at any time to clear the last number.
   - To hear all of the numbers recognized by the system, say “Verify” at any time and the system will repeat them.

Using the Call Command

1. Press and hold ✆ for two seconds. The system responds with “Ready” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Call”. The system responds with “Call using <phone name>. Please say the name tag” followed by a tone.
3. Say the name tag of the person to call.
   - If the system clearly recognizes the name tag it responds with “OK, calling, <name tag>” and dials the number.
   - If the system is unsure it recognizes the right name tag, it confirms the name tag followed by a tone. If the name tag is correct, say “Yes”. The system responds with “OK, calling, <name tag>” and dials the number. If the name tag is not correct, say “No”. The system will ask for the name tag to be re-entered.

Once connected, the person called will be heard through the audio speakers.

Using the Re-dial Command

1. Press and hold ✆ for two seconds. The system responds with “Ready” followed by a tone.
2. After the tone, say “Re-dial”. The system responds with “Re-dial using <phone name>” and dials the last number called from the connected Bluetooth phone.

Once connected, the person called will be heard through the audio speakers.

Receiving a Call

When an incoming call is received, the audio system mutes and a ring tone is heard in the vehicle.

- Press ✆ and begin speaking to answer the call.
- Press ▽ to ignore a call.

Call Waiting

Call waiting must be supported on the Bluetooth phone and enabled by the wireless service carrier to work.

- Press ✆ «ξ to answer an incoming call when another call is active. The original call is placed on hold.
- Press ✆ «ξ again to return to the original call.
- To ignore the incoming call, continue with the original call with no action.
- Press ⌓ ▽ to disconnect the current call and switch to the call on hold.

Three-Way Calling

Three-Way Calling must be supported on the Bluetooth phone and enabled by the wireless service carrier to work.

1. While on a call press ✆ «ξ . The system responds with “Ready” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Three-way call”. The system responds with “Three-way call, please say dial or call”.
3. Use the dial or call command to dial the number of the third party to be called.
4. Once the call is connected, press ✆ «ξ to link all the callers together.

Ending a Call

Press ⌓ ▽ to end a call.

Muting a Call

During a call, all sounds from inside the vehicle can be muted so that the person on the other end of the call cannot hear them.

To Mute a call

1. Press ✆ «ξ . The system responds with “Ready” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Mute Call”. The system responds with “Call muted”.

To Cancel Mute

1. Press ✆ «ξ . The system responds with “Ready” followed by a tone.
2. After the tone, say “Mute Call”. The system responds with “Resuming call”.

Transferring a Call

Audio can be transferred between the in-vehicle Bluetooth system and the cell phone.

To Transfer Audio to the Cell Phone

During a call with the audio in the vehicle:

1. Press . The system responds with “Ready” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Transfer Call.” The system responds with “Transferring call” and the audio will switch from the vehicle to the cell phone.

To Transfer Audio to the In-Vehicle Bluetooth System

The cellular phone must be paired and connected with the Bluetooth system before a call can be transferred. The connection process can take up to two minutes after the key is turned to the ON/RUN or ACC/ACCESSORY position.

During a call with the audio on the cell phone, press for more than two seconds. The audio switches from the cell phone to the vehicle.

Voice Pass-Thru

Voice Pass-Thru allows access to the voice recognition commands on the cell phone. See the cell phone manufacturers user guide to see if the cell phone supports this feature. This feature can be used to verbally access contacts stored in the cell phone.

1. Press and hold for two seconds. The system responds with “Ready” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Bluetooth”. The system responds with “Bluetooth ready” followed by a tone.
3. Say “Voice”. The system responds with “OK, accessing <phone name>”.
   - The cell phone’s normal prompt messages will go through its cycle according to the phone’s operating instructions.

Dual Tone Multi-Frequency (DTMF) Tones

The in-vehicle Bluetooth system can send numbers and numbers stored as name tags during a call. This is used when calling a menu driven phone system. Account numbers can be programmed into the phonebook for retrieval during menu driven calls.

Sending a Number During a Call

1. Press . The system responds with “Ready” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Dial”. The system responds with “Say a number to send tones” followed by a tone.
3. Say the number to send.
   - If the system clearly recognizes the number it responds with “OK, Sending Number” and the dial tones are sent and the call continues.
   - If the system is not sure it recognized the number properly, it responds “Dial Number, Please say yes or no?” followed by a tone. If the number is correct, say “Yes”. The system responds with “OK, Sending Number” and the dial tones are sent and the call continues.

Sending a Stored Name Tag During a Call

1. Press . The system responds with “Ready” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Send name tag.” The system responds with “Say a name tag to send tones” followed by a tone.
3. Say the name tag to send.
   - If the system clearly recognizes the name tag it responds with “OK, Sending <name tag>” and the dial tones are sent and the call continues.
   - If the system is not sure it recognized the name tag properly, it responds “Dial <name tag>, Please say yes or no?” followed by a tone. If the name tag is correct, say “Yes”. The system responds with “OK, Sending <name tag>” and the dial tones are sent and the call continues.

Clearing the System

Unless information is deleted out of the in-vehicle Bluetooth system, it will be retained indefinitely. This includes all saved name tags in the phonebook and phone pairing information. For information on how to delete this information, see the above sections on Deleting a Paired Phone and Deleting Name Tags.

Other Information

The Bluetooth® word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth® SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by General Motors is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference.
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

This device complies with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause interference.
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Changes or modifications to this system by other than an authorized service facility could void authorization to use this equipment.

Rear Seat Audio (RSA)

Your vehicle may have rear seat audio (RSA). This feature allows rear seat passengers to listen to and control any of the music sources: radio, CDs, or other auxiliary sources. However, the rear seat passengers can only control the music sources the front seat passengers are not listening to. For example, rear seat passengers can control and listen to a CD through the headphones, while the driver listens to the radio through the front speakers. The rear seat passengers have control of the volume for each set of headphones.

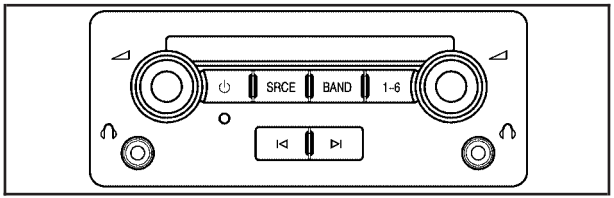
The RSA functions can be operated even when the main radio is off. The front audio system will display the headphone icon when the RSA is on, and will disappear from the display when it is off.

The audio system mutes the rear speakers when the RSA audio is active through the headphones.

Audio can be heard through wired headphones (not included) plugged into the jacks on the RSA. If your vehicle has this feature, audio can also be heard on Channel 2 of the wireless headphones.

To listen to an iPod or portable audio device through the RSA, attach the iPod or portable audio device to the front auxiliary input (if available), located on the front audio system. Turn the iPod on, then choose the front auxiliary input with the RSA SRCE button.

The area above the top row of buttons on the RSA faceplate is not a display. Infrared transmitters are located in this area for the wireless headphones.



The following functions are controlled by the RSA system:

(Volume): Turn this knob to increase or to decrease the volume. The left knob controls the left wired headphones and the right knob controls the right wired headphones.

(Power): Press this button to turn the system on or off. The rear speakers are muted when the RSA power is turned on.

SRCE (Source): Press this button to switch between the CD, and if your vehicle has these features, DVD, front auxiliary, and rear auxiliary.

BAND: Press this button to switch between FM1, FM2, AM, or XM1 or XM2 (if equipped).

1–6 (Preset): Press this button to go to the next preset radio station. This function is inactive if the front seat passengers are listening to the radio.

While a CD is playing in the six-disc CD changer, press this button to select the next CD, if multiple CDs are loaded. This function is inactive if the front seat passengers are listening to a CD.

(Seek): While listening to the radio, press the seek arrows to go to the next or the previous station and stay there. This function is inactive if the front seat passengers are listening to the radio.

While a CD is playing, press the left seek arrow to go to the start of the current track if more than eight seconds have played. Press the right seek arrow to go to the next track on the CD. This function is inactive if the front seat passengers are listening to a CD.

Rear Seat Audio Controls

The following function is controlled by the main radio:

Front seat passengers can turn the RSA off by quickly pressing the front radio power knob twice.

Headphones

The RSA includes two wireless headphones that are dedicated to this system. These headphones are used to listen to media such as CDs or radio. The wireless headphones have an On/Off button and a volume control.

Push the power button to turn on the headphones. An indicator light located on the headphones comes on. If the light does not come on, the batteries might need to be replaced. See “Battery Replacement” later in this section for more information. Switch the headphones to Off when not in use.

Infrared transmitters are located on the rear seat audio faceplate above the top row of buttons. This area is not a display. The headphones shut off automatically to save the battery power if the RSA shuts off or if the headphones are out of range of the transmitters for more than three minutes. If you move too far forward or step out of the vehicle, the headphones lose the audio signal.

The headphones automatically turn off after four hours of continuous use.

To adjust the volume on the headphones, use the volume control located on the right side.

For optimal audio performance, the headphones must be worn correctly. Headphones should be worn with the headband over the top of the head for best audio reception. The symbol L (Left) appears on the upper left side, above the ear pad and should be positioned on the left ear. The symbol R (Right) appears on the upper right side, above the ear pad and should be positioned on the right ear.

Notice: **Do not store the headphones in heat or direct sunlight. This could damage the headphones and repairs will not be covered by the warranty. Storage in extreme cold can weaken the batteries. Keep the headphones stored in a cool, dry place.**

If the foam ear pads attached to the headphones become worn or damaged, the pads can be replaced separately from the headphone set. Contact your dealer/retailer for more information.

Battery Replacement

To change the batteries on the headphones, do the following:

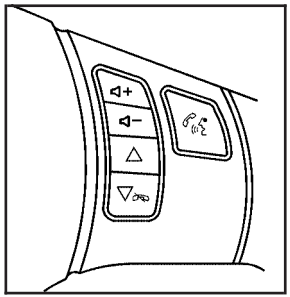
1. Turn the screw to loosen the battery door located on the left side of the headphones. Slide the battery door open.
2. Replace the two batteries in the compartment. Make sure that they are installed correctly, using the diagram on the inside of the battery compartment.
3. Replace the battery door and tighten the door screw.

If the headphones are to be stored for a long period of time, remove the batteries and keep them in a cool, dry place.

Theft-Deterrent Feature

THEFTLOCK® is designed to discourage theft of the vehicle's radio by learning a portion of the Vehicle Identification Number (VIN). The radio does not operate if it is stolen or moved to a different vehicle.

Audio Steering Wheel Controls



Vehicles with audio steering wheel controls could differ depending on the vehicle's options. Some audio controls can be adjusted at the steering wheel.

+ / – (Volume): Press to increase or to decrease the radio volume.

△ / ▽ (Next / Previous): Press to change radio stations, select tracks on a CD, or to select tracks and navigate folders on an iPod® or USB device.

To change radio stations:

- Press and release △ or ▽ to go to the next or previous radio station stored as a preset.
- Press and hold △ or ▽ to go to the next or previous radio station in the selected band with a strong signal.

To select tracks on a CD:

Press and release △ or ▽ to go to the next or previous track.

To select tracks on an iPod or USB device:

1. Press and hold △ or ▽ while listening to a song until the contents of the current folder display on the radio display.
2. Press and release △ or ▽ to scroll up or down the list, then press and hold △ to play the highlighted track.

To navigate folders on an iPod or USB device:

1. Press and hold △ or ▽ while listening to a song until the contents of the current folder display on the radio display.
2. Press and hold ▽ to go back to the previous folder list.
3. Press and release △ or ▽ to scroll up or down the list.
   - To select a folder, press and hold △ when the folder is highlighted.
   - To go back further in the folder list, press and hold ▽ .

(End): Press to reject an incoming call, or end a current call.

(Mute / Voice Recognition): Press to silence the vehicle speakers only. Press again to turn the sound on.

For vehicles with OnStar® or Bluetooth systems press and hold for longer than two seconds to interact with those systems. See *OnStar® System on page 2-38* and *Bluetooth® on page 3-75* for more information.

Radio Reception

Frequency interference and static can occur during normal radio reception if items such as cell phone chargers, vehicle convenience accessories, and external electronic devices are plugged into the accessory power outlet. If there is interference or static, unplug the item from the accessory power outlet.

AM

The range for most AM stations is greater than for FM, especially at night. The longer range can cause station frequencies to interfere with each other. For better radio reception, most AM radio stations boost the power levels during the day, and then reduce these levels during the night. Static can also occur when things like storms and power lines interfere with radio reception. When this happens, try reducing the treble on the radio.

FM Stereo

FM signals only reach about 10 to 40 miles (16 to 65 km). Although the radio has a built-in electronic circuit that automatically works to reduce interference, some static can occur, especially around tall buildings or hills, causing the sound to fade in and out.

XM™ Satellite Radio Service

XM Satellite Radio Service gives digital radio reception from coast-to-coast in the 48 contiguous United States, and in Canada. Just as with FM, tall buildings or hills can interfere with satellite radio signals, causing the sound to fade in and out. In addition, traveling or standing under heavy foliage, bridges, garages, or tunnels may cause loss of the XM signal for a period of time.

Cellular Phone Usage

Cellular phone usage may cause interference with the vehicle's radio. This interference may occur when making or receiving phone calls, charging the phone's battery, or simply having the phone on. This interference causes an increased level of static while listening to the radio. If static is received while listening to the radio, unplug the cellular phone and turn it off.

Backglass Antenna

The AM-FM antenna is integrated with the rear window defogger, located in the rear window. Make sure that the inside surface of the rear window is not scratched and that the lines on the glass are not damaged. If the inside surface is damaged, it could interfere with radio reception. For proper radio reception, the antenna connector needs to be properly attached to the post on the glass.

If a cellular telephone antenna needs to be attached to the glass, make sure that the grid lines for the AM-FM antenna are not damaged. There is enough space between the grid lines to attach a cellular telephone antenna without interfering with radio reception.

Notice: **Using a razor blade or sharp object to clear the inside rear window can damage the rear window antenna and/or the rear window defogger. Repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Do not clear the inside rear window with sharp objects.**

Notice: **Do not apply aftermarket glass tinting with metallic film. The metallic film in some tinting materials will interfere with or distort the incoming radio reception. Any damage caused to your backglass antenna due to metallic tinting materials will not be covered by the vehicle warranty.**

XM™ Satellite Radio Antenna System

The XM Satellite Radio antenna is located on the roof of the vehicle. Keep the antenna clear of obstructions for clear radio reception.

If the vehicle has a sunroof, the performance of the XM system may be affected if the sunroof is open.

Chime Level Adjustment

The radio may be used to adjust the vehicle's chime level. If the radio can be used to change the volume level of the chime, press and hold the sixth FAV softkey with the ignition on and the radio power off. The volume level changes between Normal and Loud. The selected volume level appears on the radio display.

Removing the radio and not replacing it with a factory radio or chime module will disable vehicle chimes.

Section 4 Driving Your Vehicle

Your Driving, the Road, and the Vehicle 4-2
- Driving for Better Fuel Economy 4-2
- Defensive Driving 4-2
- Drunk Driving 4-3
- Control of a Vehicle 4-3
- Braking 4-4
- Antilock Brake System (ABS) 4-5
- Braking in Emergencies 4-6
- Electronic Stability Control (ESC) 4-6
- Traction Control System (TCS) 4-8
- Steering 4-11
- Off-Road Recovery 4-13
- Passing 4-13
- Loss of Control 4-13
- Driving at Night 4-15
- Driving in Rain and on Wet Roads 4-15
- Before Leaving on a Long Trip 4-16
- Highway Hypnosis 4-16
- Hill and Mountain Roads 4-17
- Winter Driving 4-18
- If Your Vehicle is Stuck in Sand, Mud, Ice, or Snow 4-20
- Rocking Your Vehicle to Get It Out 4-21
- Loading the Vehicle 4-21

Towing 4-26
- Towing Your Vehicle 4-26
- Recreational Vehicle Towing 4-26
- Towing a Trailer 4-30

Your Driving, the Road, and the Vehicle

Driving for Better Fuel Economy

Driving habits can affect fuel mileage. Here are some driving tips to get the best fuel economy possible.

- Avoid fast starts and accelerate smoothly.
- Brake gradually and avoid abrupt stops.
- Avoid idling the engine for long periods of time.
- When road and weather conditions are appropriate, use cruise control, if equipped.
- Always follow posted speed limits or drive more slowly when conditions require.
- Keep vehicle tires properly inflated.
- Combine several trips into a single trip.
- Replace the vehicle's tires with the same TPC Spec number molded into the tire's sidewall near the size.
- Follow recommended scheduled maintenance.

Defensive Driving

Defensive driving means "always expect the unexpected." The first step in driving defensively is to wear your safety belt — See *Safety Belts: They Are for Everyone on page 1-10*.

⚠ CAUTION:

Assume that other road users (pedestrians, bicyclists, and other drivers) are going to be careless and make mistakes. Anticipate what they might do and be ready. In addition:

- Allow enough following distance between you and the driver in front of you.
- Focus on the task of driving.

Driver distraction can cause collisions resulting in injury or possible death. These simple defensive driving techniques could save your life.

Drunk Driving

⚠ CAUTION:

Drinking and then driving is very dangerous. Your reflexes, perceptions, attentiveness, and judgment can be affected by even a small amount of alcohol. You can have a serious — or even fatal — collision if you drive after drinking. Do not drink and drive or ride with a driver who has been drinking. Ride home in a cab; or if you are with a group, designate a driver who will not drink.

Death and injury associated with drinking and driving is a global tragedy.

Alcohol affects four things that anyone needs to drive a vehicle: judgment, muscular coordination, vision, and attentiveness.

Police records show that almost 40 percent of all motor vehicle-related deaths involve alcohol. In most cases, these deaths are the result of someone who was drinking and driving. In recent years, more than 17,000 annual motor vehicle-related deaths have been associated with the use of alcohol, with about 250,000 people injured.

For persons under 21, it is against the law in every U.S. state to drink alcohol. There are good medical, psychological, and developmental reasons for these laws.

The obvious way to eliminate the leading highway safety problem is for people never to drink alcohol and then drive.

Medical research shows that alcohol in a person's system can make crash injuries worse, especially injuries to the brain, spinal cord, or heart. This means that when anyone who has been drinking — driver or passenger — is in a crash, that person's chance of being killed or permanently disabled is higher than if the person had not been drinking.

Control of a Vehicle

The following three systems help to control the vehicle while driving — brakes, steering, and accelerator. At times, as when driving on snow or ice, it is easy to ask more of those control systems than the tires and road can provide. Meaning, you can lose control of the vehicle. See *Traction Control System (TCS) on page 4-8* and *Electronic Stability Control (ESC) on page 4-6*.

Adding non-dealer/non-retailer accessories can affect vehicle performance. See *Accessories and Modifications on page 5-3*.

Braking

See *Brake System Warning Light on page 3-33*.

Braking action involves perception time and reaction time. Deciding to push the brake pedal is perception time. Actually doing it is reaction time.

Average reaction time is about three-fourths of a second. But that is only an average. It might be less with one driver and as long as two or three seconds or more with another. Age, physical condition, alertness, coordination, and eyesight all play a part. So do alcohol, drugs, and frustration. But even in three-fourths of a second, a vehicle moving at 60 mph (100 km/h) travels 66 feet (20 m). That could be a lot of distance in an emergency, so keeping enough space between the vehicle and others is important.

And, of course, actual stopping distances vary greatly with the surface of the road, whether it is pavement or gravel; the condition of the road, whether it is wet, dry, or icy; tire tread; the condition of the brakes; the weight of the vehicle; and the amount of brake force applied.

Avoid needless heavy braking. Some people drive in spurts — heavy acceleration followed by heavy braking — rather than keeping pace with traffic. This is a mistake. The brakes might not have time to cool between hard stops. The brakes will wear out much faster with a lot of heavy braking. Keeping pace with the traffic and allowing realistic following distances eliminates a lot of unnecessary braking. That means better braking and longer brake life.

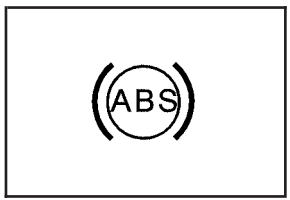
If the engine ever stops while the vehicle is being driven, brake normally but do not pump the brakes. If the brakes are pumped, the pedal could get harder to push down. If the engine stops, there will still be some power brake assist but it will be used when the brake is applied. Once the power assist is used up, it can take longer to stop and the brake pedal will be harder to push.

Adding non-dealer/non-retailer accessories can affect vehicle performance. See *Accessories and Modifications on page 5-3*.

Antilock Brake System (ABS)

This vehicle has the Antilock Brake System (ABS), an advanced electronic braking system that helps prevent a braking skid.

When the engine is started and the vehicle begins to drive away, ABS checks itself. A momentary motor or clicking noise might be heard while this test is going on, and it might even be noticed that the brake pedal moves a little. This is normal.



If there is a problem with ABS, this warning light stays on. See *Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light on page 3-34*.

Let us say the road is wet and you are driving safely. Suddenly, an animal jumps out in front of you. You slam on the brakes and continue braking. Here is what happens with ABS:

A computer senses that the wheels are slowing down. If one of the wheels is about to stop rolling, the computer will separately work the brakes at each wheel.

ABS can change the brake pressure to each wheel, as required, faster than any driver could. This can help the driver steer around the obstacle while braking hard.

As the brakes are applied, the computer keeps receiving updates on wheel speed and controls braking pressure accordingly.

Remember: ABS does not change the time needed to get a foot up to the brake pedal or always decrease stopping distance. If you get too close to the vehicle in front of you, there will not be enough time to apply the brakes if that vehicle suddenly slows or stops. Always leave enough room up ahead to stop, even with ABS.

Using ABS

Do not pump the brakes. Just hold the brake pedal down firmly and let antilock work. The antilock pump or motor might be heard operating and the brake pedal might be felt to pulsate, but this is normal.

Braking in Emergencies

ABS allows the driver to steer and brake at the same time. In many emergencies, steering can help more than even the very best braking.

Brake Assist

This vehicle has a Brake Assist feature designed to assist the driver in stopping or decreasing vehicle speed in emergency driving conditions. This feature uses the stability system hydraulic brake control module to supplement the power brake system under conditions where the driver has quickly and forcefully applied the brake pedal in an attempt to quickly stop or slow down the vehicle. The stability system hydraulic brake control module increases brake pressure at each corner of the vehicle until the ABS activates. Minor brake pedal pulsations or pedal movement during this time is normal and the driver should continue to apply the brake pedal as the driving situation dictates The Brake Assist feature will automatically disengage when the brake pedal is released or brake pedal pressure is quickly decreased.

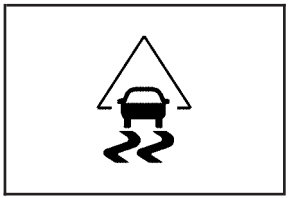
Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

The vehicle may have an Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system which combines antilock brake, traction and stability control systems and helps the driver maintain directional control of the vehicle in most driving conditions.

When you first start the vehicle and begin to drive away, the system performs several diagnostic checks to ensure there are no problems. The system may be heard or felt while it is working. This is normal and does not mean there is a problem with the vehicle. The system should initialize before the vehicle reaches 20 mph (32 km/h).

If the system fails to turn on or activate, the ESC/TCS light will be on solid, and the ESC OFF or SERVICE ESC message will be displayed.

For more information, see *Driver Information Center (DIC) on page 3-43*.



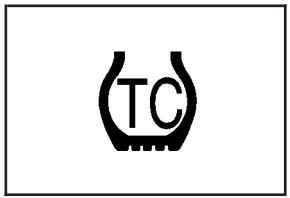
This light will flash on the instrument panel cluster when the ESC system is both on and activated.

The system may be heard or felt while it is working; this is normal.

When the light is on solid and either the SERVICE ESC or ESC OFF message is displayed, the system will not assist the driver in maintaining directional control of the vehicle. Adjust your driving accordingly. See *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-45*.

The Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system is automatically enabled whenever the vehicle is started. To assist the driver with vehicle directional control, especially in slippery road conditions, the system should always be left on. But, ESC can be turned off if needed.

If the vehicle is in cruise control when the system begins to assist the driver maintain directional control of the vehicle, the ESC/TCS light will flash and the cruise control will automatically disengage. The cruise control system may be re-engaged when road conditions allow. See *Cruise Control on page 3-10*.



The ESC/TCS button is located on the instrument panel.

The traction control system can be turned off or back on by pressing the ESC/TCS button. To disable both traction control and ESC, press and hold the button briefly.

When the ESC system is turned off, the TRACTION OFF and ESC OFF messages will appear, and the ESC/TCS light will be on solid to warn the driver that both traction control and ESC are disabled.

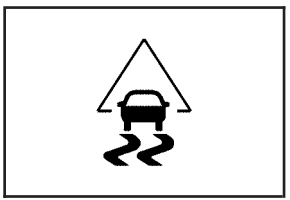
It is recommended to leave the system on for normal driving conditions, but it may be necessary to turn the system off if the vehicle is stuck in sand, mud, ice or snow, and you want to “rock” the vehicle to attempt to free it. It may also be necessary to turn off the system when driving in extreme off-road conditions where high wheel spin is required. See *If Your Vehicle is Stuck in Sand, Mud, Ice, or Snow on page 4-20*.

ESC may also turn off automatically if it determines that a problem exists with the system. The ESC OFF and SERVICE ESC messages and the ESC/TCS light will be on solid to warn the driver that ESC is disabled and requires service. If the problem does not clear after restarting the vehicle, see your dealer/retailer for service. See *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-45* for more information.

Adding non-dealer/non-retailer accessories can affect the vehicle’s performance. See *Accessories and Modifications on page 5-3* for more information.

Traction Control System (TCS)

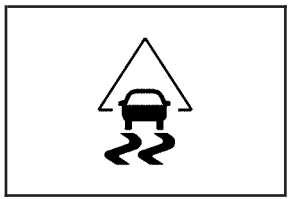
The vehicle may have a Traction Control System (TCS) that limits wheel spin. This is especially useful in slippery road conditions. The system operates only if it senses that the front wheels are spinning too much or are beginning to lose traction. When this happens, the system works the front brakes and reduces engine power by closing the throttle and managing engine spark to limit wheel spin.



This light will flash when the traction control system is limiting wheel spin.

The system may be heard or felt while it is working, but this is normal.

If the vehicle is in cruise control when TCS begins to limit wheel spin, the cruise control will automatically disengage. The cruise control may be re-engaged when road conditions allow. See *Cruise Control on page 3-10*.

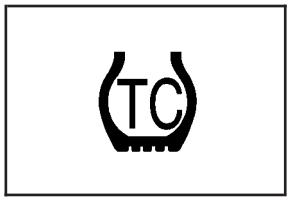


When this light is on solid and either the SERVICE TRACTION or TRACTION OFF message is displayed, the system will not limit wheel spin.

Adjust your driving accordingly. See *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-45* for more information.

The Traction Control System is automatically enabled whenever the vehicle is started. To limit wheel spin, especially in slippery road conditions, always leave the system enabled. TCS can be turned off if needed.

It is recommended to leave the system on for normal driving conditions, but it may be necessary to turn the system off if the vehicle is stuck in sand, mud, ice or snow, and you want to “rock” the vehicle to attempt to free it. It may also be necessary to turn off the system when driving in extreme off-road conditions where high wheel spin is required. See *If Your Vehicle is Stuck in Sand, Mud, Ice, or Snow on page 4-20*.



To turn the system off or on, press and release this button located on the center console.

The DIC will display the appropriate message as described previously when the button is pressed.

Traction Control Operation

Traction control limits wheel spin by reducing engine power to the wheels (engine speed management) and by applying brakes to each individual wheel (brake-traction control) as necessary.

The traction control system is enabled automatically when the vehicle is started, and it will activate and flash the ESC/TCS light and display the LOW TRACTION message if it senses either of the front wheels are spinning or beginning to lose traction while driving. For more information on the LOW TRACTION message, see *Driver Information Center (DIC) on page 3-43*.

Notice: **If the wheel(s) of one axle are allowed to spin excessively while the ESC/TCS, ABS and Brake warning lights and the SERVICE ESC and/or SERVICE TRACTION messages are displayed, the differential could be damaged. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Reduce engine power and do not spin the wheel(s) excessively while these lights and this message are displayed.**

Notice: **When traction control is turned off, it is possible to lose traction. If you attempt to shift with the front wheels spinning with a loss of traction, it is possible to cause damage to the transmission. Do not attempt to shift when the front wheels do not have traction. Damage caused by misuse of the vehicle is not covered. See your warranty book for additional information.**

The traction control system may activate on dry or rough roads or under conditions such as heavy acceleration while turning or abrupt upshifts/downshifts of the transmission. When this happens, a reduction in acceleration may be noticed, or a noise or vibration may be heard. This is normal.

If the vehicle is in cruise control when the system activates, the ESC/TCS light will flash and the cruise control will automatically disengage. The cruise control may be re-engaged when road conditions allow. See *Cruise Control on page 3-10*.

Adding non-dealer/non-retailer accessories can affect the vehicle's performance. See *Accessories and Modifications on page 5-3* for more information.

Steering

Electric Power Steering

If the vehicle has the electric power steering system and the engine stalls while driving, the power steering assist system will continue to operate until you are able to stop the vehicle. If power steering assist is lost because the electric power steering system is not functioning, the vehicle can be steered but it will take more effort.

If you turn the steering wheel in either direction several times until it stops, or hold the steering wheel in the stopped position for an extended amount of time, you may notice a reduced amount of power steering assist. The normal amount of power steering assist should return shortly after a few normal steering movements.

The electric power steering system does not require regular maintenance. If you suspect steering system problems and/or the POWER STEERING message is displayed in the Driver Information Center, contact your dealer/retailer for service repairs. See *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-45*.

Hydraulic Power Steering

If the vehicle has the hydraulic power steering system and power steering assist is lost because the engine stops or the power steering system is not functioning, the vehicle can be steered but it will take more effort.

Steering Tips

It is important to take curves at a reasonable speed.

Traction in a curve depends on the condition of the tires and the road surface, the angle at which the curve is banked, and vehicle speed. While in a curve, speed is the one factor that can be controlled.

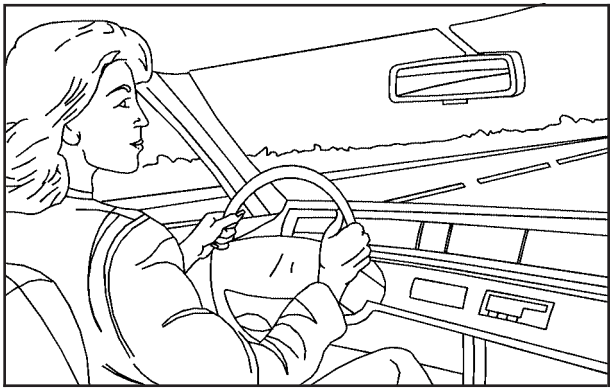
If there is a need to reduce speed, do it before entering the curve, while the front wheels are straight.

Try to adjust the speed so you can drive through the curve. Maintain a reasonable, steady speed. Wait to accelerate until out of the curve, and then accelerate gently into the straightaway.

Steering in Emergencies

There are times when steering can be more effective than braking. For example, you come over a hill and find a truck stopped in your lane, or a car suddenly pulls out from nowhere, or a child darts out from between parked cars and stops right in front of you. These problems can be avoided by braking — if you can stop in time. But sometimes you cannot stop in time because there is no room. That is the time for evasive action — steering around the problem.

The vehicle can perform very well in emergencies like these. First apply the brakes. See *Braking on page 4-4*. It is better to remove as much speed as possible from a collision. Then steer around the problem, to the left or right depending on the space available.

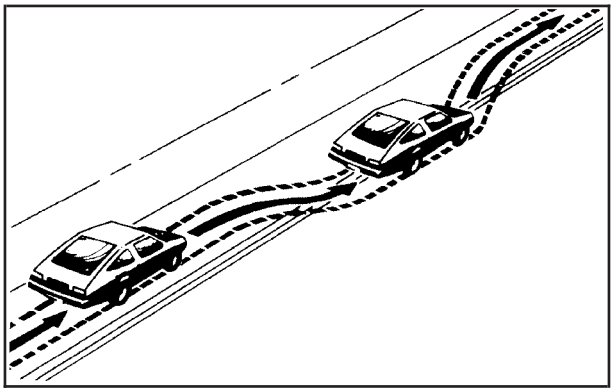


An emergency like this requires close attention and a quick decision. If holding the steering wheel at the recommended 9 and 3 o'clock positions, it can be turned a full 180 degrees very quickly without removing either hand. But you have to act fast, steer quickly, and just as quickly straighten the wheel once you have avoided the object.

The fact that such emergency situations are always possible is a good reason to practice defensive driving at all times and wear safety belts properly.

Off-Road Recovery

The vehicle's right wheels can drop off the edge of a road onto the shoulder while driving.



If the level of the shoulder is only slightly below the pavement, recovery should be fairly easy. Ease off the accelerator and then, if there is nothing in the way, steer so that the vehicle straddles the edge of the pavement. Turn the steering wheel 3 to 5 inches, 8 to 13 cm, (about one-eighth turn) until the right front tire contacts the pavement edge. Then turn the steering wheel to go straight down the roadway.

Passing

Passing another vehicle on a two-lane road can be dangerous. To reduce the risk of danger while passing:

- Look down the road, to the sides, and to crossroads for situations that might affect a successful pass. If in doubt, wait.
- Watch for traffic signs, pavement markings, and lines that could indicate a turn or an intersection. Never cross a solid or double-solid line on your side of the lane.
- Do not get too close to the vehicle you want to pass. Doing so can reduce your visibility.
- Wait your turn to pass a slow vehicle.
- When you are being passed, ease to the right.

Loss of Control

Let us review what driving experts say about what happens when the three control systems — brakes, steering, and acceleration — do not have enough friction where the tires meet the road to do what the driver has asked.

In any emergency, do not give up. Keep trying to steer and constantly seek an escape route or area of less danger.

Skidding

In a skid, a driver can lose control of the vehicle. Defensive drivers avoid most skids by taking reasonable care suited to existing conditions, and by not overdriving those conditions. But skids are always possible.

The three types of skids correspond to the vehicle's three control systems. In the braking skid, the wheels are not rolling. In the steering or cornering skid, too much speed or steering in a curve causes tires to slip and lose cornering force. And in the acceleration skid, too much throttle causes the driving wheels to spin.

Remember: Any traction control system helps avoid only the acceleration skid. If the traction control system is off, then an acceleration skid is best handled by easing your foot off the accelerator pedal.

If the vehicle starts to slide, ease your foot off the accelerator pedal and quickly steer the way you want the vehicle to go. If you start steering quickly enough, the vehicle may straighten out. Always be ready for a second skid if it occurs.

Of course, traction is reduced when water, snow, ice, gravel, or other material is on the road. For safety, slow down and adjust your driving to these conditions. It is important to slow down on slippery surfaces because stopping distance will be longer and vehicle control more limited.

While driving on a surface with reduced traction, try your best to avoid sudden steering, acceleration, or braking, including reducing vehicle speed by shifting to a lower gear. Any sudden changes could cause the tires to slide. You may not realize the surface is slippery until the vehicle is skidding. Learn to recognize warning clues — such as enough water, ice, or packed snow on the road to make a mirrored surface — and slow down when you have any doubt.

Remember: Any Antilock Brake System (ABS) helps avoid only the braking skid.

Driving at Night

Night driving is more dangerous than day driving because some drivers are likely to be impaired — by alcohol or drugs, with night vision problems, or by fatigue.

Night driving tips include:

- Drive defensively.
- Do not drink and drive.
- Reduce headlamp glare by adjusting the inside rearview mirror.
- Slow down and keep more space between you and other vehicles because headlamps can only light up so much road ahead.
- Watch for animals.
- When tired, pull off the road.
- Do not wear sunglasses.
- Avoid staring directly into approaching headlamps.
- Keep the windshield and all glass on your vehicle clean — inside and out.
- Keep your eyes moving, especially during turns or curves.

No one can see as well at night as in the daytime. But, as we get older, these differences increase. A 50-year-old driver might need at least twice as much light to see the same thing at night as a 20-year-old.

Driving in Rain and on Wet Roads

Rain and wet roads can reduce vehicle traction and affect your ability to stop and accelerate. Always drive slower in these types of driving conditions and avoid driving through large puddles and deep-standing or flowing water.

⚠ CAUTION:

Wet brakes can cause crashes. They might not work as well in a quick stop and could cause pulling to one side. You could lose control of the vehicle.

After driving through a large puddle of water or a car/vehicle wash, lightly apply the brake pedal until the brakes work normally.

Flowing or rushing water creates strong forces. Driving through flowing water could cause your vehicle to be carried away. If this happens, you and other vehicle occupants could drown. Do not ignore police warnings and be very cautious about trying to drive through flowing water.

Hydroplaning

Hydroplaning is dangerous. Water can build up under your vehicle's tires so they actually ride on the water. This can happen if the road is wet enough and you are going fast enough. When your vehicle is hydroplaning, it has little or no contact with the road.

There is no hard and fast rule about hydroplaning. The best advice is to slow down when the road is wet.

Other Rainy Weather Tips

Besides slowing down, other wet weather driving tips include:

- Allow extra following distance.
- Pass with caution.
- Keep windshield wiping equipment in good shape.
- Keep the windshield washer fluid reservoir filled.
- Have good tires with proper tread depth. See *Tires on page 5-45*.
- Turn off cruise control.

Before Leaving on a Long Trip

To prepare your vehicle for a long trip, consider having it serviced by your dealer/retailer before departing.

Things to check on your own include:

- *Windshield Washer Fluid:* Reservoir full? Windows clean — inside and outside?
- *Wiper Blades:* In good shape?
- *Fuel, Engine Oil, Other Fluids:* All levels checked?
- *Lamps:* Do they all work and are lenses clean?
- *Tires:* Are treads good? Are tires inflated to recommended pressure?
- *Weather and Maps:* Safe to travel? Have up-to-date maps?

Highway Hypnosis

Always be alert and pay attention to your surroundings while driving. If you become tired or sleepy, find a safe place to park your vehicle and rest.

Other driving tips include:

- Keep the vehicle well ventilated.
- Keep interior temperature cool.
- Keep your eyes moving — scan the road ahead and to the sides.
- Check the rearview mirror and vehicle instruments often.

Hill and Mountain Roads

Driving on steep hills or through mountains is different than driving on flat or rolling terrain. Tips for driving in these conditions include:

- Keep the vehicle serviced and in good shape.
- Check all fluid levels and brakes, tires, cooling system, and transmission.
- Going down steep or long hills, shift to a lower gear.

⚠ CAUTION:

If you do not shift down, the brakes could get so hot that they would not work well. You would then have poor braking or even none going down a hill. You could crash. Shift down to let the engine assist the brakes on a steep downhill slope.

⚠ CAUTION:

Coasting downhill in N (Neutral) or with the ignition off is dangerous. The brakes will have to do all the work of slowing down and they could get so hot that they would not work well. You would then have poor braking or even none going down a hill. You could crash. Always have the engine running and the vehicle in gear when going downhill.

- Stay in your own lane. Do not swing wide or cut across the center of the road. Drive at speeds that let you stay in your own lane.
- Top of hills: Be alert — something could be in your lane (stalled car, accident).
- Pay attention to special road signs (falling rocks area, winding roads, long grades, passing or no-passing zones) and take appropriate action.

Winter Driving

Driving on Snow or Ice

Drive carefully when there is snow or ice between the tires and the road, creating less traction or grip. Wet ice can occur at about 32°F (0°C) when freezing rain begins to fall, resulting in even less traction. Avoid driving on wet ice or in freezing rain until roads can be treated with salt or sand.

Drive with caution, whatever the condition. Accelerate gently so traction is not lost. Accelerating too quickly causes the wheels to spin and makes the surface under the tires slick, so there is even less traction.

Try not to break the fragile traction. If you accelerate too fast, the drive wheels will spin and polish the surface under the tires even more.

If the vehicle has the *Traction Control System (TCS) on page 4-8*, it improves the ability to accelerate on slippery roads, but slow down and adjust your driving to the road conditions. When driving through deep snow, turn off the traction control system to help maintain vehicle motion at lower speeds.

The *Antilock Brake System (ABS) on page 4-5* improves vehicle stability during hard stops on a slippery roads, but apply the brakes sooner than when on dry pavement.

Allow greater following distance on any slippery road and watch for slippery spots. Icy patches can occur on otherwise clear roads in shaded areas. The surface of a curve or an overpass can remain icy when the surrounding roads are clear. Avoid sudden steering maneuvers and braking while on ice.

Turn off cruise control, if equipped, on slippery surfaces.

Blizzard Conditions

Being stuck in snow can be in a serious situation. Stay with the vehicle unless there is help nearby. If possible, use the *Roadside Assistance Program on page 7-7*. To get help and keep everyone in the vehicle safe:

- Turn on the *Hazard Warning Flashers on page 3-6*.
- Tie a red cloth to an outside mirror.

⚠ CAUTION:

Snow can trap engine exhaust under the vehicle. This may cause exhaust gases to get inside. Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide (CO) which cannot be seen or smelled. It can cause unconsciousness and even death.

If the vehicle is stuck in the snow:

- Clear away snow from around the base of your vehicle, especially any that is blocking the exhaust pipe.
- Check again from time to time to be sure snow does not collect there.

CAUTION: (Continued)

CAUTION: (Continued)

- Open a window about two inches (5 cm) on the side of the vehicle that is away from the wind to bring in fresh air.
- Fully open the air outlets on or under the instrument panel.
- Adjust the Climate Control system to a setting that circulates the air inside the vehicle and set the fan speed to the highest setting. See Climate Control System in the Index.

For more information about carbon monoxide, see *Engine Exhaust on page 2-33*.

Snow can trap exhaust gases under your vehicle. This can cause deadly CO (carbon monoxide) gas to get inside. CO could overcome you and kill you. You cannot see it or smell it, so you might not know it is in your vehicle. Clear away snow from around the base of your vehicle, especially any that is blocking the exhaust.

Run the engine for short periods only as needed to keep warm, but be careful.

To save fuel, run the engine for only short periods as needed to warm the vehicle and then shut the engine off and close the window most of the way to save heat. Repeat this until help arrives but only when you feel really uncomfortable from the cold. Moving about to keep warm also helps.

If it takes some time for help to arrive, now and then when you run the engine, push the accelerator pedal slightly so the engine runs faster than the idle speed. This keeps the battery charged to restart the vehicle and to signal for help with the headlamps. Do this as little as possible to save fuel.

If Your Vehicle is Stuck in Sand, Mud, Ice, or Snow

Slowly and cautiously spin the wheels to free the vehicle when stuck in sand, mud, ice, or snow.
See *Rocking Your Vehicle to Get It Out on page 4-21*.

If the vehicle has a traction system, it can often help to free a stuck vehicle. Refer to the vehicle's traction system in the Index. If stuck too severely for the traction system to free the vehicle, turn the traction system off and use the rocking method.

⚠ CAUTION:

If you let your vehicle's tires spin at high speed, they can explode, and you or others could be injured. The vehicle can overheat, causing an engine compartment fire or other damage.
Spin the wheels as little as possible and avoid going above 35 mph (55 km/h) as shown on the speedometer.

For information about using tire chains on the vehicle, see *Tire Chains on page 5-66*.

Rocking Your Vehicle to Get It Out

Turn the steering wheel left and right to clear the area around the front wheels. Turn off any traction system. Shift back and forth between R (Reverse) and a forward gear, spinning the wheels as little as possible. To prevent transmission wear, wait until the wheels stop spinning before shifting gears. Release the accelerator pedal while shifting, and press lightly on the accelerator pedal when the transmission is in gear. Slowly spinning the wheels in the forward and reverse directions causes a rocking motion that could free the vehicle. If that does not get the vehicle out after a few tries, it might need to be towed out. If the vehicle does need to be towed out, see *Towing Your Vehicle on page 4-26*.

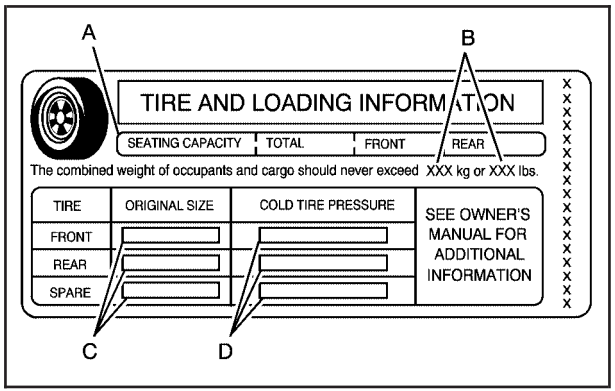
Loading the Vehicle

It is very important to know how much weight your vehicle can carry. This weight is called the vehicle capacity weight and includes the weight of all occupants, cargo, and all nonfactory-installed options. Two labels on the vehicle show how much weight it may properly carry, the Tire and Loading Information label and the Vehicle Certification label.

⚠ CAUTION:

Do not load the vehicle any heavier than the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR), or either the maximum front or rear Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR). If you do, parts on the vehicle can break, and it can change the way your vehicle handles. These could cause you to lose control and crash. Also, overloading can shorten the life of the vehicle.

Tire and Loading Information Label



Label Example

A vehicle specific Tire and Loading Information label is attached to the vehicle's center pillar (B-pillar). With the driver's door open, you will find the label attached below the door lock post (striker). The Tire and Loading Information label lists the number of occupant seating positions (A), and the maximum vehicle capacity weight (B) in kilograms and pounds.

The Tire and Loading Information label also lists the tire size of the original equipment tires (C) and the recommended cold tire inflation pressures (D). For more information on tires and inflation, see *Tires on page 5-45* and *Inflation - Tire Pressure on page 5-52*.

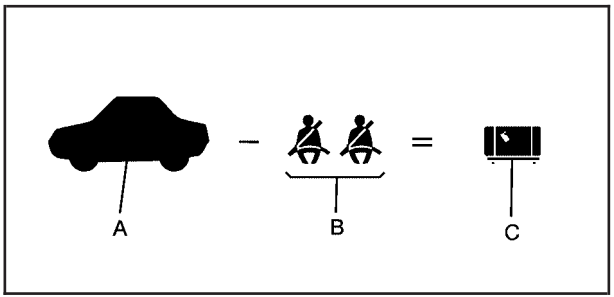
There is also important loading information on the Certification label. It tells you the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) and the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) for the front and rear axle, see "Certification Label" later in this section.

Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit

1. Locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs" on your vehicle's placard.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs.

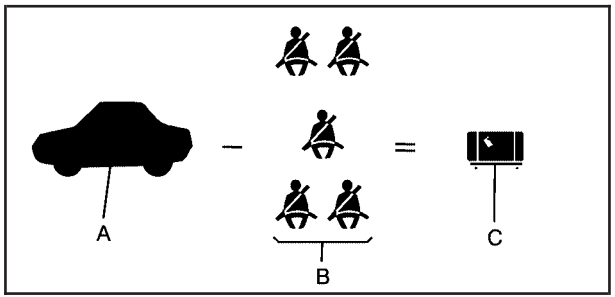
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the “XXX” amount equals 1400 lbs and there will be five 150 lb passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs (1400 – 750 (5 x 150) = 650 lbs).
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, the load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity for your vehicle.

If your vehicle can tow a trailer, see *Towing a Trailer on page 4-30* for important information on towing a trailer, towing safety rules, and trailering tips.



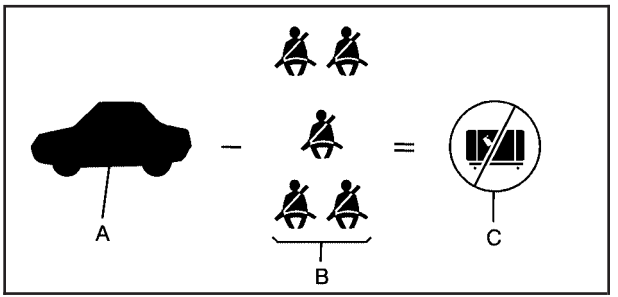
Example 1

Item	Description	Total
A	Maximum Vehicle Capacity Weight for Example 1 =	1,000 lbs (453 kg)
B	Subtract Occupant Weight 150 lbs (68 kg) × 2 =	300 lbs (136 kg)
C	Available Occupant and Cargo Weight =	700 lbs (317 kg)



Example 2

Item	Description	Total
A	Maximum Vehicle Capacity Weight for Example 2 =	1,000 lbs (453 kg)
B	Subtract Occupant Weight 150 lbs (68 kg) × 5 =	750 lbs (340 kg)
C	Available Cargo Weight =	250 lbs (113 kg)

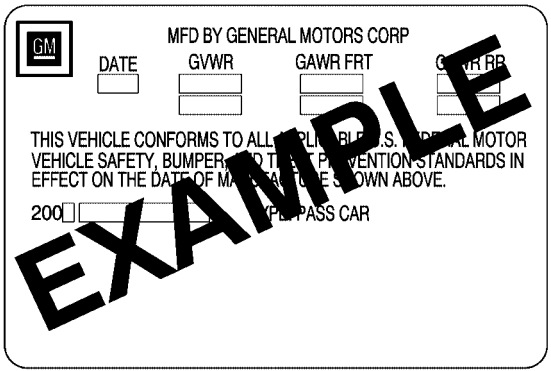


Example 3

Item	Description	Total
A	Maximum Vehicle Capacity Weight for Example 3 =	1,000 lbs (453 kg)
B	Subtract Occupant Weight 200 lbs (91 kg) × 5 =	1,000 lbs (453 kg)
C	Available Cargo Weight =	0 lbs (0 kg)

Refer to the vehicle's Tire and Loading Information label for specific information about your vehicle's maximum vehicle capacity weight and seating positions. The combined weight of the driver, passengers, and cargo should never exceed the vehicle's maximum vehicle capacity weight.

Certification Label



A vehicle specific Certification label is attached to the driver side center pillar.

The label shows the gross weight capacity of your vehicle, called the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR). The GVWR includes the weight of the vehicle, all occupants, fuel, cargo, and tongue weight if pulling a trailer.

Never exceed the GVWR for the vehicle or the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) for either the front or rear axle.

⚠ CAUTION:

Do not load the vehicle any heavier than the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR), or either the maximum front or rear Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR). If you do, parts on the vehicle can break, and it can change the way your vehicle handles. These could cause you to lose control and crash. Also, overloading can shorten the life of the vehicle.

Notice: **Overloading your vehicle may cause damage. Repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Do not overload your vehicle.**

If things like suitcases, tools, packages, or anything else are put inside the vehicle, they will go as fast as the vehicle goes. If you have to stop or turn quickly, or if there is a crash, they will keep going.

⚠ CAUTION:

Things you put inside the vehicle can strike and injure people in a sudden stop or turn, or in a crash.

- Put things in the trunk of your vehicle. In a trunk, put them as far forward as you can. Try to spread the weight evenly.
- Never stack heavier things, like suitcases, inside the vehicle so that some of them are above the tops of the seats.
- Do not leave an unsecured child restraint in the vehicle.
- When you carry something inside the vehicle, secure it whenever you can.
- Do not leave a seat folded down unless you need to.

Towing

Towing Your Vehicle

To avoid damage, the disabled vehicle should be towed with all four wheels off the ground. Consult your dealer/retailer or a professional towing service if the disabled vehicle must be towed. See *Roadside Assistance Program on page 7-7*.

To tow the vehicle behind another vehicle for recreational purposes, such as behind a motorhome, see “Recreational Vehicle Towing” following.

Recreational Vehicle Towing

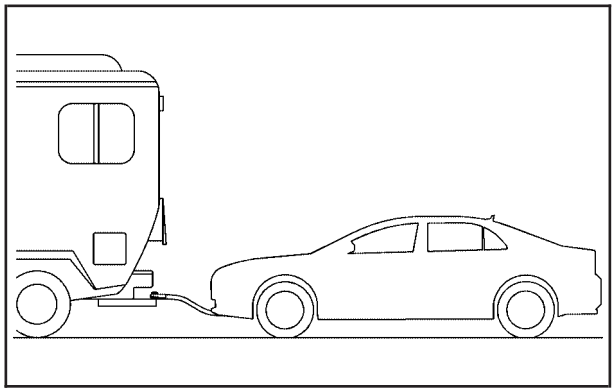
Recreational vehicle towing means towing the vehicle behind another vehicle – such as behind a motorhome. The two most common types of recreational vehicle towing are known as dinghy towing and dolly towing. Dinghy towing is towing the vehicle with all four wheels on the ground. Dolly towing is towing the vehicle with two wheels on the ground and two wheels up on a device known as a dolly.

Here are some important things to consider before recreational vehicle towing:

- What's the towing capacity of the towing vehicle? Be sure to read the tow vehicle manufacturer's recommendations.
- How far will the vehicle be towed? Some vehicles have restrictions on how far and how long they can tow.
- Does the vehicle have the proper towing equipment? See your dealer/retailer or trailering professional for additional advice and equipment recommendations.
- Is the vehicle ready to be towed? Just as preparing the vehicle for a long trip, make sure the vehicle is prepared to be towed. See *Before Leaving on a Long Trip on page 4-16*.

Dinghy Towing

When dinghy towing, the vehicle should be run at the beginning of each day and at each RV fuel stop for about five minutes. This will ensure proper lubrication of transmission components.



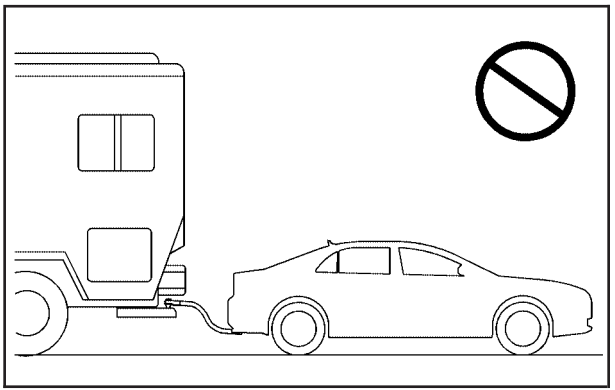
To dinghy tow the vehicle from the front with all four wheels on the ground:

1. Position the vehicle to tow and then secure it to the towing vehicle.
2. Shift the transmission to P (Park) and turn the ignition to LOCK/OFF.

3. Set the parking brake.
4. To prevent the battery from draining while the vehicle is being towed, remove the following fuse from the instrument panel fuse block: (IGN SENSOR). See *Instrument Panel Fuse Block on page 5-91* for more information.
5. Turn the ignition to ACC/ACCESSORY.
6. Shift the transmission to N (Neutral).
7. Release the parking brake.

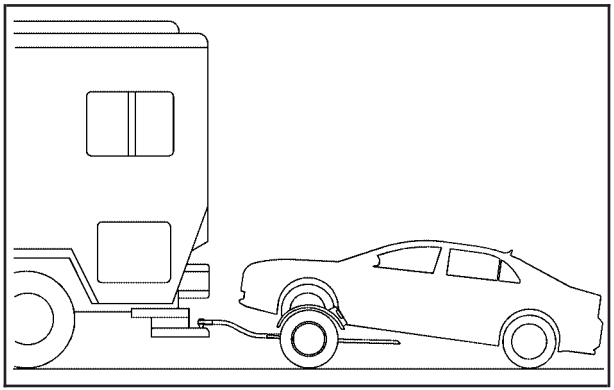
Remember to reinstall the IGN SENSOR fuse once the destination has been reached.

Notice: **If 65 mph (105 km/h) is exceeded while towing the vehicle, it could be damaged. Never exceed 65 mph (105 km/h) while towing the vehicle.**



Notice: **Towing the vehicle from the rear could damage it. Also, repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Never have the vehicle towed from the rear.**

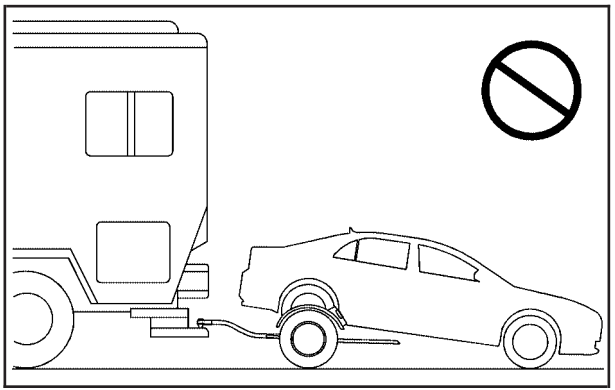
Dolly Towing



Tow the vehicle with the two rear wheels on the ground and the front wheels on a dolly:

To tow the vehicle with two wheels on the ground and a dolly:

1. Put the front wheels on a dolly.
2. Put the gear shift lever in P (Park).
3. Set the parking brake.
4. Clamp the steering wheel in a straight-ahead position with a clamping device designed for towing.
5. Remove the key from the ignition.
6. Secure the vehicle to the dolly.
7. Release the parking brake.



Notice: **Towing the vehicle from the rear could damage it. Also, repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Never have the vehicle towed from the rear.**

Towing a Trailer

⚠ CAUTION:

The driver can lose control when pulling a trailer if the correct equipment is not used or the vehicle is not driven properly. For example, if the trailer is too heavy, the brakes may not work well — or even at all. The driver and passengers could be seriously injured. The vehicle may also be damaged; the resulting repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Pull a trailer only if all the steps in this section have been followed. Ask your dealer/retailer for advice and information about towing a trailer with the vehicle.

Notice: **Pulling a trailer improperly can damage the vehicle and result in costly repairs not covered by the vehicle warranty. To pull a trailer correctly, follow the advice in this section and see your dealer/retailer for important information about towing a trailer with the vehicle.**

The vehicle can tow a trailer if it is equipped with the proper trailer towing equipment. To identify the trailering capacity of the vehicle, read the information in “Weight of the Trailer” that appears later in this section. Trailering is different than just driving the vehicle by itself. Trailering means changes in handling, acceleration, braking, durability and fuel economy. Successful, safe trailering takes correct equipment, and it has to be used properly.

The following information has many time-tested, important trailering tips and safety rules. Many of these are important for the safety of the driver and the passengers. So please read this section carefully before pulling a trailer.

Load-pulling components such as the engine, transmission, axles, wheel assemblies and tires are forced to work harder against the drag of the added weight. The engine is required to operate at relatively higher speeds and under greater loads, generating extra heat. The trailer also adds considerably to wind resistance, increasing the pulling requirements.

Pulling A Trailer

Here are some important points:

- There are many different laws, including speed limit restrictions, having to do with trailering. Make sure the rig will be legal, not only where you live but also where you will be driving. A good source for this information can be state or provincial police.
- Do not tow a trailer at all during the first 1,000 miles (1600 km) the new vehicle is driven. The engine, transmission or other parts could be damaged. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle's warranty.
- Then, during the first 500 miles (800 km) that a trailer is towed, do not drive over 50 mph (80 km/h) and do not make starts at full throttle. This helps the engine and other parts of the vehicle wear in at the heavier loads.
- Obey speed limit restrictions when towing a trailer. Do not drive faster than the maximum posted speed for trailers, or no more than 55 mph (90 km/h), to save wear on the vehicle's parts.
- Do not tow a trailer when the outside temperature is above 100°F (38°C).

Three important considerations have to do with weight:

- the weight of the trailer,
- the weight of the trailer tongue
- and the total weight on the vehicle's tires.

Weight of the Trailer

How heavy can a trailer safely be?

It should never weigh more than 1,000 lbs (454 kg). But even that can be too heavy.

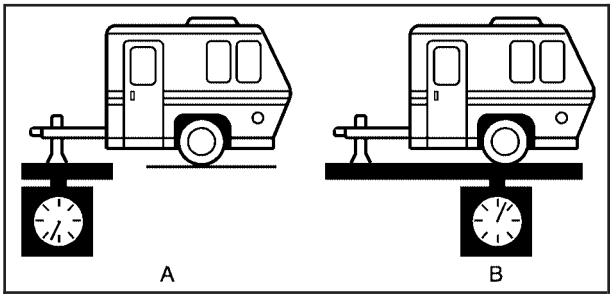
It depends on how the rig is used. For example, speed, altitude, road grades, outside temperature and how much the vehicle is used to pull a trailer are all important. It can depend on any special equipment on the vehicle, and the amount of tongue weight the vehicle can carry. See "Weight of the Trailer Tongue" later in this section for more information.

Maximum trailer weight is calculated assuming only the driver is in the tow vehicle and it has all the required trailering equipment. The weight of additional optional equipment, passengers and cargo in the tow vehicle must be subtracted from the maximum trailer weight.

Ask your dealer/retailer for trailering information or advice, or write us at our Customer Assistance Offices. See *Customer Assistance Offices on page 7-6* for more information.

Weight of the Trailer Tongue

The tongue load (A) of any trailer is an important weight to measure because it affects the total gross weight of the vehicle. The Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW) includes the curb weight of the vehicle, any cargo carried in it, and the people who will be riding in the vehicle. If there are a lot of options, equipment, passengers or cargo in the vehicle, it will reduce the tongue weight the vehicle can carry, which will also reduce the trailer weight the vehicle can tow. If towing a trailer, the tongue load must be added to the GVW because the vehicle will be carrying that weight, too. See *Loading the Vehicle on page 4-21* for more information about the vehicle's maximum load capacity.



Using a weight-carrying hitch, the trailer tongue (A) should weigh 10 to 15 percent of the total loaded trailer weight (B).

After loading the trailer, weigh the trailer and then the tongue, separately, to see if the weights are proper. If they are not, adjustments might be made by moving some items around in the trailer.

Total Weight on the Vehicle's Tires

Be sure the vehicle's tires are inflated to the upper limit for cold tires. These numbers can be found on the Certification/Tire label. See *Loading the Vehicle on page 4-21*. Make sure not to go over the GVW limit for the vehicle, including the weight of the trailer tongue.

Hitches

It is important to have the correct hitch equipment. Crosswinds, large trucks going by and rough roads are a few reasons why the right hitch is needed. Here are some rules to follow:

- The rear bumper on the vehicle is not intended for hitches. Do not attach rental hitches or other bumper-type hitches to it. Use only a frame-mounted hitch that does not attach to the bumper.
- Will any holes be made in the body of the vehicle when the trailer hitch is installed? If there are, then be sure to seal the holes later when the hitch is removed. If the holes are not sealed, dirt, water, and deadly carbon monoxide (CO) from the exhaust can get into the vehicle. See *Engine Exhaust on page 2-33* in the Index for more information.

Safety Chains

Always attach chains between the vehicle and the trailer. Cross the safety chains under the tongue of the trailer to help prevent the tongue from contacting the road if it becomes separated from the hitch. Instructions about safety chains may be provided by the hitch manufacturer or by the trailer manufacturer. Follow the manufacturer's recommendation for attaching safety chains and do not attach them to the bumper. Always leave just enough slack so the rig can turn. Never allow safety chains to drag on the ground.

Trailer Brakes

Because the vehicle has antilock brakes, do not try to tap into the vehicle's hydraulic brake system. If you do, both brake systems will not work well, or at all.

Does your trailer have its own brakes? Be sure to read and follow the instructions for the trailer brakes so you will be able to install, adjust and maintain them properly.

Driving with a Trailer

Towing a trailer requires a certain amount of experience. Get to know the rig before setting out for the open road. Get acquainted with the feel of handling and braking with the added weight of the trailer. And always keep in mind that the vehicle you are driving is now longer and not as responsive as the vehicle is by itself.

Before starting, check all trailer hitch parts and attachments, safety chains, electrical connectors, lamps, tires and mirror adjustments. If the trailer has electric brakes, start the vehicle and trailer moving and then apply the trailer brake controller by hand to be sure the brakes are working. This checks the electrical connection at the same time.

During the trip, check occasionally to be sure that the load is secure, and that the lamps and any trailer brakes are still working.

Following Distance

Stay at least twice as far behind the vehicle ahead as you would when driving the vehicle without a trailer. This can help to avoid situations that require heavy braking and sudden turns.

Passing

More passing distance is needed when towing a trailer. Because the rig is longer, it is necessary to go much farther beyond the passed vehicle before returning to the lane.

Backing Up

Hold the bottom of the steering wheel with one hand. Then, to move the trailer to the left, move that hand to the left. To move the trailer to the right, move your hand to the right. Always back up slowly and, if possible, have someone guide you.

Making Turns

Notice: **Making very sharp turns while trailering could cause the trailer to come in contact with the vehicle. The vehicle could be damaged. Avoid making very sharp turns while trailering.**

When turning with a trailer, make wider turns than normal. Do this so the trailer will not strike soft shoulders, curbs, road signs, trees or other objects. Avoid jerky or sudden maneuvers. Signal well in advance.

Turn Signals When Towing a Trailer

The arrows on the instrument panel flash whenever signaling a turn or lane change. Properly hooked up, the trailer lamps also flash, telling other drivers the vehicle is turning, changing lanes or stopping.

When towing a trailer, the arrows on the instrument panel flash for turns even if the bulbs on the trailer are burned out. For this reason you may think other drivers are seeing the signal when they are not. It is important to check occasionally to be sure the trailer bulbs are still working.

Driving on Grades

Notice: **Do not tow on steep continuous grades exceeding 6 miles (9.6 km). Extended, higher than normal engine and transmission temperatures may result and damage the vehicle. Frequent stops are very important to allow the engine and transmission to cool.**

Reduce speed and shift to a lower gear *before* starting down a long or steep downgrade. If the transmission is not shifted down, the brakes might have to be used so much that they would get hot and no longer work well.

On a long uphill grade, shift down and reduce the vehicle's speed to around 45 mph (70 km/h) to reduce the possibility of the engine and the transmission overheating. If the engine does overheat, see *Engine Overheating on page 5-27*.

Parking on Hills

⚠ CAUTION:

Parking the vehicle on a hill with the trailer attached can be dangerous. If something goes wrong, the rig could start to move. People can be injured, and both the vehicle and the trailer can be damaged. When possible, always park the rig on a flat surface.

If parking the rig on a hill:

1. Press the brake pedal, but do not shift into P (Park) yet. Turn the wheels into the curb if facing downhill or into traffic if facing uphill.
2. Have someone place chocks under the trailer wheels.
3. When the wheel chocks are in place, release the brake pedal until the chocks absorb the load.
4. Reapply the brake pedal. Then apply the parking brake and shift the transmission into P (Park).
5. Release the brake pedal.

Leaving After Parking on a Hill

1. Apply and hold the brake pedal while you:
   - start the engine,
   - shift into a gear, and
   - release the parking brake.
2. Let up on the brake pedal.
3. Drive slowly until the trailer is clear of the chocks.
4. Stop and have someone pick up and store the chocks.

Maintenance When Trailer Towing

The vehicle needs service more often when pulling a trailer. See *Scheduled Maintenance on page 6-4* for more information. Things that are especially important in trailer operation are automatic transmission fluid, engine oil, belts, cooling system and brake system. It is a good idea to inspect these before and during the trip.

Check periodically to see that all hitch nuts and bolts are tight.

Engine Cooling When Trailer Towing

The cooling system may temporarily overheat during severe operating conditions. See *Engine Overheating on page 5-27*.

Changing a Tire When Trailer Towing

If the vehicle gets a flat tire while towing a trailer, be sure to secure the trailer and disconnect it from the vehicle before changing the tire.

Section 5 Service and Appearance Care

Service 5-3
Accessories and Modifications 5-3
California Proposition 65 Warning 5-4
California Perchlorate Materials Requirements 5-4
Doing Your Own Service Work 5-4
Adding Equipment to the Outside of the Vehicle 5-5

Fuel 5-5
Gasoline Octane 5-5
Gasoline Specifications 5-6
California Fuel 5-6
Additives 5-6
Fuels in Foreign Countries 5-7
Filling the Tank 5-8
Filling a Portable Fuel Container 5-10

Checking Things Under the Hood 5-10
Hood Release 5-11
Engine Compartment Overview 5-12
Engine Oil 5-15
Engine Oil Life System 5-18
Engine Air Cleaner/Filter 5-20
Automatic Transmission Fluid 5-22
Cooling System 5-22
Engine Coolant 5-23
Pressure Cap 5-27
Engine Overheating 5-27
Overheated Engine Protection Operating Mode 5-30
Power Steering Fluid 5-30
Windshield Washer Fluid 5-32
Brakes 5-33
Battery 5-36
Jump Starting 5-37

Headlamp Aiming 5-41

Bulb Replacement 5-41
Halogen Bulbs 5-41
Taillamps, Turn Signal, Sidemarker, Stoplamps and Back-up Lamps 5-42
License Plate Lamp 5-43
Replacement Bulbs 5-44

Windshield Wiper Blade Replacement 5-44

Tires 5-45
Tire Sidewall Labeling 5-46
Tire Terminology and Definitions 5-49
Inflation - Tire Pressure 5-52
High-Speed Operation 5-53
Tire Pressure Monitor System 5-54
Tire Pressure Monitor Operation 5-55
Tire Inspection and Rotation 5-59
When It Is Time for New Tires 5-60
Buying New Tires 5-61

Section 5 Service and Appearance Care

Different Size Tires and Wheels 5-63
Uniform Tire Quality Grading 5-63
Wheel Alignment and Tire Balance 5-65
Wheel Replacement 5-65
Tire Chains 5-66
If a Tire Goes Flat 5-67
Changing a Flat Tire 5-68
Removing the Spare Tire and Tools 5-69
Removing the Flat Tire and Installing the Spare Tire 5-71
Storing a Flat or Spare Tire and Tools 5-76
Compact Spare Tire 5-80

Appearance Care 5-81
Interior Cleaning 5-81
Fabric/Carpet 5-83
Leather 5-83
Instrument Panel, Vinyl, and Other Plastic Surfaces 5-84
Care of Safety Belts 5-84
Weatherstrips 5-84
Washing Your Vehicle 5-85
Cleaning Exterior Lamps/Lenses 5-85
Finish Care 5-86
Windshield and Wiper Blades 5-86
Aluminum Wheels 5-87
Tires 5-87
Sheet Metal Damage 5-88
Finish Damage 5-88
Underbody Maintenance 5-88
Chemical Paint Spotting 5-88

Vehicle Identification 5-89
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) 5-89
Service Parts Identification Label 5-89

Electrical System 5-90
Add-On Electrical Equipment 5-90
Windshield Wiper Fuses 5-90
Power Windows and Other Power Options 5-90
Fuses 5-91
Instrument Panel Fuse Block 5-91
Engine Compartment Fuse Block 5-94
Rear Compartment Fuse Block 5-97

Capacities and Specifications 5-100

Service

For service and parts needs, visit your dealer/retailer. You will receive genuine Saturn parts and Saturn-trained and supported service people.

Genuine Saturn parts have one of these marks.

Accessories and Modifications

When non-dealer/non-retailer accessories are added to the vehicle, they can affect vehicle performance and safety, including such things as airbags, braking, stability, ride and handling, emissions systems, aerodynamics, durability, and electronic systems like antilock brakes, traction control, and stability control. Some of these accessories could even cause malfunction or damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Damage to vehicle components resulting from the installation or use of non-GM certified parts, including control module modifications, are not covered under the terms of the vehicle warranty and may affect remaining warranty coverage for affected parts.

GM Accessories are designed to complement and function with other systems on the vehicle. Your GM dealer/retailer can accessorize the vehicle using genuine GM Accessories. When you go to your GM dealer/retailer and ask for GM Accessories, you will know that GM-trained and supported service technicians will perform the work using genuine GM Accessories.

Also, see *Adding Equipment to Your Airbag-Equipped Vehicle on page 1-71*.

California Proposition 65 Warning

Most motor vehicles, including this one, contain and/or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. Engine exhaust, many parts and systems (including some inside the vehicle), many fluids, and some component wear by-products contain and/or emit these chemicals.

California Perchlorate Materials Requirements

Certain types of automotive applications, such as airbag initiators, seat belt pretensioners, and lithium batteries contained in remote keyless transmitters, may contain perchlorate materials. Special handling may be necessary. For additional information, see www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate.

Doing Your Own Service Work

⚠ CAUTION:

You can be injured and the vehicle could be damaged if you try to do service work on a vehicle without knowing enough about it.

- Be sure you have sufficient knowledge, experience, the proper replacement parts, and tools before attempting any vehicle maintenance task.
- Be sure to use the proper nuts, bolts, and other fasteners. English and metric fasteners can be easily confused. If the wrong fasteners are used, parts can later break or fall off. You could be hurt.

If doing some of your own service work, use the proper service manual. It tells you much more about how to service the vehicle than this manual can. To order the proper service manual, see *Service Publications Ordering Information on page 7-15*.

This vehicle has an airbag system. Before attempting to do your own service work, see *Servicing Your Airbag-Equipped Vehicle on page 1-70*.

Keep a record with all parts receipts and list the mileage and the date of any service work performed. See *Maintenance Record on page 6-15*.

Adding Equipment to the Outside of the Vehicle

Things added to the outside of the vehicle can affect the airflow around it. This can cause wind noise and can affect fuel economy and windshield washer performance. Check with your dealer/retailer before adding equipment to the outside of the vehicle.

Fuel

Use of the recommended fuel is an important part of the proper maintenance of this vehicle. To help keep the engine clean and maintain optimum vehicle performance, we recommend the use of gasoline advertised as TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline.

The 8th digit of the Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) shows the code letter or number that identifies the vehicle's engine. The VIN is at the top left of the instrument panel. See *Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) on page 5-89*.

Gasoline Octane

If the vehicle has the 2.4L L4 engine (VIN Code B), use regular unleaded gasoline with a posted octane rating of 87 or higher. If the octane rating is less than 87, you might notice an audible knocking noise when you drive, commonly referred to as spark knock. If this occurs, use a gasoline rated at 87 octane or higher as soon as possible. If you are using gasoline rated at 87 octane or higher and you hear heavy knocking, the engine needs service.

If the vehicle has the 3.6L V6 engine (VIN Code 7), use regular unleaded gasoline with a posted octane rating of 87 or higher. For best performance or trailer towing, you could choose to use middle grade 89 octane unleaded gasoline. If the octane rating is less than 87, you might notice an audible knocking noise when you drive, commonly referred to as spark knock. If this occurs, use a gasoline rated at 87 octane or higher as soon as possible. If you are using gasoline rated at 87 octane or higher and you hear heavy knocking, the engine needs service.

Gasoline Specifications

At a minimum, gasoline should meet ASTM specification D 4814 in the United States or CAN/CGSB-3.5 or 3.511 in Canada. Some gasolines contain an octane-enhancing additive called methylcyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl (MMT). We recommend against the use of gasolines containing MMT. See *Additives on page 5-6* for additional information.

California Fuel

If the vehicle is certified to meet California Emissions Standards, it is designed to operate on fuels that meet California specifications. See the underhood emission control label. If this fuel is not available in states adopting California emissions standards, the vehicle will operate satisfactorily on fuels meeting federal specifications, but emission control system performance might be affected. The malfunction indicator lamp could turn on and the vehicle might fail a smog-check test. See *Malfunction Indicator Lamp on page 3-37*. If this occurs, return to your authorized dealer/retailer for diagnosis. If it is determined that the condition is caused by the type of fuel used, repairs might not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

Additives

To provide cleaner air, all gasolines in the United States are now required to contain additives that help prevent engine and fuel system deposits from forming, allowing the emission control system to work properly. In most cases, you should not have to add anything to the fuel. However, some gasolines contain only the minimum amount of additive required to meet U.S. Environmental Protection Agency regulations. To help keep fuel injectors and intake valves clean, or if the vehicle experiences problems due to dirty injectors or valves, look for gasoline that is advertised as TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline.

For customers who do not use TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline regularly, one bottle of GM Fuel System Treatment PLUS, added to the fuel tank at every engine oil change, can help clean deposits from fuel injectors and intake valves. GM Fuel System Treatment PLUS is the only gasoline additive recommended by General Motors.

Also, your dealer/retailer has additives that will help correct and prevent most deposit-related problems.

Gasolines containing oxygenates, such as ethers and ethanol, and reformulated gasolines might be available in your area. We recommend that you use these gasolines, if they comply with the specifications described earlier. However, E85 (85% ethanol) and other fuels containing more than 10% ethanol must not be used in vehicles that were not designed for those fuels.

Notice: **This vehicle was not designed for fuel that contains methanol. Do not use fuel containing methanol. It can corrode metal parts in the fuel system and also damage plastic and rubber parts. That damage would not be covered under the vehicle warranty.**

Some gasolines that are not reformulated for low emissions can contain an octane-enhancing additive called methylcyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl (MMT); ask the attendant where you buy gasoline whether the fuel contains MMT. We recommend against the use of such gasolines. Fuels containing MMT can reduce the life of spark plugs and the performance of the emission control system could be affected. The malfunction indicator lamp might turn on. If this occurs, return to your dealer/retailer for service.

Fuels in Foreign Countries

If you plan on driving in another country outside the United States or Canada, the proper fuel might be hard to find. Never use leaded gasoline or any other fuel not recommended in the previous text on fuel. Costly repairs caused by use of improper fuel would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

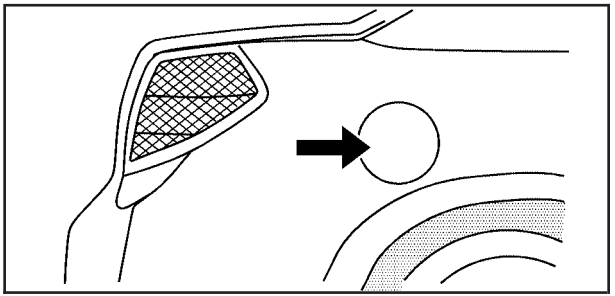
To check the fuel availability, ask an auto club, or contact a major oil company that does business in the country where you will be driving.

Filling the Tank

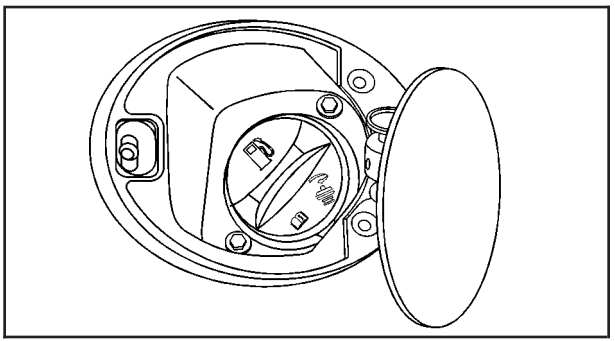
⚠ CAUTION:

Fuel vapor burns violently and a fuel fire can cause bad injuries. To help avoid injuries to you and others, read and follow all the instructions on the pump island. Turn off the engine when you are refueling. Do not smoke if you are near fuel or refueling the vehicle. Do not use cellular phones. Keep sparks, flames, and smoking materials away from fuel. Do not leave the fuel pump unattended when refueling the vehicle. This is against the law in some places. Do not re-enter the vehicle while pumping fuel. Keep children away from the fuel pump; never let children pump fuel.

The fuel door is located on the passenger side of the vehicle.



To open the fuel door, push the rearward center edge in and release and it will open.



To remove the tethered fuel cap, turn it slowly counterclockwise.

While refueling, hang the tethered fuel cap from the hook on the fuel door.

⚠ CAUTION:

Fuel can spray out on you if you open the fuel cap too quickly. If you spill fuel and then something ignites it, you could be badly burned. This spray can happen if the tank is nearly full, and is more likely in hot weather. Open the fuel cap slowly and wait for any hiss noise to stop. Then unscrew the cap all the way.

Be careful not to spill fuel. Do not top off or overfill the tank and wait a few seconds after you have finished pumping the fuel before removing the nozzle. Clean fuel from painted surfaces as soon as possible. See *Washing Your Vehicle on page 5-85*.

When replacing the fuel cap, turn it to the clockwise until it clicks. Make sure the cap is fully installed. The diagnostic system can determine if the fuel cap has been left off or improperly installed. This would allow fuel to evaporate into the atmosphere. See *Malfunction Indicator Lamp on page 3-37*.

If the vehicle has a Driver Information Center (DIC), the CHECK GAS CAP message displays if the fuel cap is not properly installed.

⚠ CAUTION:

If a fire starts while you are refueling, do not remove the nozzle. Shut off the flow of fuel by shutting off the pump or by notifying the station attendant. Leave the area immediately.

Notice: **If you need a new fuel cap, be sure to get the right type. Your dealer/ retailer can get one for you. If you get the wrong type, it might not fit properly. This can cause the malfunction indicator lamp to light and can damage the fuel tank and emissions system. See *Malfunction Indicator Lamp on page 3-37*.**

Filling a Portable Fuel Container

⚠ CAUTION:

Never fill a portable fuel container while it is in the vehicle. Static electricity discharge from the container can ignite the fuel vapor. You can be badly burned and the vehicle damaged if this occurs. To help avoid injury to you and others:

- Dispense fuel only into approved containers.
- Do not fill a container while it is inside a vehicle, in a vehicle's trunk, pickup bed, or on any surface other than the ground.
- Bring the fill nozzle in contact with the inside of the fill opening before operating the nozzle. Contact should be maintained until the filling is complete.
- Do not smoke while pumping fuel.
- Do not use a cellular phone while pumping fuel.

Checking Things Under the Hood

⚠ CAUTION:

An electric fan under the hood can start up and injure you even when the engine is not running. Keep hands, clothing, and tools away from any underhood electric fan.

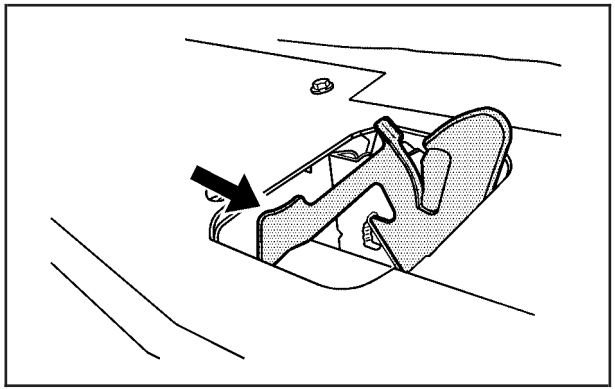
⚠ CAUTION:

Things that burn can get on hot engine parts and start a fire. These include liquids like fuel, oil, coolant, brake fluid, windshield washer and other fluids, and plastic or rubber. You or others could be burned. Be careful not to drop or spill things that will burn onto a hot engine.

Hood Release

To open the hood, do the following:

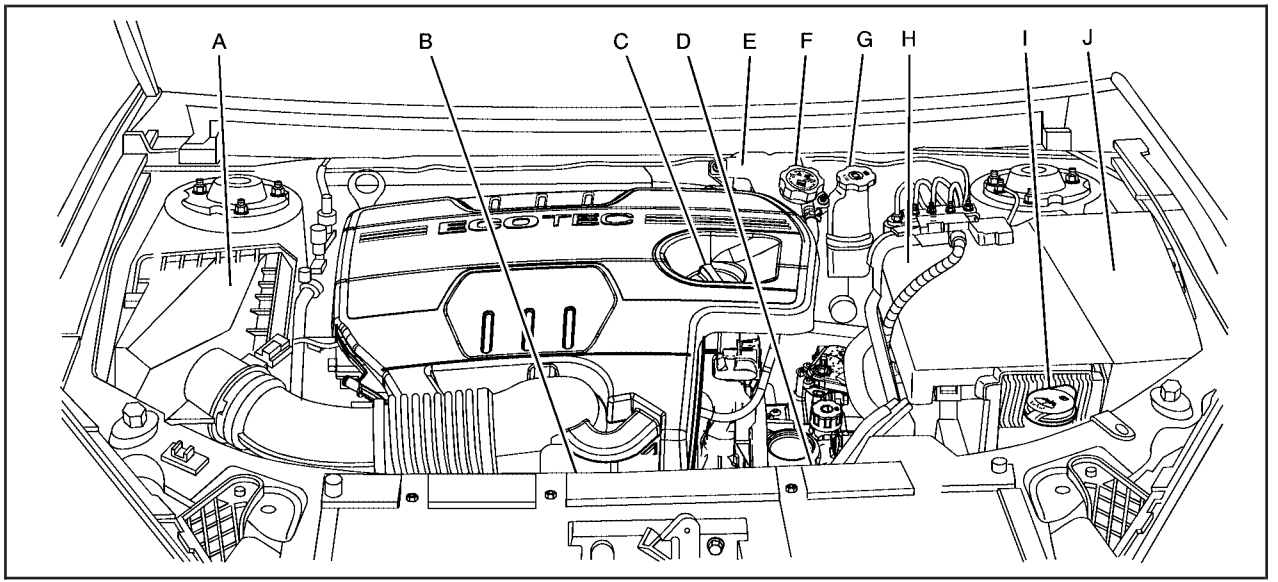
1. Pull the hood release handle with this symbol on it. It is located inside the vehicle to the left of the steering column.



2. Then go to the front of the vehicle and push the secondary hood release handle toward the driver side of the vehicle.
3. Lift the hood.
4. After the hood is slightly lifted, it will continue to open to the full position. Before closing the hood, be sure all the filler caps are on properly. Lower the hood until the lifting force of the strut is reduced, then release the hood to latch fully. Check to make sure the hood is closed and repeat the process if necessary.

Engine Compartment Overview

When you open the hood on the 2.4L L4 engine, this is what you see:



A. See *Engine Air Cleaner/Filter on page 5-20*.

B. Engine Cooling Fan. See *Cooling System on page 5-22*.

C. Engine Oil Fill Cap. See “When to Add Engine Oil” under *Engine Oil on page 5-15*.

D. Engine Oil Dipstick (Out of view). See “Checking Engine Oil” under *Engine Oil on page 5-15*.

E. Engine Coolant Surge Tank. See *Engine Coolant on page 5-23*.

F. Pressure Cap. See *Cooling System on page 5-22*.

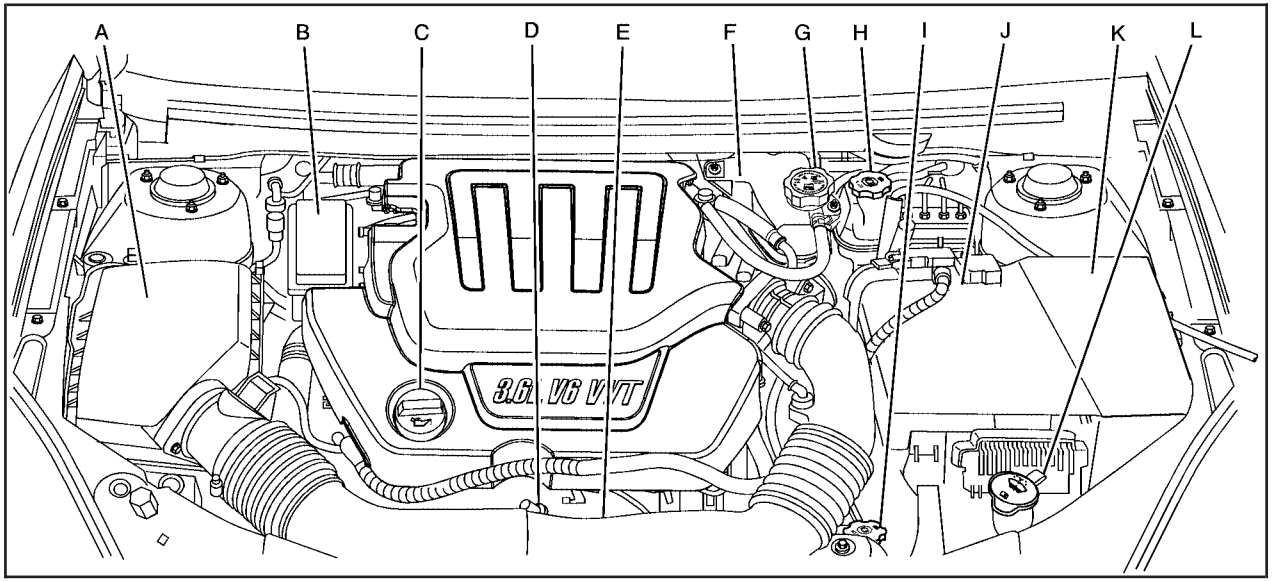
G. Brake Master Cylinder Reservoir. See “Brake Fluid” under *Brakes on page 5-33*.

H. See *Battery on page 5-36*.

I. Windshield Washer Fluid Reservoir. See “Adding Washer Fluid” under *Windshield Washer Fluid on page 5-32*.

J. See *Engine Compartment Fuse Block on page 5-94*.

When you open the hood on the 3.6L V6 engine, this is what you see:



A. See *Engine Air Cleaner/Filter on page 5-20*.

B. Power Steering Fluid Reservoir. See *Power Steering Fluid on page 5-30*.

C. Engine Oil Fill Cap. See “When to Add Engine Oil” under *Engine Oil on page 5-15*.

D. Engine Oil Dipstick. See “Checking Engine Oil” under *Engine Oil on page 5-15*.

E. Electric Engine Cooling Fans (Out of View). See *Cooling System on page 5-22*.

F. Engine Coolant Surge Tank. See *Engine Coolant on page 5-23*.

G. Pressure Cap. See *Cooling System on page 5-22*.

H. Brake Master Cylinder Reservoir. See “Brake Fluid” under *Brakes on page 5-33*.

I. Automatic transmission Fluid Dipstick. See “Checking the Fluid Level” under *Automatic Transmission Fluid on page 5-22*.

J. See *Battery on page 5-36*.

K. Underhood Fuse Block. See *Engine Compartment Fuse Block on page 5-94*.

L. Windshield Washer Fluid Reservoir. See “Adding Washer Fluid” under *Windshield Washer Fluid on page 5-32*.

Engine Oil

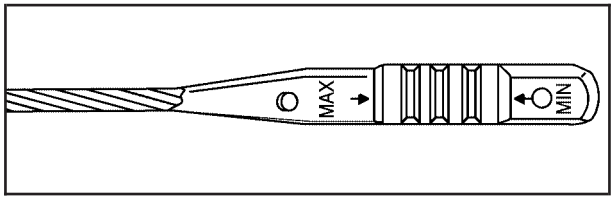
Checking Engine Oil

It is a good idea to check the engine oil level at each fuel fill. In order to get an accurate reading, the oil must be warm and the vehicle must be on level ground.

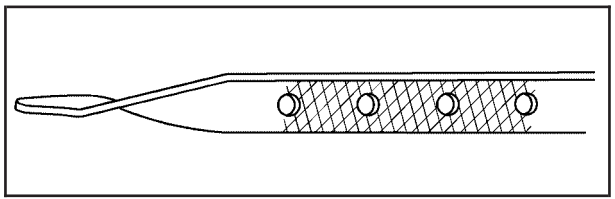
The engine oil dipstick handle is a yellow loop. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 5-12* for the location of the engine oil dipstick.

1. Turn off the engine and give the oil several minutes to drain back into the oil pan. If this is not done, the oil dipstick might not show the actual level.
2. Pull out the dipstick and clean it with a paper towel or cloth, then push it back in all the way. Remove it again, keeping the tip down, and check the level.

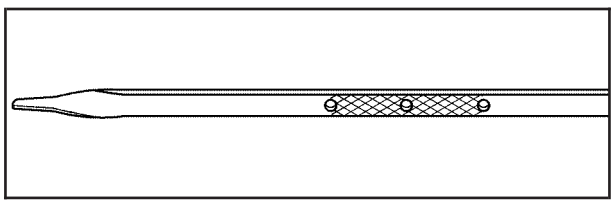
When to Add Engine Oil



2.4L L4 Engine



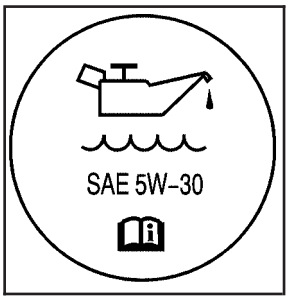
3.5L V6 Engine



3.6L V6 Engine

If the oil is below the cross-hatched area at the tip of the dipstick, add at least one quart/liter of the recommended oil. This section explains what kind of oil to use. For engine oil crankcase capacity, see *Capacities and Specifications on page 5-100*.

Notice: **Do not add too much oil. If the engine has so much oil that the oil level gets above the upper mark that shows the proper operating range, the engine could be damaged.**

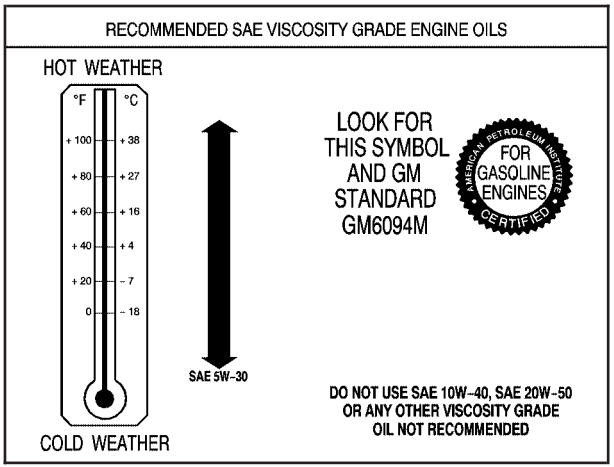


See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 5-12* for the location of the engine oil fill cap.

Add enough oil to put the level somewhere in the proper operating range. Push the dipstick all the way back in when through.

What Kind of Engine Oil to Use

Look for three things:



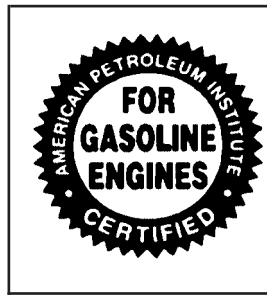
- GM6094M

  Use only an oil that meets GM Standard GM6094M.

- SAE 5W-30

  SAE 5W-30 is best for the vehicle. These numbers on an oil container show its viscosity, or thickness. Do not use other viscosity oils such as SAE 20W-50.

- American Petroleum Institute (API) starburst symbol



  Oils meeting these requirements should have the starburst symbol on the container. This symbol indicates that the oil has been certified by the American Petroleum Institute (API).

Notice: **Use only engine oil identified as meeting GM Standard GM6094M and showing the American Petroleum Institute Certified For Gasoline Engines starburst symbol. Failure to use the recommended oil can result in engine damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.**

Cold Temperature Operation

If in an area of extreme cold, where the temperature falls below –20°F (–29°C), use either an SAE 5W-30 synthetic oil or an SAE 0W-30 engine oil. Both provide easier cold starting for the engine at extremely low temperatures. Always use an oil that meets the required specification, GM6094M. See “What Kind of Engine Oil to Use” for more information.

Engine Oil Additives / Engine Oil Flushes

Do not add anything to the oil. The recommended oils with the starburst symbol that meet GM Standard GM6094M are all that is needed for good performance and engine protection.

Engine oil system flushes are not recommended and could cause engine damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Engine Oil Life System

When to Change Engine Oil

This vehicle has a computer system that indicates when to change the engine oil and filter. This is based on engine revolutions and engine temperature, and not on mileage. Based on driving conditions, the mileage at which an oil change is indicated can vary considerably. For the oil life system to work properly, the system must be reset every time the oil is changed.

When the system has calculated that oil life has been diminished, it indicates that an oil change is necessary. A CHANGE OIL SOON message comes on. See *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-45*. Change the oil as soon as possible within the next 600 miles (1 000 km). It is possible that, if driving under the best conditions, the oil life system might not indicate that an oil change is necessary for over a year. However, the engine oil and filter must be changed at least once a year and at this time the system must be reset. Your dealer/retailer has trained service people who will perform this work using genuine parts and reset the system. It is also important to check the oil regularly and keep it at the proper level.

If the system is ever reset accidentally, the oil must be changed at 3,000 miles (5 000 km) since the last oil change. Remember to reset the oil life system whenever the oil is changed.

How to Reset the Engine Oil Life System

The Engine Oil Life System calculates when to change the engine oil and filter based on vehicle use. Whenever the oil is changed, reset the system so it can calculate when the next oil change is required. If a situation occurs where the oil is changed prior to a CHANGE OIL SOON message being turned on, reset the system.

After changing the engine oil and filter, the system must be reset. To reset the oil life system:

1. Turn the ignition key to ON/RUN with the engine off.
2. Fully press and release the accelerator pedal three times within five seconds.

   If the message is not displayed, the system is reset.

If the CHANGE OIL SOON message comes back on when the vehicle is started, the engine oil life system has not reset. Repeat the procedure.

What to Do with Used Oil

Used engine oil contains certain elements that can be unhealthy for your skin and could even cause cancer. Do not let used oil stay on your skin for very long. Clean your skin and nails with soap and water, or a good hand cleaner. Wash or properly dispose of clothing or rags containing used engine oil. See the manufacturer's warnings about the use and disposal of oil products.

Used oil can be a threat to the environment. If you change your own oil, be sure to drain all the oil from the filter before disposal. Never dispose of oil by putting it in the trash, pouring it on the ground, into sewers, or into streams or bodies of water. Recycle it by taking it to a place that collects used oil.

Engine Air Cleaner/Filter

See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 5-12* for the location of the engine air cleaner/filter.

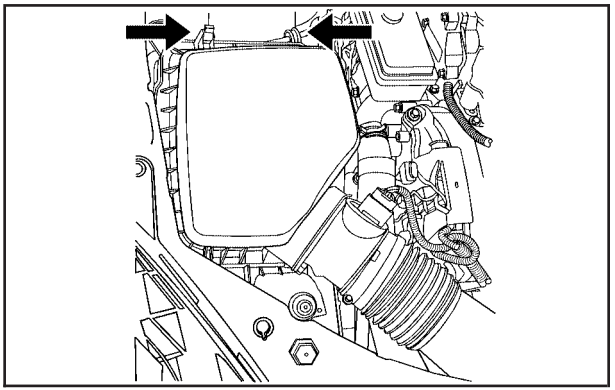
When to Inspect the Engine Air Cleaner/Filter

Inspect the air cleaner/filter at the Maintenance II intervals and replace it at the first oil change after each 50,000 mile (80 000 km) interval. See *Scheduled Maintenance on page 6-4* for more information.
If you are driving in dusty/dirty conditions, inspect the filter at each engine oil change.

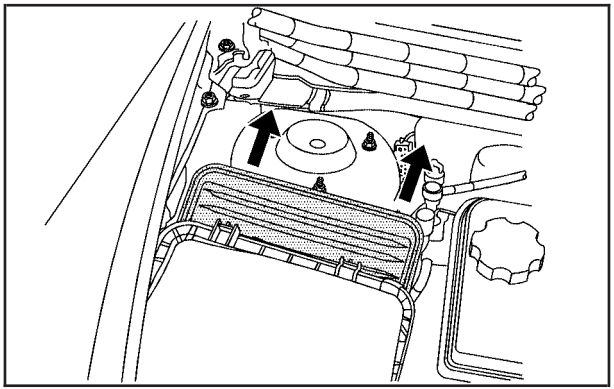
How to Inspect the Engine Air Cleaner/Filter

To inspect the air cleaner/filter, remove the filter from the vehicle and lightly shake the filter to release loose dust and dirt. If the filter remains caked with dirt, a new filter is required.

To inspect or replace the engine air cleaner/filter, do the following:



1. Remove the spring clamps that hold the cover on.
2. Lift off the cover.



3. Inspect or replace the engine air cleaner/filter.
4. Align the filter correctly using the alignment tab.
5. Install the cover by guiding the tabs on the rim of the top cover into the bottom hinges and turn the cover down to close it.
6. The spring clips will engage easily, if the cover is properly seated.

⚠ CAUTION:

Operating the engine with the air cleaner/filter off can cause you or others to be burned. The air cleaner not only cleans the air; it helps to stop flames if the engine backfires. If it is not there and the engine backfires, you could be burned. Do not drive with it off, and be careful working on the engine with the air cleaner/filter off.

Notice: **If the air cleaner/filter is off, a backfire can cause a damaging engine fire. And, dirt can easily get into the engine, which will damage it. Always have the air cleaner/filter in place when you are driving.**

Automatic Transmission Fluid

It is not necessary to check the transmission fluid level. A transmission fluid leak is the only reason for fluid loss. If a leak occurs, take your vehicle to the dealer/retailer and have it repaired as soon as possible.

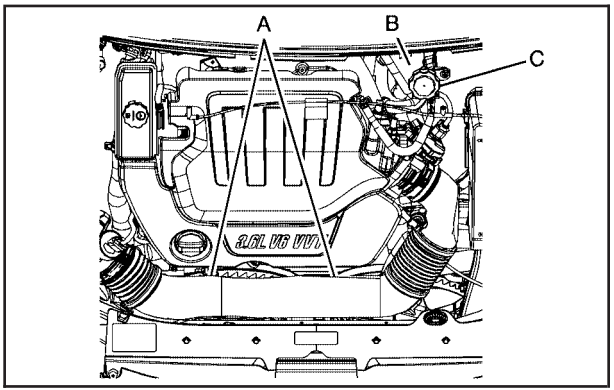
Change the fluid and filter at the intervals listed in *Additional Required Services on page 6-6*, and be sure to use the transmission fluid listed in *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 6-12*.

Notice: **Use of the incorrect automatic transmission fluid may damage the vehicle, and the damages may not be covered by the vehicle's warranty. Always use the automatic transmission fluid listed in *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 6-12*.**

For the 2.4L and 3.6L engines, the transmission fluid will not reach the end of the dipstick unless the transmission is at operating temperature. If you need to check the transmission fluid level, please take your vehicle to your dealer/retailer.

Cooling System

The Cooling System allows the engine to maintain the correct working temperature.



3.6L V6 Engine shown, 2.4L L4 Engine similar

A. Engine Cooling Fans
B. Engine Coolant Surge Tank
C. Pressure Cap

⚠ CAUTION:

An electric engine cooling fan under the hood can start up even when the engine is not running and can cause injury. Keep hands, clothing, and tools away from any underhood electric fan.

⚠ CAUTION:

Heater and radiator hoses, and other engine parts, can be very hot. Do not touch them. If you do, you can be burned.

Do not run the engine if there is a leak. If you run the engine, it could lose all coolant. That could cause an engine fire, and you could be burned. Get any leak fixed before you drive the vehicle.

Notice: **Using coolant other than DEX-COOL® can cause premature engine, heater core, or radiator corrosion. In addition, the engine coolant could require changing sooner, at 30,000 miles (50 000 km) or 24 months, whichever occurs first. Any repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Always use DEX-COOL® (silicate-free) coolant in the vehicle.**

Engine Coolant

The cooling system in the vehicle is filled with DEX-COOL® engine coolant. This coolant is designed to remain in the vehicle for five years or 150,000 miles (240 000 km), whichever occurs first.

The following explains the cooling system and how to check and add coolant when it is low. If there is a problem with engine overheating, see *Engine Overheating on page 5-27*.

What to Use

⚠ CAUTION:

Adding only plain water to the cooling system can be dangerous. Plain water, or some other liquid such as alcohol, can boil before the proper coolant mixture will. The vehicle's coolant warning system is set for the proper coolant mixture. With plain water or the wrong mixture, the engine could get too hot but you would not get the overheat warning. The engine could catch fire and you or others could be burned. Use a 50/50 mixture of clean, drinkable water and DEX-COOL® coolant.

Use a 50/50 mixture of clean, drinkable water and DEX-COOL® coolant. If using this mixture, nothing else needs to be added. This mixture:

- Gives freezing protection down to –34°F (–37°C), outside temperature.
- Gives boiling protection up to 265°F (129°C), engine temperature.
- Protects against rust and corrosion.
- Will not damage aluminum parts.
- Helps keep the proper engine temperature.

Notice: **If an improper coolant mixture is used, the engine could overheat and be badly damaged. The repair cost would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Too much water in the mixture can freeze and crack the engine, radiator, heater core, and other parts.**

Notice: **If extra inhibitors and/or additives are used in the vehicle's cooling system, the vehicle could be damaged. Use only the proper mixture of the engine coolant listed in this manual for the cooling system. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 6-12* for more information.**

Checking Coolant

The vehicle must be on a level surface when checking the coolant level.

Check to see if coolant is visible in the coolant recovery tank. If the coolant inside the coolant recovery tank is boiling, do not do anything else until it cools down. If coolant is visible but the coolant level is not at or above the FULL COLD mark, add a 50/50 mixture of clean, drinkable water and DEX-COOL® coolant at the coolant recovery tank, but be sure the cooling system is cool before this is done. See *Engine Coolant on page 5-23* for more information.

The coolant level should be at or above the FULL COLD mark on the coolant surge tank. If it is not, you may have a leak at the pressure cap or in the radiator hoses, heater hoses, radiator, water pump, or somewhere else in the cooling system.

How to Add Coolant to the Recovery Tank

⚠ CAUTION:

You can be burned if you spill coolant on hot engine parts. Coolant contains ethylene glycol and it will burn if the engine parts are hot enough. Do not spill coolant on a hot engine.

Notice: **This vehicle has a specific coolant fill procedure. Failure to follow this procedure could cause the engine to overheat and be severely damaged.**

If coolant is needed, add the proper DEX-COOL® coolant mixture at the coolant recovery tank.

How to Add Coolant to the Radiator

⚠ CAUTION:

An electric engine cooling fan under the hood can start up even when the engine is not running and can cause injury. Keep hands, clothing, and tools away from any underhood electric fan.

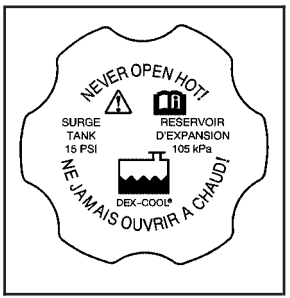
⚠ CAUTION:

Steam and scalding liquids from a hot cooling system can blow out and burn you badly. They are under pressure, and if you turn the surge tank pressure cap — even a little — they can come out at high speed. Never turn the cap when the cooling system, including the surge tank pressure cap, is hot. Wait for the cooling system and surge tank pressure cap to cool if you ever have to turn the pressure cap.

If coolant is needed, add the proper mixture directly to the radiator, but be sure the cooling system is cool before this is done.

1. Remove the coolant surge tank pressure cap when the cooling system, including the coolant surge tank pressure cap and upper radiator hose, is no longer hot. Turn the pressure cap slowly counterclockwise about two or two and one-half turns.

   If you hear a hiss, wait for that to stop. This will allow any pressure still left to be vented out the discharge hose.



2. Then keep turning the pressure cap slowly, and remove it.

3. Fill the coolant surge tank with the proper mixture, to the FULL COLD mark. Wait about five minutes, then check to see if the level is below the mark. If the level is below the FULL COLD mark, add additional coolant to bring the level up to the mark. Repeat this procedure until the level remains constant at the FULL COLD mark for at least five minutes.
4. With the coolant surge tank pressure cap off, start the engine and let it run until you can feel the upper radiator hose getting hot. Watch out for the engine cooling fans.

   By this time, the coolant level inside the coolant surge tank might be lower. If the level is lower than the FULL COLD mark, add more of the proper mixture to the coolant surge tank until the level reaches the FULL COLD mark.
5. Then replace the pressure cap. Be sure the pressure cap is hand-tight and fully seated.

Notice: **If the pressure cap is not tightly installed, coolant loss and possible engine damage may occur. Be sure the cap is properly and tightly secured.**

Pressure Cap

Notice: **If the pressure cap is not tightly installed, coolant loss and possible engine damage may occur. Be sure the cap is properly and tightly secured.**

See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 5-12* for more information on location.

Engine Overheating

The vehicle has several indicators to warn of engine overheating.

You will find an engine coolant temperature gage as well as an engine coolant temperature warning light on your vehicle's instrument panel cluster. See *Engine Coolant Temperature Gage on page 3-36* and *Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Light on page 3-35*.

You may decide not to lift the hood when this warning appears, but instead get service help right away. See *Roadside Assistance Program on page 7-7*.

If you do decide to lift the hood, make sure the vehicle is parked on a level surface.

Then check to see if the engine cooling fans are running. If the engine is overheating, both fans should be running. If they are not, do not continue to run the engine and have the vehicle serviced.

Notice: **Engine damage from running the engine without coolant is not covered by the warranty.**

Notice: **If the engine catches fire while driving with no coolant, the vehicle can be badly damaged. The costly repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. See *Overheated Engine Protection Operating Mode on page 5-30* for information on driving to a safe place in an emergency.**

If Steam Is Coming From The Engine Compartment

⚠ CAUTION:

Steam from an overheated engine can burn you badly, even if you just open the hood. Stay away from the engine if you see or hear steam coming from it. Turn it off and get everyone away from the vehicle until it cools down. Wait until there is no sign of steam or coolant before you open the hood.

If you keep driving when the vehicles engine is overheated, the liquids in it can catch fire. You or others could be badly burned. Stop the engine if it overheats, and get out of the vehicle until the engine is cool.

See *Overheated Engine Protection Operating Mode on page 5-30* for information on driving to a safe place in an emergency.

If No Steam Is Coming From The Engine Compartment

If an engine overheat warning is displayed but no steam can be seen or heard, the problem may not be too serious. Sometimes the engine can get a little too hot when the vehicle:

- Climbs a long hill on a hot day.
- Stops after high-speed driving.
- Idles for long periods in traffic.
- Tows a trailer.

If the overheat warning is displayed with no sign of steam:

1. Turn the air off.
2. Turn the heater on to the highest temperature and to the highest fan speed. Open the windows as necessary.
3. In heavy traffic, let the engine idle in N (Neutral) while stopped. If it is safe to do so, pull off the road, shift to P (Park) or N (Neutral) and let the engine idle.

If the temperature overheat gage is no longer in the overheat zone or an overheat warning no longer displays, the vehicle can be driven. Continue to drive the vehicle slow for about 10 minutes. Keep a safe vehicle distance from the car in front of you. If the warning does not come back on, continue to drive normally.

If the warning continues, pull over, stop, and park the vehicle right away.

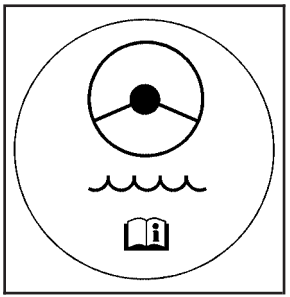
If there is no sign of steam, idle the engine for three minutes while parked. If the warning is still displayed, turn off the engine until it cools down. Also, see “Overheated Engine Protection Operating Mode” following.

Overheated Engine Protection Operating Mode

This emergency operating mode allows your vehicle to be driven to a safe place in an emergency situation. If an overheated engine condition exists, an overheat protection mode which alternates firing groups of cylinders helps prevent engine damage. In this mode, you will notice a significant loss in power and engine performance. The temperature gage will indicate an overheat condition exists. Driving extended miles (km) and/or towing a trailer in the overheat protection mode should be avoided.

Notice: **After driving in the overheated engine protection operating mode, to avoid engine damage, allow the engine to cool before attempting any repair. The engine oil will be severely degraded. Repair the cause of coolant loss, change the oil and reset the oil life system. See *Engine Oil on page 5-15*.**

Power Steering Fluid



See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 5-12* for reservoir location.

When to Check Power Steering Fluid

Power steering fluid is used in all vehicles with V6 engines. Vehicles with the 4-cylinder engine have electric power steering and do not use power steering fluid.

It is not necessary to regularly check power steering fluid unless a leak is suspected in the system, or an unusual noise is heard. A fluid loss in this system could indicate a problem. Have the system inspected and repaired.

How to Check Power Steering Fluid

To check the power steering fluid, do the following:

1. Turn the key off and let the engine compartment cool down.
2. Wipe the cap and the top of the reservoir clean.
3. Unscrew the cap and wipe the dipstick with a clean rag.
4. Replace the cap and completely tighten it.
5. Remove the cap again and look at the fluid level on the dipstick.

If the vehicle has the 3.6L V6 engine, the fluid level should be between the MIN (Minimum) and MAX (Maximum) marks when the engine is cold, and at the MAX mark when the engine is hot. If the fluid is at the MIN mark when the engine is cold or hot, power steering fluid should be added.

The fluid level should be within the crosshatch area on the dipstick.

If the fluid is at or below the ADD or MIN mark on the dipstick, add just enough fluid to bring the level within the crosshatch area.

What to Use

To determine what kind of fluid to use, see *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 6-12*. Always use the proper fluid.

Notice: **Use of the incorrect fluid may damage the vehicle and the damages may not be covered by the vehicle's warranty. Always use the correct fluid listed in *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 6-12*.**

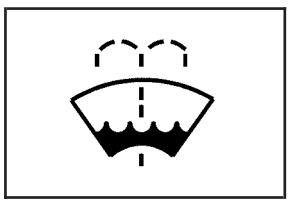
Windshield Washer Fluid

What to Use

When you need windshield washer fluid, be sure to read the manufacturer's instructions before use. If you will be operating your vehicle in an area where the temperature may fall below freezing, use a fluid that has sufficient protection against freezing.

Adding Washer Fluid

When the windshield washer fluid reservoir is low, a LOW WASHER FLUID message displays on the Driver Information Center (DIC). See *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-45* for more information.



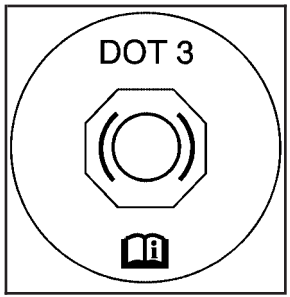
Open the cap with the washer symbol on it. Add washer fluid until the tank is full. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 5-12* for reservoir location.

Notice:

- **When using concentrated washer fluid, follow the manufacturer's instructions for adding water.**
- **Do not mix water with ready-to-use washer fluid. Water can cause the solution to freeze and damage your washer fluid tank and other parts of the washer system. Also, water does not clean as well as washer fluid.**
- **Fill the washer fluid tank only three-quarters full when it is very cold. This allows for fluid expansion if freezing occurs, which could damage the tank if it is completely full.**
- **Do not use engine coolant (antifreeze) in your windshield washer. It can damage the vehicle's windshield washer system and paint.**

Brakes

Brake Fluid



The brake master cylinder reservoir is filled with DOT 3 brake fluid. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 5-12* for the location of the reservoir.

There are only two reasons why the brake fluid level in the reservoir might go down:

- The brake fluid level goes down because of normal brake lining wear. When new linings are installed, the fluid level goes back up.
- A fluid leak in the brake hydraulic system can also cause a low fluid level. Have the brake hydraulic system fixed, since a leak means that sooner or later the brakes will not work well.

Do not top off the brake fluid. Adding fluid does not correct a leak. If fluid is added when the linings are worn, there will be too much fluid when new brake linings are installed. Add or remove brake fluid, as necessary, only when work is done on the brake hydraulic system.

⚠ CAUTION:

If too much brake fluid is added, it can spill on the engine and burn, if the engine is hot enough. You or others could be burned, and the vehicle could be damaged. Add brake fluid only when work is done on the brake hydraulic system.

When the brake fluid falls to a low level, the BRAKE FLUID message in the Driver Information Center (DIC) displays. See *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-45*.

What to Add

Use only new DOT 3 brake fluid from a sealed container. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 6-12*.

Always clean the brake fluid reservoir cap and the area around the cap before removing it. This helps keep dirt from entering the reservoir.

⚠ CAUTION:

With the wrong kind of fluid in the brake hydraulic system, the brakes might not work well. This could cause a crash. Always use the proper brake fluid.

Notice:

- **Using the wrong fluid can badly damage brake hydraulic system parts. For example, just a few drops of mineral-based oil, such as engine oil, in the brake hydraulic system can damage brake hydraulic system parts so badly that they will have to be replaced. Do not let someone put in the wrong kind of fluid.**
- **If brake fluid is spilled on the vehicle's painted surfaces, the paint finish can be damaged. Be careful not to spill brake fluid on the vehicle. If you do, wash it off immediately. See *Washing Your Vehicle on page 5-85*.**

Brake Wear

This vehicle has disc brakes. Disc brake pads have built-in wear indicators that make a high-pitched warning sound when the brake pads are worn and new pads are needed. The sound can come and go or be heard all the time the vehicle is moving, except when applying the brake pedal firmly.

⚠ CAUTION:

The brake wear warning sound means that soon the brakes will not work well. That could lead to an accident. When the brake wear warning sound is heard, have the vehicle serviced.

Notice: **Continuing to drive with worn-out brake pads could result in costly brake repair.**

Some driving conditions or climates can cause a brake squeal when the brakes are first applied or lightly applied. This does not mean something is wrong with the brakes.

Properly torqued wheel nuts are necessary to help prevent brake pulsation. When tires are rotated, inspect brake pads for wear and evenly tighten wheel nuts in the proper sequence to torque specifications in *Capacities and Specifications on page 5-100*.

Brake linings should always be replaced as complete axle sets.

Brake Pedal Travel

See your dealer/retailer if the brake pedal does not return to normal height, or if there is a rapid increase in pedal travel. This could be a sign that brake service might be required.

Brake Adjustment

Every time the brakes are applied, with or without the vehicle moving, the brakes adjust for wear.

Replacing Brake System Parts

The braking system on a vehicle is complex. Its many parts have to be of top quality and work well together if the vehicle is to have really good braking. The vehicle was designed and tested with top-quality brake parts. When parts of the braking system are replaced — for example, when the brake linings wear down and new ones are installed — be sure to get new approved replacement parts. If this is not done, the brakes might not work properly. For example, if someone puts in brake linings that are wrong for the vehicle, the balance between the front and rear brakes can change — for the worse. The braking performance expected can change in many other ways if the wrong replacement brake parts are installed.

Battery

This vehicle has a maintenance free battery. When it is time for a new battery, see your dealer/retailer for one that has the replacement number shown on the original battery's label. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 5-12* for battery location.

Warning: Battery posts, terminals, and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harm. Wash hands after handling.

Vehicle Storage

> **⚠ CAUTION:**
>
> Batteries have acid that can burn you and gas that can explode. You can be badly hurt if you are not careful. See *Jump Starting on page 5-37* for tips on working around a battery without getting hurt.

Infrequent Usage: If the vehicle is driven infrequently, remove the black, negative (–) cable from the battery. This helps keep the battery from running down.

Extended Storage: For extended storage of the vehicle, remove the black, negative (–) cable from the battery or use a battery trickle charger. This helps maintain the charge of the battery over an extended period of time.

Jump Starting

If the battery has run down, you may want to use another vehicle and some jumper cables to start your vehicle. Be sure to use the following steps to do it safely.

⚠ CAUTION:

Batteries can hurt you. They can be dangerous because:

- They contain acid that can burn you.
- They contain gas that can explode or ignite.
- They contain enough electricity to burn you.

If you do not follow these steps exactly, some or all of these things can hurt you.

Notice: **Ignoring these steps could result in costly damage to the vehicle that would not be covered by the warranty.**

Trying to start the vehicle by pushing or pulling it will not work, and it could damage the vehicle.

1. Check the other vehicle. It must have a 12-volt battery with a negative ground system.

Notice: **If the other vehicle's system is not a 12-volt system with a negative ground, both vehicles can be damaged. Only use vehicles with 12-volt systems with negative grounds to jump start your vehicle.**

2. Get the vehicles close enough so the jumper cables can reach, but be sure the vehicles are not touching each other. If they are, it could cause a ground connection you do not want. You would not be able to start your vehicle, and the bad grounding could damage the electrical systems.

   To avoid the possibility of the vehicles rolling, set the parking brake firmly on both vehicles involved in the jump start procedure. Put an automatic transmission in P (Park) or a manual transmission in N (Neutral) before setting the parking brake.

Notice: **If you leave the radio or other accessories on during the jump starting procedure, they could be damaged. The repairs would not be covered by the warranty. Always turn off the radio and other accessories when jump starting the vehicle.**

3. Turn off the ignition on both vehicles. Unplug unnecessary accessories plugged into the cigarette lighter or the accessory power outlet. Turn off the radio and all lamps that are not needed. This will avoid sparks and help save both batteries. And it could save the radio!

4. Open the hoods and locate the batteries. Find the positive (+) and negative (–) terminal locations on each vehicle. Your vehicle's positive (+) terminal is located under a red tethered cap on the battery. The negative (–) terminal is located under a black tethered cap on the battery. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 5-12* for more information on location. Flip the caps up to access the positive (+) and negative (–) terminals.

⚠ CAUTION:

An electric fan can start up even when the engine is not running and can injure you. Keep hands, clothing and tools away from any underhood electric fan.

⚠ CAUTION:

Using a match near a battery can cause battery gas to explode. People have been hurt doing this, and some have been blinded. Use a flashlight if you need more light.

Be sure the battery has enough water. You do not need to add water to the battery installed in your new vehicle. But if a battery has filler caps, be sure the right amount of fluid is there. If it is low, add water to take care of that first. If you don't, explosive gas could be present.

Battery fluid contains acid that can burn you. Do not get it on you. If you accidentally get it in your eyes or on your skin, flush the place with water and get medical help immediately.

⚠ CAUTION:

Fans or other moving engine parts can injure you badly. Keep your hands away from moving parts once the engine is running.

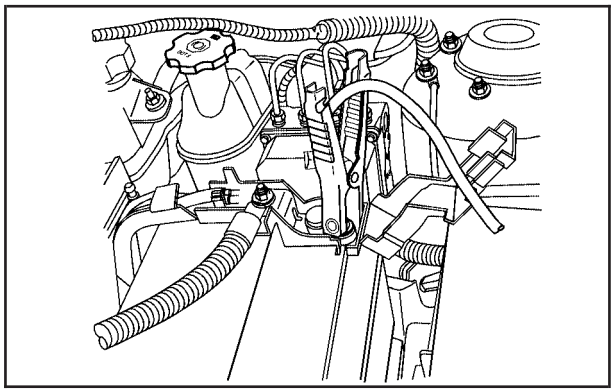
5. Check that the jumper cables do not have loose or missing insulation. If they do, you could get a shock. The vehicles could be damaged too.

   Before you connect the cables, here are some things you should know. Positive (+) will go to positive (+) or to a remote positive (+) terminal if the vehicle has one. Negative (–) will go to a heavy, unpainted metal engine part or to a remote negative (–) terminal if the vehicle has one.

   Do not connect positive (+) to negative (–) or you will get a short that would damage the battery and maybe other parts too. And do not connect the negative (–) cable to the negative (–) terminal on the dead battery because this can cause sparks.

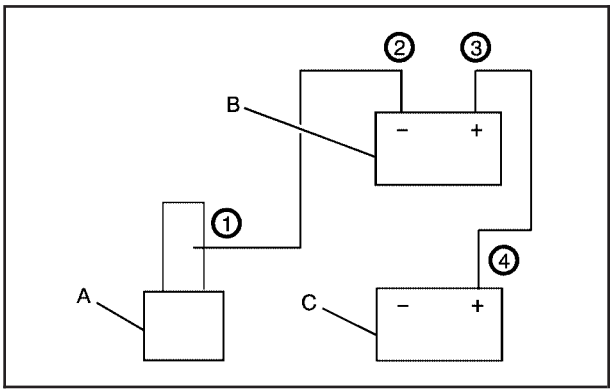
6. Connect the red positive (+) cable to the positive (+) terminal of the dead battery. Use a remote positive (+) terminal if the vehicle has one.
7. Do not let the other end touch metal. Connect it to the positive (+) terminal of the good battery. Use a remote positive (+) terminal if the vehicle has one.
8. Now connect the black negative (–) cable to the negative (–) terminal of the good battery. Use a remote negative (–) terminal if the vehicle has one.

   Do not let the other end touch anything until the next step. The other end of the negative (–) cable *does not* go to the dead battery. It goes to a heavy, unpainted metal engine part or to a remote negative (–) terminal on the vehicle with the dead battery.



9. Connect the other end of the negative (–) cable at least 18 inches (45 cm) away from the dead battery, but not near engine parts that move. The electrical connection is just as good there, and the chance of sparks getting back to the battery is much less.
10. Now start the vehicle with the good battery and run the engine for a while.
11. Try to start the vehicle that had the dead battery. If it will not start after a few tries, it probably needs service.

Notice: **If the jumper cables are connected or removed in the wrong order, electrical shorting may occur and damage the vehicle. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Always connect and remove the jumper cables in the correct order, making sure that the cables do not touch each other or other metal.**



Jumper Cable Removal

A. Heavy, Unpainted Metal Engine Part or Remote Negative (–) Terminal
B. Good Battery or Remote Positive (+) and Remote Negative (–) Terminals
C. Dead Battery or Remote Positive (+) Terminal

To disconnect the jumper cables from both vehicles, do the following:

1. Disconnect the black negative (–) cable from the vehicle that had the dead battery.
2. Disconnect the black negative (–) cable from the vehicle with the good battery.
3. Disconnect the red positive (+) cable from the vehicle with the good battery.
4. Disconnect the red positive (+) cable from the other vehicle.
5. Return the caps over the positive (+) and negative (–) terminals to their original positions.

Headlamp Aiming

Headlamp aim has been preset at the factory and should need no further adjustment.

However, if your vehicle is damaged in a crash, the headlamp aim may be affected. Aim adjustment to the low-beam headlamps may be necessary if oncoming drivers flash their high-beam headlamps at you (for vertical aim).

If the headlamps need to be re-aimed, it is recommended that you take the vehicle to your dealer/retailer for service.

Bulb Replacement

For the proper type of replacement bulbs, see *Replacement Bulbs on page 5-44*.

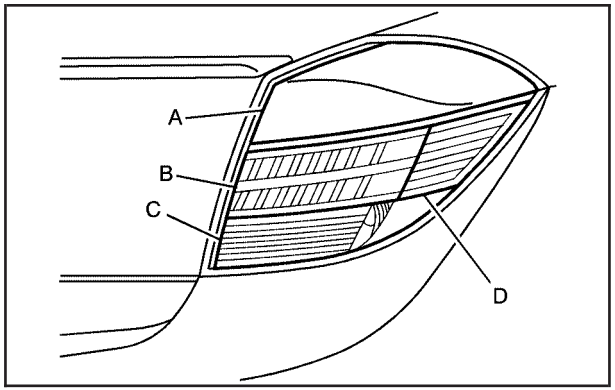
For any bulb changing procedure not listed in this section, contact your dealer/retailer.

Halogen Bulbs

⚠ CAUTION:

Halogen bulbs have pressurized gas inside and can burst if you drop or scratch the bulb. You or others could be injured. Be sure to read and follow the instructions on the bulb package.

Taillamps, Turn Signal, Sidemarker, Stoplamps and Back-up Lamps

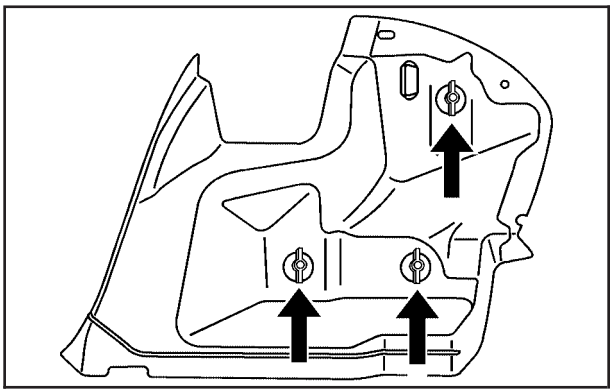


A. Turn Signal Lamp
B. Stoplamp/Taillamp
C. Backup Lamp
D. Sidemarker Lamp

If a stoplamp or a taillamp needs to be replaced, see your dealer/retailer.

To replace a sidemarker lamp, turn signal lamp, or a back-up lamp:

1. Open the trunk. See *Trunk on page 2-13*.
2. Remove the convenience net.
3. Remove the wing nuts holding the trunk trim and pull the trunk trim straight back.

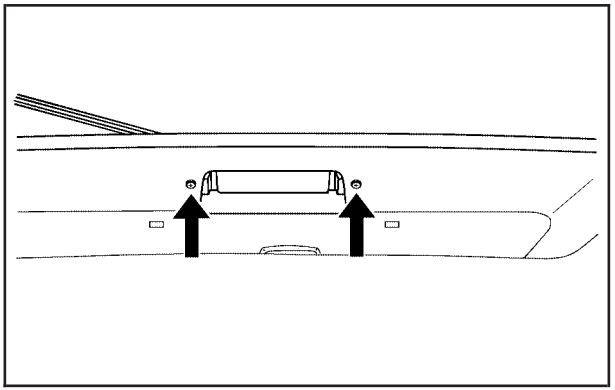


4. Turn the three wing nuts counterclockwise that hold the taillamp assembly counterclockwise.

5. Remove the taillamp assembly.
6. Remove the wiring harness from the taillamp assembly by lifting the release tab.
7. Turn the bulb socket counterclockwise to remove it.
8. Pull the bulb from the socket.
9. Install a new bulb.
10. Turn the bulb socket clockwise to reinstall.
11. Reinstall the wiring harness and press down on the release tab.
12. Reinstall the taillamp assembly and turn the three wing nuts clockwise.
13. Reinstall the trunk trim and wing nuts.

License Plate Lamp

To replace the license plate lamp bulb:



1. Remove the license plate assembly by turning the two screws counterclockwise.
2. Turn and pull the license plate lamp forward through the fascia opening.

3. Turn the bulb socket counterclockwise and pull the bulb straight out of the socket.
4. Push the new bulb in and turn it clockwise to install.
5. Replace the license plate lamp by pushing it through the fascia opening.
6. Turn the two screws that hold the license plate lamp clockwise to reinstall.

Replacement Bulbs

Exterior Lamp	Bulb Number
Back-up Lamp	921
License Plate Lamp and Rear Sidemarker Lamp	168
Turn Signal Lamp	3156

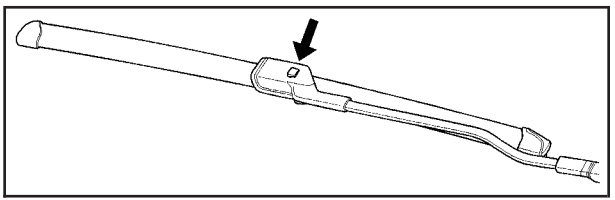
For replacement bulbs not listed here, contact your dealer/retailer.

Windshield Wiper Blade Replacement

Inspect the windshield wiper blades for wear or cracking. See *Scheduled Maintenance on page 6-4*.

To remove the wiper blade:

1. Pull the windshield wiper arm connector away from the windshield.



2. Push the release button.
3. Slide the blade forward.
4. Turn the blade toward you and continue to slide forward to remove.
5. Install the new blade onto the arm connector and make sure the grooved areas are fully set in the locked position.

For the proper type and size, see *Maintenance Replacement Parts on page 6-13*.

Tires

Your new vehicle comes with high-quality tires made by a leading tire manufacturer. If you ever have questions about your tire warranty and where to obtain service, see your vehicle Warranty booklet for details. For additional information refer to the tire manufacturer.

⚠ CAUTION:

Poorly maintained and improperly used tires are dangerous.

- Overloading your vehicle's tires can cause overheating as a result of too much flexing. You could have an air-out and a serious accident. See *Loading the Vehicle on page 4-21*.

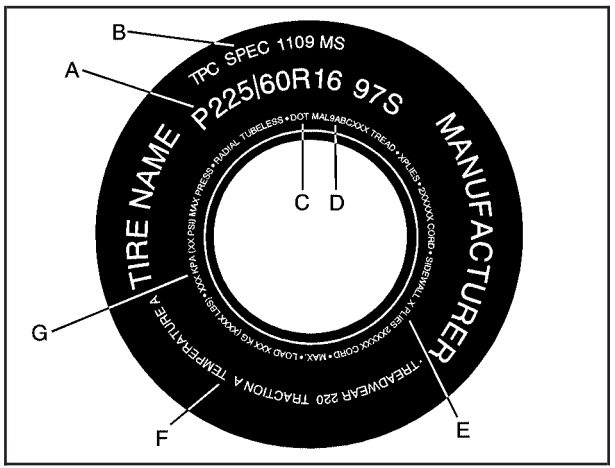
CAUTION: (Continued)

CAUTION: (Continued)

- Underinflated tires pose the same danger as overloaded tires. The resulting accident could cause serious injury. Check all tires frequently to maintain the recommended pressure. Tire pressure should be checked when your vehicle's tires are cold. See *Inflation - Tire Pressure on page 5-52*.
- Overinflated tires are more likely to be cut, punctured, or broken by a sudden impact — such as when you hit a pothole. Keep tires at the recommended pressure.
- Worn, old tires can cause accidents. If the tire's tread is badly worn, or if your vehicle's tires have been damaged, replace them.

Tire Sidewall Labeling

Useful information about a tire is molded into its sidewall. The examples below show a typical passenger vehicle tire and a compact spare tire sidewall.



Passenger (P-Metric) Tire Example

(A) Tire Size: The tire size is a combination of letters and numbers used to define a particular tire's width, height, aspect ratio, construction type, and service description. See the "Tire Size" illustration later in this section for more detail.

(B) TPC Spec (Tire Performance Criteria Specification): Original equipment tires designed to GM's specific tire performance criteria have a TPC specification code molded onto the sidewall. GM's TPC specifications meet or exceed all federal safety guidelines.

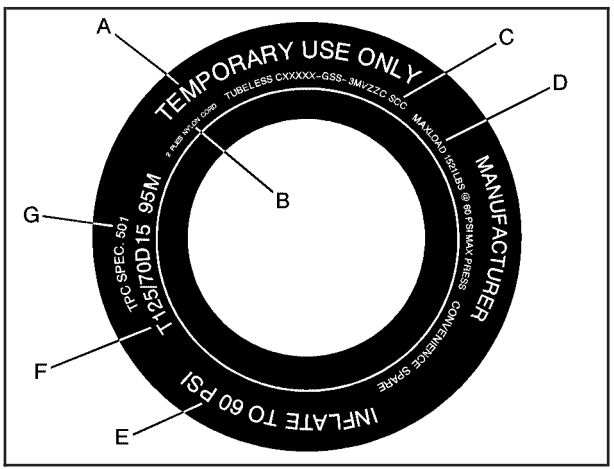
(C) DOT (Department of Transportation): The Department of Transportation (DOT) code indicates that the tire is in compliance with the U.S. Department of Transportation Motor Vehicle Safety Standards.

(D) Tire Identification Number (TIN): The letters and numbers following DOT (Department of Transportation) code is the Tire Identification Number (TIN). The TIN shows the manufacturer and plant code, tire size, and date the tire was manufactured. The TIN is molded onto both sides of the tire, although only one side may have the date of manufacture.

(E) Tire Ply Material: The type of cord and number of plies in the sidewall and under the tread.

(F) Uniform Tire Quality Grading (UTQG): Tire manufacturers are required to grade tires based on three performance factors: treadwear, traction, and temperature resistance. For more information see *Uniform Tire Quality Grading on page 5-63*.

(G) Maximum Cold Inflation Load Limit: Maximum load that can be carried and the maximum pressure needed to support that load.



Compact Spare Tire Example

(A) Temporary Use Only: The compact spare tire or temporary use tire has a tread life of approximately 3,000 miles (5 000 km) and should not be driven at speeds over 65 mph (105 km/h). The compact spare tire is for emergency use when a regular road tire has lost air and gone flat. If your vehicle has a compact spare tire, see *Compact Spare Tire on page 5-80* and *If a Tire Goes Flat on page 5-67*.

(B) Tire Ply Material: The type of cord and number of plies in the sidewall and under the tread.

(C) Tire Identification Number (TIN): The letters and numbers following the DOT (Department of Transportation) code is the Tire Identification Number (TIN). The TIN shows the manufacturer and plant code, tire size, and date the tire was manufactured. The TIN is molded onto both sides of the tire, although only one side may have the date of manufacture.

(D) Maximum Cold Inflation Load Limit: Maximum load that can be carried and the maximum pressure needed to support that load.

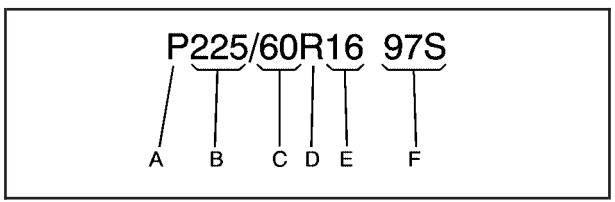
(E) Tire Inflation: The temporary use tire or compact spare tire should be inflated to 60 psi (420 kPa). For more information on tire pressure and inflation see *Inflation - Tire Pressure on page 5-52*.

(F) Tire Size: A combination of letters and numbers define a tire's width, height, aspect ratio, construction type, and service description. The letter T as the first character in the tire size means the tire is for temporary use only.

(G) TPC Spec (Tire Performance Criteria Specification): Original equipment tires designed to GM's specific tire performance criteria have a TPC specification code molded onto the sidewall. GM's TPC specifications meet or exceed all federal safety guidelines.

Tire Size

The following illustration shows an example of a typical passenger vehicle tire size.



(A) Passenger (P-Metric) Tire: The United States version of a metric tire sizing system. The letter P as the first character in the tire size means a passenger vehicle tire engineered to standards set by the U.S. Tire and Rim Association.

(B) Tire Width: The three-digit number indicates the tire section width in millimeters from sidewall to sidewall.

(C) Aspect Ratio: A two-digit number that indicates the tire height-to-width measurements. For example, if the tire size aspect ratio is 60, as shown in item C of the illustration, it would mean that the tire's sidewall is 60 percent as high as it is wide.

(D) Construction Code: A letter code is used to indicate the type of ply construction in the tire. The letter R means radial ply construction; the letter D means diagonal or bias ply construction; and the letter B means belted-bias ply construction.

(E) Rim Diameter: Diameter of the wheel in inches.

(F) Service Description: These characters represent the load index and speed rating of the tire. The load index represents the load carry capacity a tire is certified to carry. The speed rating is the maximum speed a tire is certified to carry a load.

Tire Terminology and Definitions

Air Pressure: The amount of air inside the tire pressing outward on each square inch of the tire. Air pressure is expressed in pounds per square inch (psi) or kilopascal (kPa).

Accessory Weight: This means the combined weight of optional accessories. Some examples of optional accessories are, automatic transmission, power steering, power brakes, power windows, power seats, and air conditioning.

Aspect Ratio: The relationship of a tire's height to its width.

Belt: A rubber coated layer of cords that is located between the plies and the tread. Cords may be made from steel or other reinforcing materials.

Bead: The tire bead contains steel wires wrapped by steel cords that hold the tire onto the rim.

Bias Ply Tire: A pneumatic tire in which the plies are laid at alternate angles less than 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread.

Cold Tire Pressure: The amount of air pressure in a tire, measured in pounds per square inch (psi) or kilopascals (kPa) before a tire has built up heat from driving. See *Inflation - Tire Pressure on page 5-52*.

Curb Weight: The weight of a motor vehicle with standard and optional equipment including the maximum capacity of fuel, oil, and coolant, but without passengers and cargo.

DOT Markings: A code molded into the sidewall of a tire signifying that the tire is in compliance with the U.S. Department of Transportation (DOT) motor vehicle safety standards. The DOT code includes the Tire Identification Number (TIN), an alphanumeric designator which can also identify the tire manufacturer, production plant, brand, and date of production.

GVWR: Gross Vehicle Weight Rating. See *Loading the Vehicle on page 4-21*.

GAWR FRT: Gross Axle Weight Rating for the front axle. See *Loading the Vehicle on page 4-21*.

GAWR RR: Gross Axle Weight Rating for the rear axle. See *Loading the Vehicle on page 4-21*.

Intended Outboard Sidewall: The side of an asymmetrical tire, that must always face outward when mounted on a vehicle.

Kilopascal (kPa): The metric unit for air pressure.

Light Truck (LT-Metric) Tire: A tire used on light duty trucks and some multipurpose passenger vehicles.

Load Index: An assigned number ranging from 1 to 279 that corresponds to the load carrying capacity of a tire.

Maximum Inflation Pressure: The maximum air pressure to which a cold tire can be inflated. The maximum air pressure is molded onto the sidewall.

Maximum Load Rating: The load rating for a tire at the maximum permissible inflation pressure for that tire.

Maximum Loaded Vehicle Weight: The sum of curb weight, accessory weight, vehicle capacity weight, and production options weight.

Normal Occupant Weight: The number of occupants a vehicle is designed to seat multiplied by 150 lbs (68 kg). See *Loading the Vehicle on page 4-21*.

Occupant Distribution: Designated seating positions.

Outward Facing Sidewall: The side of an asymmetrical tire that has a particular side that faces outward when mounted on a vehicle. The side of the tire that contains a whitewall, bears white lettering, or bears manufacturer, brand, and/or model name molding that is higher or deeper than the same moldings on the other sidewall of the tire.

Passenger (P-Metric) Tire: A tire used on passenger cars and some light duty trucks and multipurpose vehicles.

Recommended Inflation Pressure: Vehicle manufacturer's recommended tire inflation pressure as shown on the tire placard. See *Inflation - Tire Pressure on page 5-52* and *Loading the Vehicle on page 4-21*.

Radial Ply Tire: A pneumatic tire in which the ply cords that extend to the beads are laid at 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread.

Rim: A metal support for a tire and upon which the tire beads are seated.

Sidewall: The portion of a tire between the tread and the bead.

Speed Rating: An alphanumeric code assigned to a tire indicating the maximum speed at which a tire can operate.

Traction: The friction between the tire and the road surface. The amount of grip provided.

Tread: The portion of a tire that comes into contact with the road.

Treadwear Indicators: Narrow bands, sometimes called wear bars, that show across the tread of a tire when only 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) of tread remains. See *When It Is Time for New Tires on page 5-60*.

UTQGS (Uniform Tire Quality Grading Standards): A tire information system that provides consumers with ratings for a tire's traction, temperature, and treadwear. Ratings are determined by tire manufacturers using government testing procedures. The ratings are molded into the sidewall of the tire. See *Uniform Tire Quality Grading on page 5-63*.

Vehicle Capacity Weight: The number of designated seating positions multiplied by 150 lbs (68 kg) plus the rated cargo load. See *Loading the Vehicle on page 4-21*.

Vehicle Maximum Load on the Tire: Load on an individual tire due to curb weight, accessory weight, occupant weight, and cargo weight.

Vehicle Placard: A label permanently attached to a vehicle showing the vehicle's capacity weight and the original equipment tire size and recommended inflation pressure. See "Tire and Loading Information Label" under *Loading the Vehicle on page 4-21*.

Inflation - Tire Pressure

Tires need the correct amount of air pressure to operate effectively.

Notice: **Do not let anyone tell you that under-inflation or over-inflation is all right. It is not. If your tires do not have enough air (under-inflation), you can get the following:**

- **Too much flexing**
- **Too much heat**
- **Tire overloading**
- **Premature or irregular wear**
- **Poor handling**
- **Reduced fuel economy**

If your tires have too much air (over-inflation), you can get the following:

- **Unusual wear**
- **Poor handling**
- **Rough ride**
- **Needless damage from road hazards**

A vehicle specific Tire and Loading Information label is attached to your vehicle. This label shows your vehicle's original equipment tires and the correct inflation pressures for your tires when they are cold. The recommended cold tire inflation pressure, shown on the label, is the minimum amount of air pressure needed to support your vehicle's maximum load carrying capacity.

For additional information regarding how much weight your vehicle can carry, and an example of the Tire and Loading Information label, see *Loading the Vehicle on page 4-21*. How you load your vehicle affects vehicle handling and ride comfort. Never load your vehicle with more weight than it was designed to carry.

When to Check

Check your tires once a month or more. Do not forget to check the compact spare tire, it should be at 60 psi (420 kPa). For additional information regarding the compact spare tire, see *Compact Spare Tire on page 5-80*.

How to Check

Use a good quality pocket-type gage to check tire pressure. You cannot tell if your tires are properly inflated simply by looking at them. Radial tires may look properly inflated even when they are under-inflated. Check the tire's inflation pressure when the tires are cold. Cold means your vehicle has been sitting for at least three hours or driven no more than 1 mile (1.6 km).

Remove the valve cap from the tire valve stem. Press the tire gage firmly onto the valve to get a pressure measurement. If the cold tire inflation pressure matches the recommended pressure on the Tire and Loading Information label, no further adjustment is necessary. If the inflation pressure is low, add air until you reach the recommended amount.

If you overfill the tire, release air by pushing on the metal stem in the center of the tire valve. Re-check the tire pressure with the tire gage.

Be sure to put the valve caps back on the valve stems. They help prevent leaks by keeping out dirt and moisture.

High-Speed Operation

⚠ CAUTION:

Driving at high speeds, 100 mph (160 km/h) or higher, puts an additional strain on tires. Sustained high-speed driving causes excessive heat build up and can cause sudden tire failure. You could have a crash and you or others could be killed. Some high-speed rated tires require inflation pressure adjustment for high speed operation. When speed limits and road conditions are such that a vehicle can be driven at high speeds, make sure the tires are rated for high speed operation, in excellent condition, and set to the correct cold tire inflation pressure for the vehicle load.

Set the cold tire inflation pressure to the maximum inflation pressure shown on the tire's sidewall, or 41 psi (282 kPa), whichever is lower. The tire's maximum load and inflation pressure is molded on the tire's sidewall, in small letters, near the rim flange. When you end high-speed driving return the tires to the cold inflation pressure shown on the Tire and Loading Information label. See *Loading the Vehicle on page 4-21* and *Inflation - Tire Pressure on page 5-52*.

Tire Pressure Monitor System

The Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) uses radio and sensor technology to check tire pressure levels. The TPMS sensors monitor the air pressure in your vehicle's tires and transmit tire pressure readings to a receiver located in the vehicle.

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated.

Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

See *Tire Pressure Monitor Operation on page 5-55* for additional information.

Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and Industry and Science Canada

The Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) operates on a radio frequency and complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference.
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

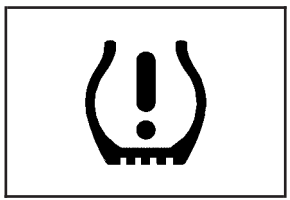
Vehicles with TPMS operate on a radio frequency and comply with RSS-210 of Industry and Science Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause interference.
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Changes or modifications to this system by other than an authorized service facility could void authorization to use this equipment.

Tire Pressure Monitor Operation

This vehicle may have a Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS). The TPMS is designed to warn the driver when a low tire pressure condition exists. TPMS sensors are mounted onto each tire and wheel assembly, excluding the spare tire and wheel assembly. The TPMS sensors monitor the air pressure in the vehicle's tires and transmits the tire pressure readings to a receiver located in the vehicle.



When a low tire pressure condition is detected, the TPMS turns on the low tire pressure warning light located on the instrument panel cluster.

At the same time a message to check the pressure in a specific tire appears on the Driver Information Center (DIC) display. The low tire pressure warning light and the DIC warning message come on at each ignition cycle until the tires are inflated to the correct inflation pressure. Using the DIC, tire pressure levels can be viewed by the driver. For additional information and details about the DIC operation and displays see *DIC Operation and Displays on page 3-43* and *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-45*.

The low tire pressure warning light may come on in cool weather when the vehicle is first started, and then turn off as you start to drive. This could be an early indicator that the air pressure in the tire(s) are getting low and need to be inflated to the proper pressure.

A Tire and Loading Information label shows the size of your vehicle's original equipment tires and the correct inflation pressure for your vehicle's tires when they are cold. See *Loading the Vehicle on page 4-21*, for an example of the Tire and Loading Information label and its location on your vehicle. Also see *Inflation - Tire Pressure on page 5-52*.

Your vehicle's TPMS system can warn you about a low tire pressure condition but it does not replace normal tire maintenance. See *Tire Inspection and Rotation on page 5-59* and *Tires on page 5-45*.

Notice: **Liquid tire sealants could damage the Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) sensors. Sensor damage caused by using a tire sealant is not covered by your warranty. Do not use liquid tire sealants.**

TPMS Malfunction Light and Message

The TPMS will not function properly if one or more of the TPMS sensors are missing or inoperable. When the system detects a malfunction, the low tire warning light flashes for about one minute and then stays on for the remainder of the ignition cycle. A DIC warning message is also displayed. The low tire warning light and DIC warning message come on at each ignition cycle until the problem is corrected. Some of the conditions that can cause the malfunction light and DIC message to come on are:

- One of the road tires has been replaced with the spare tire. The spare tire does not have a TPMS sensor. The TPMS malfunction light and DIC message should go off once you re-install the road tire containing the TPMS sensor.
- The TPMS sensor matching process was started but not completed or not completed successfully after rotating the vehicle's tires. The DIC message and TPMS malfunction light should go off once the TPMS sensor matching process is performed successfully. See "TPMS Sensor Matching Process" later in this section.

- One or more TPMS sensors are missing or damaged. The DIC message and the TPMS malfunction light should go off when the TPMS sensors are installed and the sensor matching process is performed successfully. See your dealer/retailer for service.
- Replacement tires or wheels do not match your vehicle's original equipment tires or wheels. Tires and wheels other than those recommended for your vehicle could prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. See *Buying New Tires on page 5-61*.
- Operating electronic devices or being near facilities using radio wave frequencies similar to the TPMS could cause the TPMS sensors to malfunction.

If the TPMS is not functioning it cannot detect or signal a low tire condition. See your dealer/retailer for service if the TPMS malfunction light and DIC message comes on and stays on.

TPMS Sensor Matching Process

Each TPMS sensor has a unique identification code. Any time you replace one or more of the TPMS sensors or rotate the vehicle's tires, the identification codes need to be matched to the new tire/wheel location. The sensors are matched, to the tire/wheel locations, in the following order: driver side front tire, passenger side front tire, passenger side rear tire, and driver side rear tire using a TPMS diagnostic tool. See your dealer/retailer for service.

The TPMS sensors can also be matched to each tire/wheel position by increasing or decreasing the tire's air pressure. When increasing the tire's pressure, do not exceed the maximum inflation pressure indicated on the tire's sidewall. To decrease the tire's air-pressure use the pointed end of the valve cap, a pencil-style air pressure gage, or a key.

You have two minutes to match each tire and wheel position. If it takes longer than two minutes to match any tire and wheel position, the matching process stops and you need to start over.

The TPMS matching process is outlined below:

1. Set the parking brake.
2. Turn the ignition switch to ON/RUN with the engine off.
3. Press and hold the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter's LOCK and UNLOCK buttons, at the same time, for about five seconds to start the TPMS learn mode. The horn sounds twice indicating the TPMS receiver is ready and in learn mode.
4. Start with the driver side front tire. The driver side front turn signal also comes on to indicate that corner's sensor is ready to be learned.
5. Remove the valve cap from the tire's valve stem. Activate the TPMS sensor by increasing or decreasing the tire's air pressure for about eight seconds. The horn chirp, can take up to 30 seconds to sound. It chirps one time and then all the turn signals flash one time to confirm the sensor identification code has been matched to the tire/wheel position.
6. The passenger side front turn signal comes on to indicate that corner sensor is ready to be learned. Proceed to the passenger side front tire and repeat the procedure in Step 5.
7. The passenger side rear turn signal comes on to indicate that corner sensor is ready to be learned. Proceed to the passenger side rear tire and repeat the procedure in Step 5.
8. The driver side rear turn signal comes on to indicate that corner sensor is ready to be learned. Proceed to the driver side rear tire, and repeat the procedure in Step 5.
9. After hearing the single horn chirp for the driver side rear tire, two additional horn chirps sound to indicate the tire learning process is done. Turn the ignition switch to LOCK/OFF.

   If no tires are learned after entering the TPMS learn mode, or if communication with the receiver stops, or if the time limit has expired, turn the ignition switch to LOCK/OFF and start over beginning with Step 2.
10. Set all four tires to the recommended air pressure level as indicated on the Tire and Loading Information label.
11. Put the valve caps back on the valve stems.

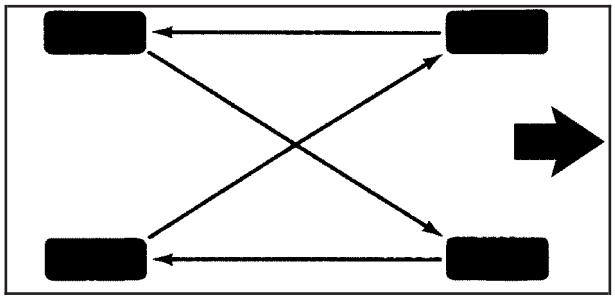
Tire Inspection and Rotation

We recommend that you regularly inspect your vehicle's tires, including the spare tire, for signs of wear or damage. See *When It Is Time for New Tires on page 5-60* for more information.

Tires should be rotated every 5,000 to 8,000 miles (8 000 to 13 000 km). See *Scheduled Maintenance on page 6-4*.

The purpose of a regular tire rotation is to achieve a uniform wear for all tires on the vehicle. This will ensure that your vehicle continues to perform most like it did when the tires were new.

Any time you notice unusual wear, rotate the tires as soon as possible and check wheel alignment. Also check for damaged tires or wheels. See *When It Is Time for New Tires on page 5-60* and *Wheel Replacement on page 5-65*.



When rotating the vehicle's tires, always use the correct rotation pattern shown here.

Do not include the compact spare tire in the tire rotation.

After the tires have been rotated, adjust the front and rear inflation pressures as shown on the Tire and Loading Information label. See *Inflation - Tire Pressure on page 5-52* and *Loading the Vehicle on page 4-21*.

Reset the Tire Pressure Monitor System. See *Tire Pressure Monitor Operation on page 5-55*.

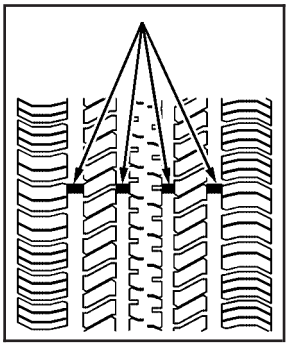
Make certain that all wheel nuts are properly tightened. See “Wheel Nut Torque” under *Capacities and Specifications on page 5-100*.

⚠ CAUTION:

Rust or dirt on a wheel, or on the parts to which it is fastened, can make wheel nuts become loose after time. The wheel could come off and cause an accident. When you change a wheel, remove any rust or dirt from places where the wheel attaches to the vehicle. In an emergency, you can use a cloth or a paper towel to do this; but be sure to use a scraper or wire brush later, if needed, to get all the rust or dirt off. See *Changing a Flat Tire on page 5-68*.

When It Is Time for New Tires

Various factors, such as maintenance, temperatures, driving speeds, vehicle loading, and road conditions influence when you need new tires.



One way to tell when it is time for new tires is to check the treadwear indicators, which will appear when your tires have only 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) or less of tread remaining.

You need new tires if any of the following statements are true:

- You can see the indicators at three or more places around the tire.
- You can see cord or fabric showing through the tire's rubber.
- The tread or sidewall is cracked, cut, or snagged deep enough to show cord or fabric.
- The tire has a bump, bulge, or split.
- The tire has a puncture, cut, or other damage that cannot be repaired well because of the size or location of the damage.

The rubber in tires degrades over time, even if they are not being used. This is also true for the spare tire, if your vehicle has one. Multiple conditions affect how fast this aging takes place, including temperatures, loading conditions, and inflation pressure maintenance. With proper care and maintenance tires will typically wear out before they degrade due to age. If you are unsure about the need to replace your tires as they get older, consult the tire manufacturer for more information.

Buying New Tires

GM has developed and matched specific tires for your vehicle. The original equipment tires installed on your vehicle, when it was new, were designed to meet General Motors Tire Performance Criteria Specification (TPC Spec) system rating. If you need replacement tires, GM strongly recommends that you get tires with the same TPC Spec rating. This way, your vehicle will continue to have tires that are designed to give the same performance and vehicle safety, during normal use, as the original tires.

GM's exclusive TPC Spec system considers over a dozen critical specifications that impact the overall performance of your vehicle, including brake system performance, ride and handling, traction control, and tire pressure monitoring performance. GM's TPC Spec number is molded onto the tire's sidewall near the tire size. If the tires have an all-season tread design, the TPC Spec number will be followed by an MS for mud and snow. See *Tire Sidewall Labeling on page 5-46* for additional information.

GM recommends replacing tires in sets of four. This is because uniform tread depth on all tires will help keep your vehicle performing most like it did when the tires were new. Replacing less than a full set of tires can affect the braking and handling performance of your vehicle. See *Tire Inspection and Rotation on page 5-59* for information on proper tire rotation.

⚠ CAUTION:

Mixing tires could cause you to lose control while driving. If you mix tires of different sizes, brands, or types (radial and bias-belted tires), the vehicle may not handle properly, and you could have a crash. Using tires of different sizes, brands, or types may also cause damage to your vehicle. Be sure to use the correct size, brand, and type of tires on all wheels. It is all right to drive with your compact spare temporarily, as it was developed for use on your vehicle. See *Compact Spare Tire on page 5-80*.

⚠ CAUTION:

If you use bias-ply tires on the vehicle, the wheel rim flanges could develop cracks after many miles of driving. A tire and/or wheel could fail suddenly, causing a crash. Use only radial-ply tires with the wheels on the vehicle.

If you must replace your vehicle's tires with those that do not have a TPC Spec number, make sure they are the same size, load range, speed rating, and construction type (radial and bias-belted tires) as your vehicle's original tires.

Vehicles that have a tire pressure monitoring system could give an inaccurate low-pressure warning if non-TPC Spec rated tires are installed on your vehicle. Non-TPC Spec rated tires may give a low-pressure warning that is higher or lower than the proper warning level you would get with TPC Spec rated tires. See *Tire Pressure Monitor System on page 5-54*.

Your vehicle's original equipment tires are listed on the Tire and Loading Information Label. See *Loading the Vehicle on page 4-21*, for more information about the Tire and Loading Information Label and its location on your vehicle.

Different Size Tires and Wheels

If you add wheels or tires that are a different size than your original equipment wheels and tires, this may affect the way your vehicle performs, including its braking, ride and handling characteristics, stability, and resistance to rollover. Additionally, if your vehicle has electronic systems such as, anti-lock brakes, traction control, and stability control, the performance of these systems can be affected.

⚠ CAUTION:

If you add different sized wheels, your vehicle may not provide an acceptable level of performance and safety if tires not recommended for those wheels are selected. You may increase the chance that you will crash and suffer serious injury. Only use Saturn specific wheel and tire systems developed for your vehicle, and have them properly installed by a Saturn certified technician.

See *Buying New Tires on page 5-61* and *Accessories and Modifications on page 5-3* for additional information.

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width. For example:

Treadwear 200 Traction AA Temperature A

The following information relates to the system developed by the United States National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA), which grades tires by treadwear, traction, and temperature performance. This applies only to vehicles sold in the United States. The grades are molded on the sidewalls of most passenger car tires. The Uniform Tire Quality Grading (UTQG) system does not apply to deep tread, winter-type snow tires, space-saver, or temporary use spare tires, tires with nominal rim diameters of 10 to 12 inches (25 to 30 cm), or to some limited-production tires.

While the tires available on General Motors passenger cars and light trucks may vary with respect to these grades, they must also conform to federal safety requirements and additional General Motors Tire Performance Criteria (TPC) standards.

Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and a half (1.5) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices, and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction – AA, A, B, C

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C. Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

Temperature – A, B, C

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure.
The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law. It should be noted that the temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

Wheel Alignment and Tire Balance

The tires and wheels on your vehicle were aligned and balanced carefully at the factory to give you the longest tire life and best overall performance. Adjustments to wheel alignment and tire balancing will not be necessary on a regular basis. However, if you notice unusual tire wear or your vehicle pulling to one side or the other, the alignment might need to be checked. If you notice your vehicle vibrating when driving on a smooth road, the tires and wheels might need to be rebalanced. See your dealer/retailer for proper diagnosis.

Wheel Replacement

Replace any wheel that is bent, cracked or badly rusted or corroded. If wheel nuts keep coming loose, the wheel, wheel bolts and wheel nuts should be replaced. If the wheel leaks air, replace it (except some aluminum wheels, which can sometimes be repaired). See your dealer/retailer if any of these conditions exist.

Your dealer/retailer will know the kind of wheel you need.

Each new wheel should have the same load-carrying capacity, diameter, width, offset and be mounted the same way as the one it replaces.

If you need to replace any of your wheels, wheel bolts or wheel nuts, replace them only with new Saturn original equipment parts. This way, you will be sure to have the right wheel, wheel bolts and wheel nuts for your vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION:

Using the wrong replacement wheels, wheel bolts, or wheel nuts on your vehicle can be dangerous. It could affect the braking and handling of your vehicle, make your tires lose air and make you lose control. You could have a collision in which you or others could be injured. Always use the correct wheel, wheel bolts, and wheel nuts for replacement.

Notice: **The wrong wheel can also cause problems with bearing life, brake cooling, speedometer or odometer calibration, headlamp aim, bumper height, vehicle ground clearance, and tire or tire chain clearance to the body and chassis.**

See *Changing a Flat Tire on page 5-68* for more information.

Used Replacement Wheels

⚠ CAUTION:

Putting a used wheel on your vehicle is dangerous. You cannot know how it has been used or how far it has been driven. It could fail suddenly and cause a crash. If you have to replace a wheel, use a new Saturn original equipment wheel.

Tire Chains

⚠ CAUTION:

Do not use tire chains. There is not enough clearance. Tire chains used on a vehicle without the proper amount of clearance can cause damage to the brakes, suspension or other vehicle parts. The area damaged by the tire chains could cause you to lose control of the vehicle and you or others may be injured in a crash.

Use another type of traction device only if its manufacturer recommends it for use on the vehicle and tire size combination and road conditions. Follow that manufacturer's instructions. To help avoid damage to the vehicle, drive slowly, readjust or remove the device if it is contacting the vehicle, and do not spin the vehicle's wheels. If you do find traction devices that will fit, install them on the front tires.

If a Tire Goes Flat

It is unusual for a tire to blowout while you are driving, especially if you maintain your vehicle's tires properly. If air goes out of a tire, it is much more likely to leak out slowly. But if you should ever have a blowout, here are a few tips about what to expect and what to do:

If a front tire fails, the flat tire creates a drag that pulls the vehicle toward that side. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal and grip the steering wheel firmly. Steer to maintain lane position, and then gently brake to a stop well out of the traffic lane.

A rear blowout, particularly on a curve, acts much like a skid and may require the same correction you would use in a skid. In any rear blowout remove your foot from the accelerator pedal. Get the vehicle under control by steering the way you want the vehicle to go. It may be very bumpy and noisy, but you can still steer. Gently brake to a stop, well off the road if possible.

⚠ CAUTION:

Lifting a vehicle and getting under it to do maintenance or repairs is dangerous without the appropriate safety equipment and training. If a jack is provided with the vehicle, it is designed only for changing a flat tire. If it is used for anything else, you or others could be badly injured or killed if the vehicle slips off the jack. If a jack is provided with the vehicle, only use it for changing a flat tire.

If a tire goes flat, the next part shows how to use the jacking equipment to change a flat tire safely.

Changing a Flat Tire

If a tire goes flat, avoid further tire and wheel damage by driving slowly to a level place. Turn on the hazard warning flashers. See *Hazard Warning Flashers on page 3-6*.

⚠ CAUTION:

Changing a tire can be dangerous. The vehicle can slip off the jack and roll over or fall on you or other people. You and they could be badly injured or even killed. Find a level place to change your tire. To help prevent the vehicle from moving:

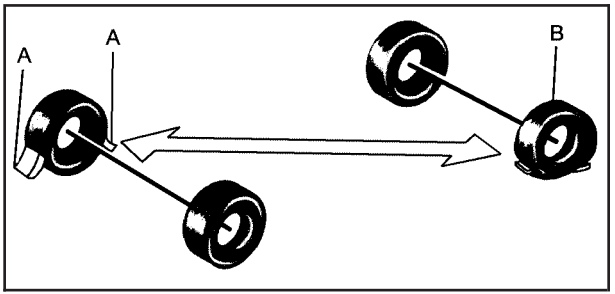
1. Set the parking brake firmly.
2. Put the shift lever in P (Park).
3. Turn off the engine and do not restart while the vehicle is raised.
4. Do not allow passengers to remain in the vehicle.

CAUTION: (Continued)

CAUTION: (Continued)

To be even more certain the vehicle will not move, you should put blocks at the front and rear of the tire farthest away from the one being changed. That would be the tire, on the other side, at the opposite end of the vehicle.

When the vehicle has a flat tire (B), use the following example as a guide to assist you in the placement of wheel blocks (A).



A. Wheel Block

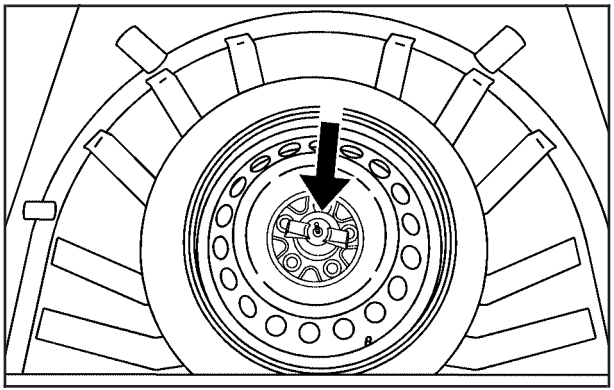
B. Flat Tire

The following information explains how to use the jack and change a tire.

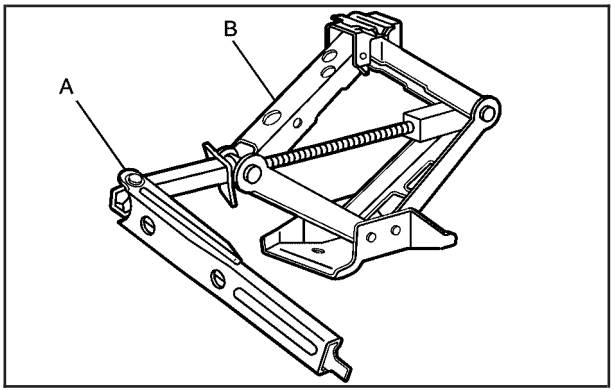
Removing the Spare Tire and Tools

The equipment you will need is located in the trunk.

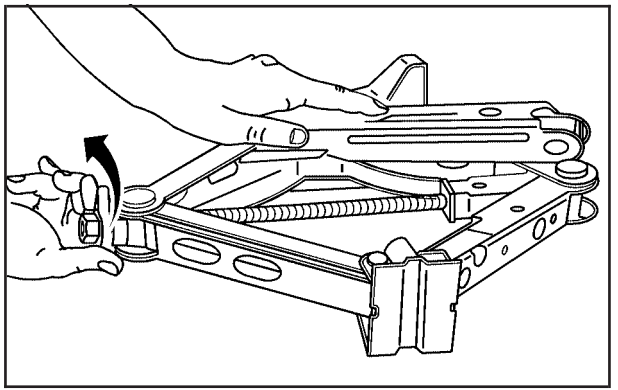
1. Open the trunk. See *Trunk on page 2-13*.
2. Remove the spare tire cover.



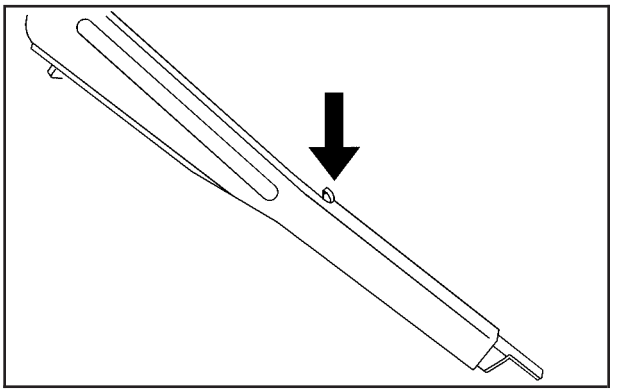
3. Turn the wing nut counterclockwise and remove it. Then remove the compact spare tire. See *Compact Spare Tire on page 5-80*.
4. Remove the wing nut holding the jack in place.
5. Remove the extension bolt that is clipped to the jack. You need this later to store the flat tire.
6. Remove the jack and wheel wrench from the trunk.



The tools you will be using include the wheel wrench (A) and jack (B).



1. Turn the plastic wing nut counterclockwise to loosen the wheel wrench.
2. Unhook the wheel wrench from the jack.

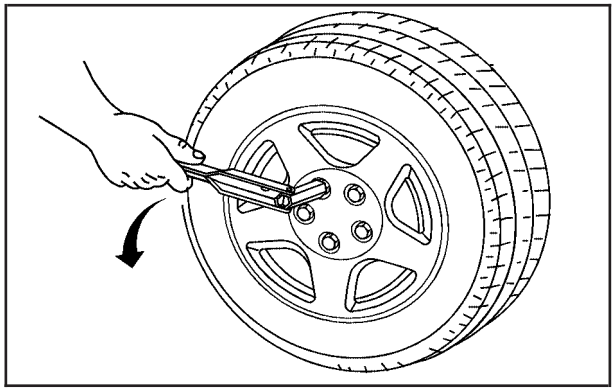


3. Extend the handle on the wheel wrench by pressing the button and pulling on the end of the wrench. You must do this before using the wheel wrench.

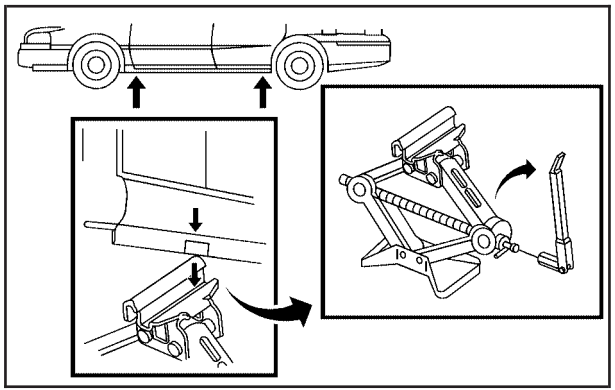
Removing the Flat Tire and Installing the Spare Tire

1. Do a safety check before proceeding. See *Changing a Flat Tire on page 5-68*.
2. If the vehicle has a wheel cover or hubcap that has plastic wheel nut caps, loosen the plastic nut caps. You might need to use the wheel wrench to loosen them. Do not pry off wheel covers or center caps that have plastic wheel nut caps.
3. Remove the wheel cover or center cap from the wheel to locate the wheel nuts.

   If the vehicle has a wheel cover or hubcap without plastic wheel nut caps, gently pry on the edge of the plastic wheel trim to remove it from the wheel to locate the wheel nuts.



4. Use the wrench to loosen all the wheel nuts. Do not remove them yet.



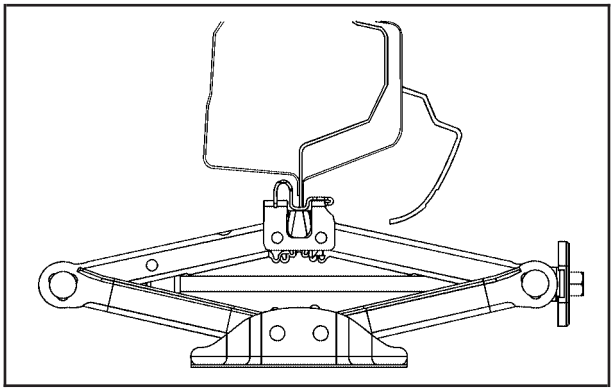
5. Position the lift head at the jack location nearest the flat tire. Make sure all of the jack lift head is touching the jacking flange under the body. Do not place the jack under a body panel.
6. Put the compact spare tire near the flat tire.

⚠ CAUTION:

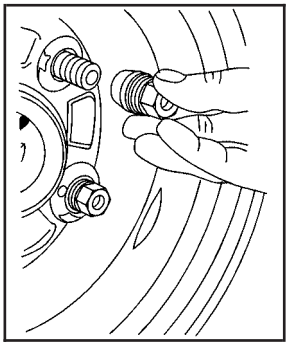
Getting under a vehicle when it is jacked up is dangerous. If the vehicle slips off the jack, you could be badly injured or killed. Never get under a vehicle when it is supported only by a jack.

⚠ CAUTION:

Raising your vehicle with the jack improperly positioned can damage the vehicle and even make the vehicle fall. To help avoid personal injury and vehicle damage, be sure to fit the jack lift head into the proper location before raising the vehicle.



7. Raise the vehicle by turning the wrench clockwise. Raise the vehicle far enough off the ground so there is enough room for the compact spare tire to fit.

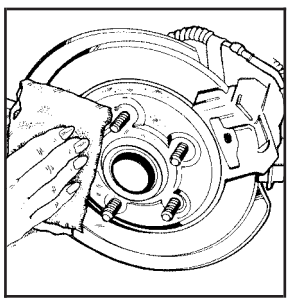


8. Remove all of the wheel nuts.

9. Remove the flat tire.

⚠ CAUTION:

Rust or dirt on a wheel, or on the parts to which it is fastened, can make wheel nuts become loose after time. The wheel could come off and cause an accident. When changing a wheel, remove any rust or dirt from places where the wheel attaches to the vehicle. In an emergency, use a cloth or a paper towel to do this; but be sure to use a scraper or wire brush later, if needed, to get all the rust or dirt off. See *Changing a Flat Tire on page 5-68*.



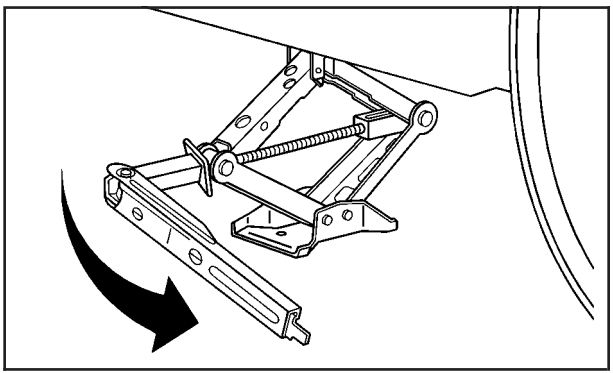
10. Remove any rust or dirt from the wheel bolts, mounting surfaces and spare wheel.

11. Install the compact spare tire.

⚠ CAUTION:

Never use oil or grease on bolts or nuts because the nuts might come loose. The vehicle's wheel could fall off, causing a crash.

12. Put the wheel nuts back on with the rounded end toward the wheel. Tighten each nut by hand or with the wrench until the wheel is held against the hub.

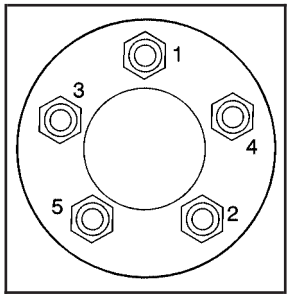


13. Lower the vehicle by turning the wrench counterclockwise. Lower the jack completely.

⚠ CAUTION:

Wheel nuts that are improperly or incorrectly tightened can cause the wheels to become loose or come off. The wheel nuts should be tightened with a torque wrench to the proper torque specification after replacing. Follow the torque specification supplied by the aftermarket manufacturer when using accessory locking wheel nuts. See *Capacities and Specifications on page 5-100* for original equipment wheel nut torque specifications.

Notice: **Improperly tightened wheel nuts can lead to brake pulsation and rotor damage. To avoid expensive brake repairs, evenly tighten the wheel nuts in the proper sequence and to the proper torque specification. See *Capacities and Specifications on page 5-100* for the wheel nut torque specification.**



14. Tighten the wheel nuts firmly in a crisscross sequence, as shown, with the wheel wrench.

Notice: **Wheel covers will not fit on your vehicle's compact spare. If you try to put a wheel cover on the compact spare, the cover or the spare could be damaged.**

Do not try to put a wheel cover on your compact spare tire. It will not fit. Store the wheel cover and wheel nut caps in the trunk until you have the flat tire repaired or replaced.

Storing a Flat or Spare Tire and Tools

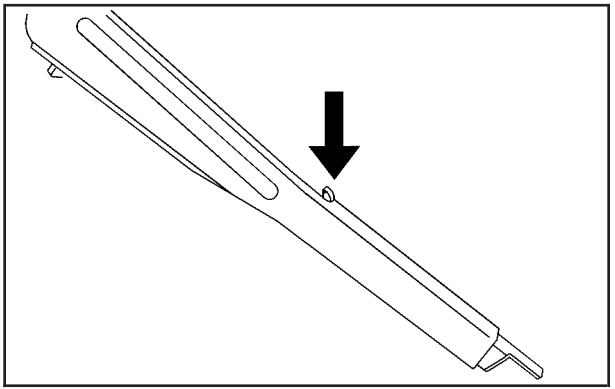
Storing a Flat Tire and Tools

⚠ CAUTION:

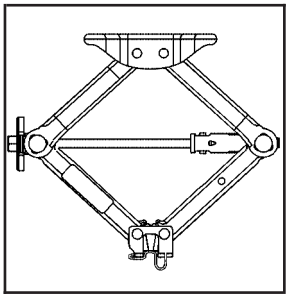
Storing a jack, a tire, or other equipment in the passenger compartment of the vehicle could cause injury. In a sudden stop or collision, loose equipment could strike someone. Store all these in the proper place.

To store the flat tire and tools in the compact spare tire compartment:

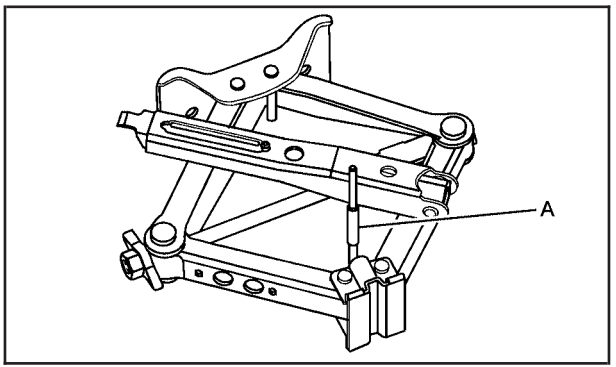
1. Open the trunk. See *Trunk on page 2-13*.
2. Remove the bolt extension (in the yellow sleeve) from the jack and remove the center cap from the wheel.



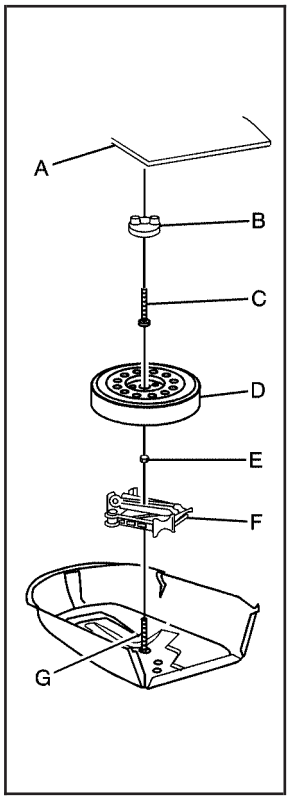
3. Collapse the wrench using the same button used to extend it.
4. Attach the wrench to the jack by placing the tab on the wrench into the hole on the side of the jack. Then place the wrench handle over the tab on the side of the jack.



5. Raise the jack to the height shown and lock the wrench onto the jack.



6. Place the jack over the bolt (A) on the floor, making sure it contacts the bolt. Thread the jack retainer nut until it contacts the jack.
7. With the valve stem up, place the tire on the compartment floor with the rear of the tire under the trim panel. The tire may not lay completely flat.
8. Line up the bolt with the wheel center.
9. With the yellow cap in place to prevent the wheel from being scratched, screw the bolt extension onto the bolt through the wheel center hole.
10. Remove the yellow cap from the bolt extension.
11. Secure the tire and wheel with the larger wing nut.



A. Cover
B. Wing Nut
C. Extension
D. Flat Tire (valve stem up)
E. Nut
F. Jack
G. Bolt

The compact spare is for temporary use only. Replace the compact spare tire with a full-size tire as soon as you can. See *Compact Spare Tire on page 5-80*.

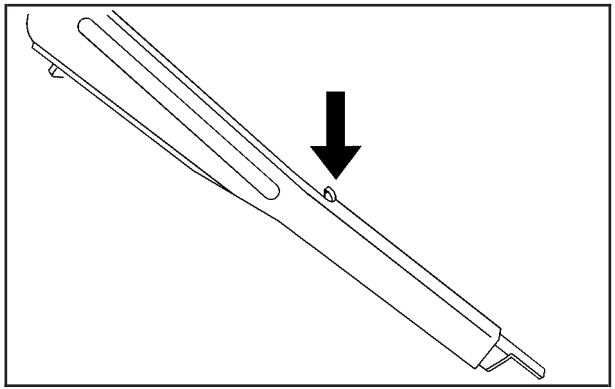
Storing the Spare Tire and Tools

⚠ CAUTION:

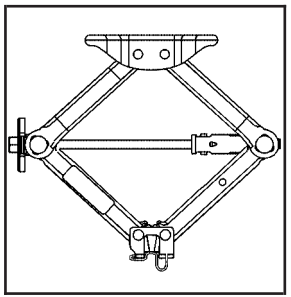
Storing a jack, a tire, or other equipment in the passenger compartment of the vehicle could cause injury. In a sudden stop or collision, loose equipment could strike someone. Store all these in the proper place.

To store the spare tire and jack in the compact spare tire compartment:

1. Open the trunk. See *Trunk on page 2-13*.



2. Collapse the wrench using the same button used to extend it.
3. Attach the wrench to the jack by placing the tab on the wrench into the hole on the side of the jack. Then place the wrench handle over the tab on the side of the jack.



4. Raise the jack to the height shown and lock the wrench onto the jack.

5. Place the jack in the spare tire well. Make sure the stow bolt goes through the hole in the center of the wrench on the jack, with the base of the jack towards the front of the vehicle. Turn the jack retainer nut until it firmly contacts the wrench. Do not over tighten.
6. Place the compact spare into the tire compartment with the stow bolt going through the center hole of the wheel.
7. Turn the spare tire retainer nut until it firmly contacts the wheel. Do not over tighten.

Compact Spare Tire

⚠ CAUTION:

Driving with more than one compact spare tire at a time could result in loss of braking and handling. This could lead to a crash and you or others could be injured. Use only one compact spare tire at a time.

Although the compact spare tire was fully inflated when the vehicle was new, it can lose air after a time. Check the inflation pressure regularly. It should be 60 psi (420 kPa).

After installing the compact spare on the vehicle, stop as soon as possible and make sure the spare tire is correctly inflated. The compact spare is made to perform well at speeds up to 65 mph (105 km/h) for distances up to 3,000 miles (5 000 km), so you can finish your trip and have the full-size tire repaired or replaced at your convenience. Of course, it is best to replace the spare with a full-size tire as soon as possible. The spare tire will last longer and be in good shape in case it is needed again.

Notice: **When the compact spare is installed, do not take the vehicle through an automatic car wash with guide rails. The compact spare can get caught on the rails which can damage the tire, wheel and other parts of the vehicle.**

Do not use the compact spare on other vehicles.

And do not mix the compact spare tire or wheel with other wheels or tires. They will not fit. Keep the spare tire and its wheel together.

Notice: **Tire chains will not fit the compact spare. Using them can damage the vehicle and can damage the chains too. Do not use tire chains on the compact spare.**

Appearance Care

Interior Cleaning

The vehicle's interior will continue to look its best if it is cleaned often. Although not always visible, dust and dirt can accumulate on the upholstery. Dirt can damage carpet, fabric, leather, and plastic surfaces. Regular vacuuming is recommended to remove particles from the upholstery. It is important to keep the upholstery from becoming and remaining heavily soiled. Soils should be removed as quickly as possible. The vehicle's interior may experience extremes of heat that could cause stains to set rapidly.

Lighter colored interiors may require more frequent cleaning. Use care because newspapers and garments that transfer color to home furnishings may also transfer color to the vehicle's interior.

When cleaning the vehicle's interior, only use cleaners specifically designed for the surfaces being cleaned. Permanent damage may result from using cleaners on surfaces for which they were not intended. Use glass cleaner only on glass. Remove any accidental over-spray from other surfaces immediately. To prevent over-spray, apply cleaner directly to the cleaning cloth.

Notice: **Using abrasive cleaners when cleaning glass surfaces on the vehicle, could scratch the glass and/or cause damage to the rear window defogger. When cleaning the glass on the vehicle, use only a soft cloth and glass cleaner.**

Many cleaners contain solvents that may become concentrated in the vehicle's breathing space. Before using cleaners, read and adhere to all safety instructions on the label. While cleaning the vehicle's interior, maintain adequate ventilation by opening the vehicle's doors and windows.

Dust may be removed from small buttons and knobs using a small brush with soft bristles.

Products that remove odors from the vehicle's upholstery and clean the vehicle's glass can be obtained from your dealer/retailer.

Do not clean the vehicle using:

- A knife or any other sharp object to remove a soil from any interior surface.
- A stiff brush. It can cause damage to the vehicle's interior surfaces.
- Heavy pressure or aggressive rubbing with a cleaning cloth. Use of heavy pressure can damage the interior and does not improve the effectiveness of soil removal.
- Laundry detergents or dishwashing soaps with degreasers can leave residue that streaks and attracts dirt. For liquid cleaners, about 20 drops per gallon (3.78 L) of water is a good guide. Use only mild, neutral-pH soaps.
- Too much cleaner that saturates the upholstery.
- Organic solvents such as naptha, alcohol, etc. that can damage the vehicle's interior.

Fabric/Carpet

Use a vacuum cleaner with a soft brush attachment frequently to remove dust and loose dirt. A canister vacuum with a beater bar in the nozzle may only be used on floor carpet and carpeted floor mats. For any soil, always try to remove it first with plain water or club soda. Before cleaning, gently remove as much of the soil as possible using one of the following techniques:

- For liquids: gently blot the remaining soil with a paper towel. Allow the soil to absorb into the paper towel until no more can be removed.
- For solid dry soils: remove as much as possible and then vacuum.

To clean:

1. Saturate a lint-free, clean white cloth with water or club soda.
2. Wring the cloth to remove excess moisture.
3. Start on the outside edge of the soil and gently rub toward the center. Continue cleaning, using a clean area of the cloth each time it becomes soiled.
4. Continue to gently rub the soiled area until the cleaning cloth remains clean.
5. If the soil is not completely removed, use a mild soap solution and repeat the cleaning process that was used with plain water.

If any of the soil remains, a commercial fabric cleaner or spot lifter may be necessary. When a commercial upholstery cleaner or spot lifter is to be used, test a small hidden area for colorfastness first. If the locally cleaned area gives any impression that a ring formation may result, clean the entire surface.

After the cleaning process has been completed, a paper towel can be used to blot excess moisture from the fabric or carpet.

Leather

A soft cloth dampened with water can be used to remove dust. If a more thorough cleaning is necessary, a soft cloth dampened with a mild soap solution can be used. Allow the leather to dry naturally. Do not use heat to dry. Never use steam to clean leather. Never use spot lifters or spot removers on leather. Many commercial leather cleaners and coatings that are sold to preserve and protect leather may permanently change the appearance and feel of the leather and are not recommended. Do not use silicone or wax-based products, or those containing organic solvents to clean the vehicle's interior because they can alter the appearance by increasing the gloss in a non-uniform manner. Never use shoe polish on leather.

Instrument Panel, Vinyl, and Other Plastic Surfaces

A soft cloth dampened with water may be used to remove dust. If a more thorough cleaning is necessary, a clean soft cloth dampened with a mild soap solution can be used to gently remove dust and dirt. Never use spot lifters or removers on plastic surfaces. Many commercial cleaners and coatings that are sold to preserve and protect soft plastic surfaces may permanently change the appearance and feel of the interior and are not recommended. Do not use silicone or wax-based products, or those containing organic solvents to clean the vehicle's interior because they can alter the appearance by increasing the gloss in a non-uniform manner.

Some commercial products may increase gloss on the instrument panel. The increase in gloss may cause annoying reflections in the windshield and even make it difficult to see through the windshield under certain conditions.

Care of Safety Belts

Keep belts clean and dry.

⚠ CAUTION:

Do not bleach or dye safety belts. It may severely weaken them. In a crash, they might not be able to provide adequate protection. Clean safety belts only with mild soap and lukewarm water.

Weatherstrips

Silicone grease on weatherstrips will make them last longer, seal better, and not stick or squeak. Apply silicone grease with a clean cloth. During very cold, damp weather frequent application may be required. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 6-12*.

Washing Your Vehicle

The best way to preserve the vehicle's finish is to keep it clean by washing it often.

Notice: **Certain cleaners contain chemicals that can damage the emblems or nameplates on the vehicle. Check the cleaning product label. If it states that it should not be used on plastic parts, do not use it on the vehicle or damage may occur and it would not be covered by the warranty.**

Do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight. Use a car washing soap. Do not use cleaning agents that are petroleum based or that contain acid or abrasives, as they can damage the paint, metal or plastic on the vehicle. Approved cleaning products can be obtained from your dealer/retailer. Follow all manufacturers' directions regarding correct product usage, necessary safety precautions and appropriate disposal of any vehicle care product.

Rinse the vehicle well, before washing and after to remove all cleaning agents completely. If they are allowed to dry on the surface, they could stain.

Dry the finish with a soft, clean chamois or an all-cotton towel to avoid surface scratches and water spotting.

High pressure car washes may cause water to enter the vehicle. Avoid using high pressure washes closer than 12 inches (30 cm) to the surface of the vehicle. Use of power washers exceeding 1,200 psi (8 274 kPa) can result in damage or removal of paint and decals.

Cleaning Exterior Lamps/Lenses

Use only lukewarm or cold water, a soft cloth and a car washing soap to clean exterior lamps and lenses. Follow instructions under *Washing Your Vehicle on page 5-85*.

Finish Care

Occasional waxing or mild polishing of the vehicle by hand may be necessary to remove residue from the paint finish. Approved cleaning products can be obtained from your dealer/retailer.

If the vehicle has a basecoat/clearcoat paint finish, the clearcoat gives more depth and gloss to the colored basecoat. Always use waxes and polishes that are non-abrasive and made for a basecoat/clearcoat paint finish.

Notice: **Machine compounding or aggressive polishing on a basecoat/clearcoat paint finish may damage it. Use only non-abrasive waxes and polishes that are made for a basecoat/clearcoat paint finish on the vehicle.**

Foreign materials such as calcium chloride and other salts, ice melting agents, road oil and tar, tree sap, bird droppings, chemicals from industrial chimneys, etc., can damage the vehicle's finish if they remain on painted surfaces. Wash the vehicle as soon as possible. If necessary, use non-abrasive cleaners that are marked safe for painted surfaces to remove foreign matter.

Exterior painted surfaces are subject to aging, weather and chemical fallout that can take their toll over a period of years. To help keep the paint finish looking new, keep the vehicle garaged or covered whenever possible.

Protecting Exterior Bright Metal Parts

Bright metal parts should be cleaned regularly to keep their luster. Washing with water is all that is usually needed. However, chrome polish may be used on chrome or stainless steel trim, if necessary.

Use special care with aluminum trim. To avoid damaging protective trim, never use auto or chrome polish, steam or caustic soap to clean aluminum. A coating of wax, rubbed to high polish, is recommended for all bright metal parts.

Windshield and Wiper Blades

Clean the outside of the windshield with glass cleaner.

Clean the rubber blades using a lint free cloth or paper towel soaked with windshield washer fluid or a mild detergent. Wash the windshield thoroughly when cleaning the blades. Bugs, road grime, sap, and a buildup of vehicle wash/wax treatments may cause wiper streaking. Replace the wiper blades if they are worn or damaged.

Wipers can be damaged by:

- Extreme dusty conditions
- Sand and salt
- Heat and sun
- Snow and ice, without proper removal

Aluminum Wheels

Notice: **Chrome wheels and other chrome trim may be damaged if the vehicle is not washed after driving on roads that have been sprayed with magnesium, calcium or sodium chloride. These chlorides are used on roads for conditions such as ice and dust. Always wash the vehicle's chrome with soap and water after exposure.**

Notice: **Using strong soaps, chemicals, abrasive polishes, cleaners, brushes, or cleaners that contain acid on aluminum or chrome-plated wheels, could damage the surface of the wheel(s). The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Use only approved cleaners on aluminum or chrome-plated wheels.**

Keep the wheels clean using a soft clean cloth with mild soap and water. Rinse with clean water. After rinsing thoroughly, dry with a soft clean towel. A wax may then be applied.

Notice: **Using chrome polish on aluminum wheels could damage the wheels. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Use chrome polish on chrome wheels only.**

The surface of these wheels is similar to the painted surface of the vehicle. Do not use strong soaps, chemicals, abrasive polishes, abrasive cleaners, cleaners with acid, or abrasive cleaning brushes on them because the surface could be damaged. Do not use chrome polish on aluminum wheels.

Notice: **Driving the vehicle through an automatic car wash that has silicone carbide tire cleaning brushes, could damage the aluminum or chrome-plated wheels. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Never drive a vehicle that has aluminum or chrome-plated wheels through an automatic car wash that uses silicone carbide tire cleaning brushes.**

Tires

To clean the tires, use a stiff brush with tire cleaner.

Notice: **Using petroleum-based tire dressing products on the vehicle may damage the paint finish and/or tires. When applying a tire dressing, always wipe off any overspray from all painted surfaces on the vehicle.**

Sheet Metal Damage

If the vehicle is damaged and requires sheet metal repair or replacement, make sure the body repair shop applies anti-corrosion material to parts repaired or replaced to restore corrosion protection.

Original manufacturer replacement parts will provide the corrosion protection while maintaining the vehicle warranty.

Finish Damage

Any stone chips, fractures or deep scratches in the finish should be repaired right away. Bare metal will corrode quickly and may develop into major repair expense.

Minor chips and scratches can be repaired with touch-up materials available from your dealer/retailer. Larger areas of finish damage can be corrected in your dealer's/retailer's body and paint shop.

Underbody Maintenance

Chemicals used for ice and snow removal and dust control can collect on the underbody. If these are not removed, corrosion and rust can develop on the underbody parts such as fuel lines, frame, floor pan, and exhaust system even though they have corrosion protection.

At least every spring, flush these materials from the underbody with plain water. Clean any areas where mud and debris can collect. Dirt packed in close areas of the frame should be loosened before being flushed. Your dealer/retailer or an underbody car washing system can do this.

Chemical Paint Spotting

Some weather and atmospheric conditions can create a chemical fallout. Airborne pollutants can fall upon and attack painted surfaces on the vehicle. This damage can take two forms: blotchy, ring-shaped discolorations, and small, irregular dark spots etched into the paint surface.

Although no defect in the paint job causes this, we will repair, at no charge to the owner, the surfaces of new vehicles damaged by this fallout condition within 12 months or 12,000 miles (20 000 km) of purchase, whichever occurs first.

Vehicle Identification

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

This is the legal identifier for the vehicle. It appears on a plate in the front corner of the instrument panel, on the driver side. It can be seen through the windshield from outside the vehicle. The VIN also appears on the Vehicle Certification and Service Parts labels and the certificates of title and registration.

Engine Identification

The eighth character in the VIN is the engine code. This code helps identify the vehicle's engine, specifications, and replacement parts. See "Engine Specifications" under *Capacities and Specifications on page 5-100* for the vehicle's engine code.

Service Parts Identification Label

This label is on the inside of the glove box. It is very helpful if parts need to be ordered. The label has the following information:

- Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)
- Model designation
- Paint information
- Production options and special equipment

Do not remove this label from the vehicle.

Electrical System

Add-On Electrical Equipment

Notice: **Do not add anything electrical to the vehicle unless you check with your dealer/retailer first. Some electrical equipment can damage the vehicle and the damage would not be covered by the vehicle's warranty. Some add-on electrical equipment can keep other components from working as they should.**

Add-on equipment can drain the vehicle battery, even if the vehicle is not operating.

The vehicle has an airbag system. Before attempting to add anything electrical to the vehicle, see *Servicing Your Airbag-Equipped Vehicle on page 1-70*.

Windshield Wiper Fuses

The windshield wiper motor is protected by a circuit breaker and a fuse. If the motor overheats due to heavy snow, etc., the wiper will stop until the motor cools. If the overload is caused by some electrical problem, have it fixed.

Power Windows and Other Power Options

Fuses in the fuse block protect the power windows. When the current load is too heavy, the fuse opens protecting the circuit until the problem is fixed.

Fuses

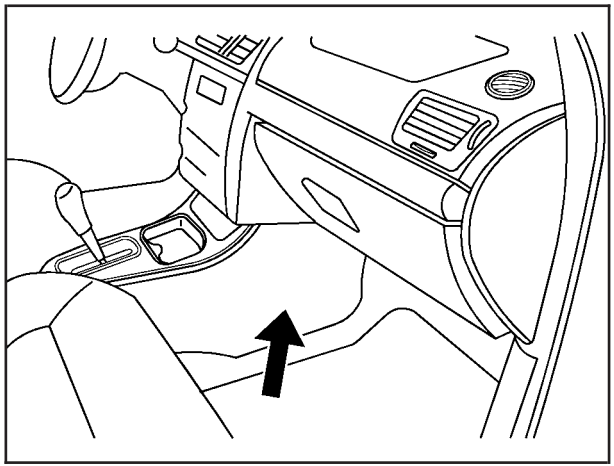
The wiring circuits in your vehicle are protected from short circuits by a combination of fuses, circuit breakers and fusible links. This greatly reduces the chance of damage caused by electrical problems.

Look at the silver-colored band inside the fuse. If the band is broken or melted, replace the fuse. Be sure to replace a bad fuse with a new one of the identical size and rating.

There are three fuse blocks in your vehicle: one in the center of the instrument panel, one in the engine compartment and one in the trunk.

There is a fuse puller located on the instrument panel fuse block. It can be used to easily remove fuses from the fuse block.

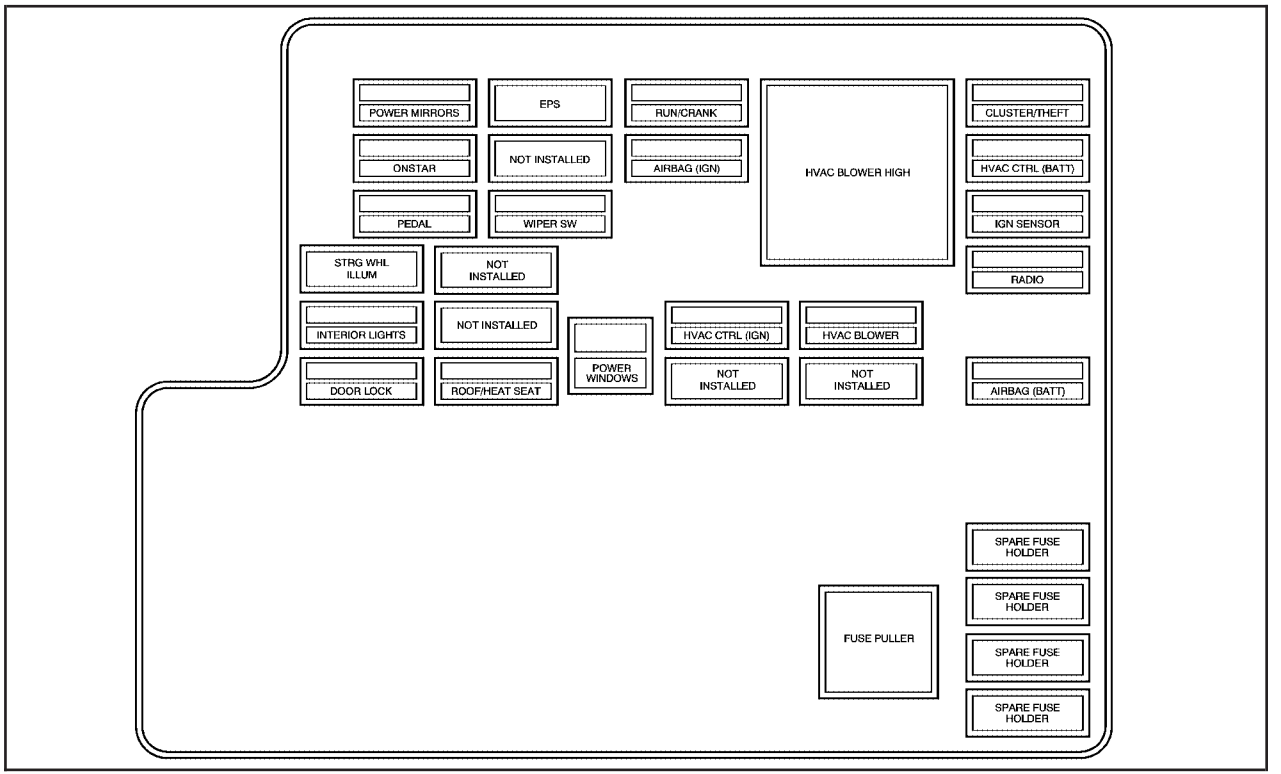
Instrument Panel Fuse Block



The instrument panel fuse block is located on the instrument panel near the floor on the passenger side of the vehicle.

Remove the panel cover to access the fuse block, then remove the fuse block cover to access the fuses.

The vehicle might not have all the fuses and features listed.


POWER MIRRORS
EPS
RUN/CRANK
HVAC BLOWER HIGH
CLUSTER/THEFT
ONSTAR
NOT INSTALLED
AIRBAG (IGN)
HVAC CTRL (BATT)
PEDAL
WIPER SW
IGN SENSOR
STRG WHL ILLUM
NOT INSTALLED
RADIO
INTERIOR LIGHTS
NOT INSTALLED
HVAC CTRL (IGN)
HVAC BLOWER
POWER WINDOWS
DOOR LOCK
ROOF/HEAT SEAT
NOT INSTALLED
NOT INSTALLED
AIRBAG (BATT)
SPARE FUSE HOLDER
SPARE FUSE HOLDER
FUSE PULLER
SPARE FUSE HOLDER
SPARE FUSE HOLDER

Fuses	Usage
POWER MIRRORS	Power Mirrors
EPS	Electronic Power Steering
RUN/CRANK	Cruise Control Switch, Passenger Airbag Status Indicator
HVAC BLOWER HIGH	Heating Ventilation Air Conditioning Blower - High Speed Relay
CLUSTER/ THEFT	Instrument Panel Cluster, Theft Deterrent System
ONSTAR	OnStar®
NOT INSTALLED	Not Used
AIRBAG (IGN)	Airbag (Ignition)
HVAC CTRL (BATT)	Heating Ventilation Air Conditioning Control Diagnostic Link Connector (Battery)
PEDAL	Not Used
WIPER SW	Windshield Wiper/Washer Switch

Fuses	Usage
IGN SENSOR	Ignition Switch
STRG WHL ILLUM	Steering Wheel Illumination
NOT INSTALLED	Not Used
RADIO	Audio System
INTERIOR LIGHTS	Interior Lamps
NOT INSTALLED	Not Used
POWER WINDOWS	Power Windows
HVAC CTRL (IGN)	Heating Ventilation Air Conditioning Control (Ignition)
HVAC BLOWER	Heating Ventilation Air Conditioning Blower Switch
DOOR LOCK	Door Locks

Fuses	Usage
ROOF/ HEAT SEAT	Sunroof, Heated Seat
NOT INSTALLED	Not Used
NOT INSTALLED	Not Used
AIRBAG (BATT)	Airbag (Battery)
SPARE FUSE HOLDER	Spare Fuse Holder
SPARE FUSE HOLDER	Spare Fuse Holder
SPARE FUSE HOLDER	Spare Fuse Holder

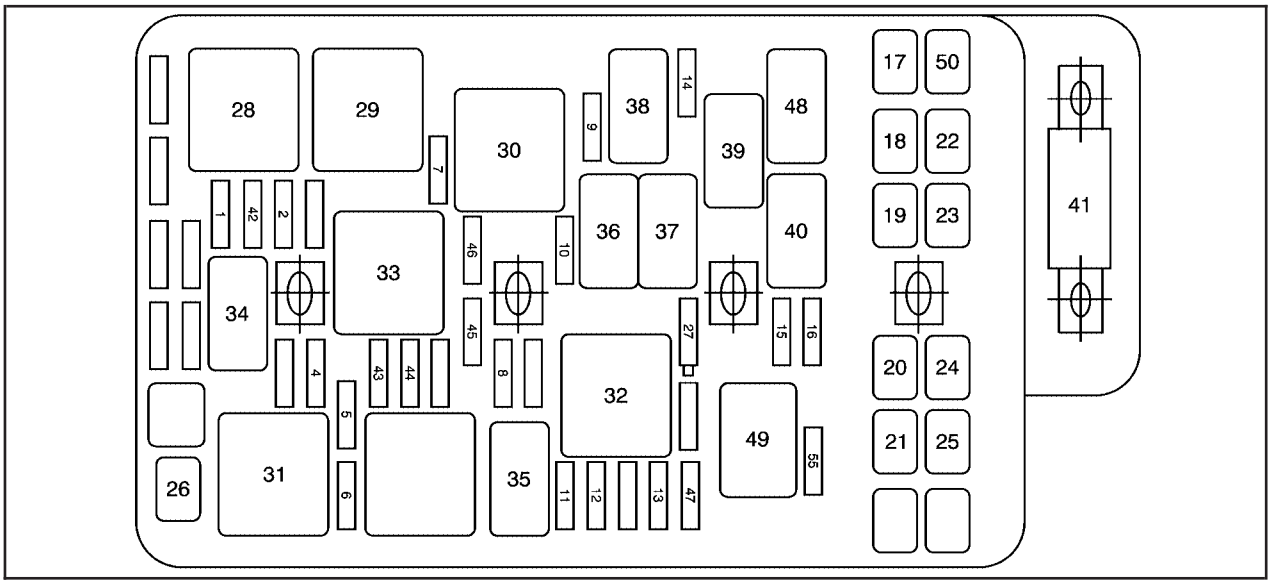
Fuses	Usage
SPARE FUSE HOLDER	Spare Fuse Holder
FUSE PULLER	Fuse Puller

Engine Compartment Fuse Block

The vehicle may not be equipped with all the fuses and features listed.

The engine compartment fuse block is located on the driver side of the engine compartment, near the battery.

Notice: **Spilling liquid on any electrical components on the vehicle may damage it. Always keep the covers on any electrical component.**



Fuses	Usage
1	Air Conditioner Clutch
2	Electronic Throttle Control
4	Transmission Control Module Ignition 1

Fuses	Usage
5	Mass Airflow Sensor (LY7)
6	Emission
7	Left Headlamp Low-Beam

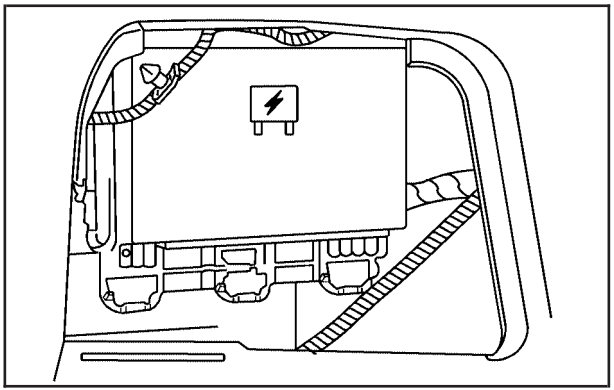
Fuses	Usage
8	Horn
9	Right Headlamp Low-Beam
10	Front Fog Lamps
11	Left Headlamp High-Beam
12	Right Headlamp High-Beam
13	Engine Control Module BATT (LY7 & LE5)
14	Windshield Wiper
15	Antilock Brake System (IGN 1)
16	Engine Control Module IGN 1 (LY7 & LE5)
17	Cooling Fan 1
18	Cooling Fan 2
19	Run Relay, Heating, Ventilation, Air Conditioning Blower
20	Body Control Module 1
21	Body Control Module Run/Crank
22	Rear Electrical Center 1

Fuses	Usage
23	Rear Electrical Center 2
24	Antilock Brake System
25	Body Control Module 2
26	Starter
41	Electric Power Steering
42	Transmission Control Module Battery
43	Ignition Module (LE5); Injectors, Ignition Coils Odd (LY7)
44	Injectors (LE5); Injectors, Ignition Coils Even (LY7)
45	Post Cat 02 Sensor Heaters (LY7)
46	Daytime Running Lamps
47	Center High-Mounted Stoplamp
50	Driver Power Window
52	AIR Solenoid
54	Regulated Voltage Control
55	Antilock Brake System BATT

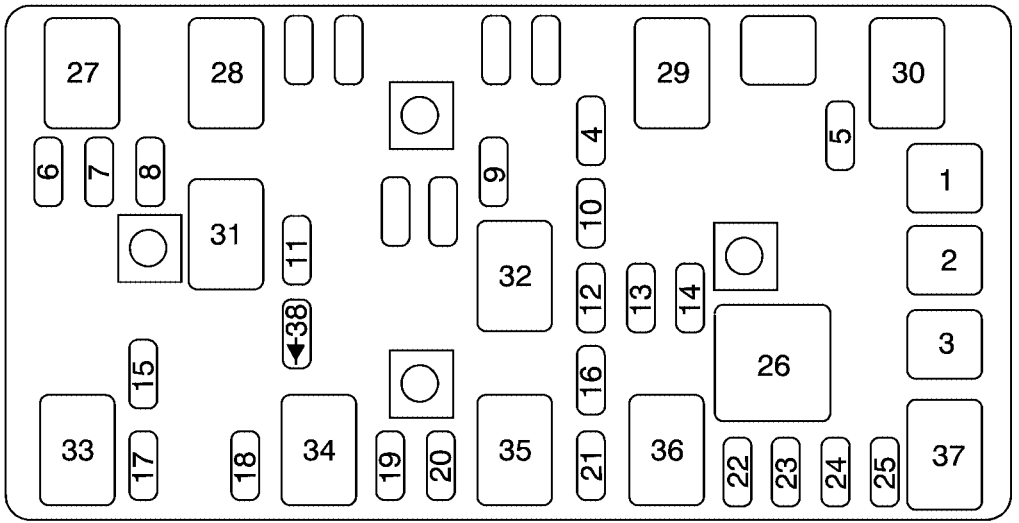
Relays	Usage
28	Cooling Fan 1
29	Cooling Fan Series/Parallel
30	Cooling Fan 2
31	Starter
32	Run/Crank, Ignition
33	Powertrain
34	Air Conditioning Clutch
35	High Beam
36	Front Fog Lamps
37	Horn
38	Low-Beam Headlamp
39	Windshield Wiper 1
40	Windshield Wiper 2
48	Daytime Running Lamps
49	Stoplamps
53	AIR Solenoid

Diodes	Usage
27	Wiper

Rear Compartment Fuse Block



The rear compartment fuse block is located in the trunk of the vehicle. Access the fuse block through the trunk panel on the driver side of the rear cargo area.



Fuses	Usage
1	Passenger Seat Controls
2	Driver Seat Controls
3	Not Used

Fuses	Usage
4	Not Used
5	Emission 2, Canister Vent Solenoid

Fuses	Usage
6	Park Lamps, Instrument Panel Dimming
7	Not Used
8	Not Used
9	Not Used
10	Sunroof Controls
11	Not Used
12	Not Used
13	Audio Amplifier
14	Heated Seat Controls
15	Not Used
16	Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System, XM™ Satellite Radio, UGDO
17	Back-up Lamps
18	Not Used
19	Not Used
20	Auxiliary Power Outlets
21	Not Used
22	Trunk Release

Fuses	Usage
23	Rear Defog
24	Heated Mirrors
25	Fuel Pump

Relays	Usage
26	Rear Window Defogger
27	Park Lamps
28	Not Used
29	Not Used
30	Not Used
31	Not Used
32	Not Used
33	Back-up Lamps
34	Not Used
35	Not Used
36	Trunk Release
37	Fuel Pump
38 (Diode)	Cargo Lamp

Capacities and Specifications

The following approximate capacities are given in English and metric conversions. Please refer to *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 6-12* for more information.

Application	Capacities	
	English	Metric
Air Conditioning Refrigerant R134a	For the air conditioning system refrigerant charge amount, see the refrigerant caution label located under the hood. See your retailer/dealer for more information.	
Automatic Transmission*		
Automatic Transmission – 4 Speed (Bottom Pan Removal)	7.0 qt	6.6 L
Automatic Transmission – 6 Speed (Drain and Refill)	5.3 qt	5.0 L
Cooling System		
2.4L L4 Engine	7.5 qt	7.1 L
3.6L V6 Engine	9.7 qt	9.2 L

Application	Capacities	
	English	Metric
Engine Oil with Filter		
2.4L L4 Engine	5.0 qt	4.7 L
3.6L V6 Engine	5.5 qt	5.2 L
Fuel Tank	16.3 gal	61.7 L
Wheel Nut Torque	100 lb ft	140 N•m
*Transmission fluid capacity is approximate. See *Automatic Transmission Fluid on page 5-22* for information on checking fluid level.		
All capacities are approximate. When adding, be sure to fill to the approximate level, as recommended in this manual.		

Engine Specifications

Engine	VIN Code	Transmission	Spark Plug Gap
2.4L L4	B	Automatic	0.040 in (1.0 mm)
3.6L V6	7	Automatic	0.044 in (1.1 mm)

✍ NOTES

Section 6 Maintenance Schedule

Maintenance Schedule 6-2
Introduction 6-2
Maintenance Requirements 6-2
Your Vehicle and the Environment 6-2
Using the Maintenance Schedule 6-2
Scheduled Maintenance 6-4
Additional Required Services 6-6
Maintenance Footnotes 6-7
Owner Checks and Services 6-9
At Each Fuel Fill 6-9
At Least Once a Month 6-9
At Least Once a Year 6-10
Recommended Fluids and Lubricants 6-12
Maintenance Replacement Parts 6-13
Engine Drive Belt Routing 6-14
Maintenance Record 6-15

Maintenance Schedule

Introduction

Important: Keep engine oil at the proper level and change as recommended.

Maintenance Requirements

Notice: **Maintenance intervals, checks, inspections, replacement parts, and recommended fluids and lubricants as prescribed in this manual are necessary to keep this vehicle in good working condition. Any damage caused by failure to follow scheduled maintenance might not be covered by the vehicle warranty.**

Your Vehicle and the Environment

Proper vehicle maintenance not only helps to keep the vehicle in good working condition, but also helps the environment. All recommended maintenance is important. Improper vehicle maintenance can even affect the quality of the air we breathe. Improper fluid levels or the wrong tire inflation can increase the level of emissions from the vehicle. To help protect the environment, and to keep the vehicle in good condition, be sure to maintain the vehicle properly.

Using the Maintenance Schedule

We want to help keep this vehicle in good working condition. But we do not know exactly how you will drive it. You might drive very short distances only a few times a week. Or you might drive long distances all the time in very hot, dusty weather. You might use the vehicle in making deliveries. Or you might drive it to work, to do errands, or in many other ways.

Because of all the different ways people use their vehicles, maintenance needs vary. You might need more frequent checks and replacements. So please read the following and note how you drive. If you have any questions on how to keep the vehicle in good condition, see your dealer/retailer.

This schedule is for vehicles that:

- carry passengers and cargo within recommended limits on the Tire and Loading Information label. See *Loading the Vehicle on page 4-21*.
- are driven on reasonable road surfaces within legal driving limits.
- use the recommended fuel. See *Gasoline Octane on page 5-5*.

The services in *Scheduled Maintenance on page 6-4* should be performed when indicated. See *Additional Required Services on page 6-6* and *Maintenance Footnotes on page 6-7* for further information.

⚠ CAUTION:

Performing maintenance work on a vehicle can be dangerous. In trying to do some jobs, you can be seriously injured. Do your own maintenance work only if you have the required know-how and the proper tools and equipment for the job. If you have any doubt, see your dealer/retailer to have a qualified technician do the work. See *Doing Your Own Service Work on page 5-4*.

Some maintenance services can be complex. So, unless you are technically qualified and have the necessary equipment, have your dealer/retailer do these jobs.

When you go to your dealer/retailer for service, trained and supported service technicians will perform the work using genuine parts.

To purchase service information, see *Service Publications Ordering Information on page 7-15*.

Owner Checks and Services on page 6-9 tells what should be checked, when to check it, and what can easily be done to help keep the vehicle in good condition.

The proper replacement parts, fluids, and lubricants to use are listed in *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 6-12* and *Maintenance Replacement Parts on page 6-13*. When the vehicle is serviced, make sure these are used. All parts should be replaced and all necessary repairs done before you or anyone else drives the vehicle. We recommend the use of genuine parts from your dealer/retailer.

Scheduled Maintenance

When the CHANGE OIL SOON message displays in the Driver Information Center (DIC), service is required for the vehicle. Have the vehicle serviced as soon as possible within the next 600 miles (1 000 km). It is possible that, if driving under the best conditions, the engine oil life system may not indicate that vehicle service is necessary for over a year. However, the engine oil and filter must be changed at least once a year and at this time the system must be reset. Your dealer/retailer has trained service technicians who will perform this work using genuine parts and reset the system.

If the engine oil life system is ever reset accidentally, service the vehicle within 3,000 miles (5 000 km) since the last service. Remember to reset the oil life system whenever the oil is changed. See *Engine Oil Life System on page 5-18* for information on the Engine Oil Life System and resetting the system.

When the CHANGE OIL SOON message appears, certain services, checks, and inspections are required. Required services are described in the following for "Maintenance I" and "Maintenance II." Generally, it is recommended that the first service be Maintenance I, the second service be Maintenance II, and then alternate Maintenance I and Maintenance II thereafter. However, in some cases, Maintenance II might be required more often.

Maintenance I — Use Maintenance I if the message displays within 10 months since the vehicle was purchased or Maintenance II was performed.

Maintenance II — Use Maintenance II if the previous service performed was Maintenance I. Always use Maintenance II whenever the message displays 10 months or more since the last service or if the message has not come on at all for one year.

Scheduled Maintenance

Service	Maintenance I	Maintenance II
Change engine oil and filter. See *Engine Oil on page 5-15*. Reset oil life system. See *Engine Oil Life System on page 5-18*. *An Emission Control Service.*	•	•
Visually check for any leaks or damage. *See footnote (j).*	•	•
Inspect engine air cleaner filter. If necessary, replace filter. See *Engine Air Cleaner/Filter on page 5-20*. *See footnote (k).*		•
Rotate tires and check inflation pressures and wear. See *Tire Inspection and Rotation on page 5-59* and "Tire Wear Inspection" in *At Least Once a Month on page 6-9*.	•	•
Inspect brake system. *See footnote (a).*	•	•
Check engine coolant and windshield washer fluid levels and add fluid as needed.	•	•
Perform any needed additional services. See "Additional Required Services" in this section.	•	•
Inspect suspension and steering components. *See footnote (b).*		•
Inspect engine cooling system. *See footnote (c).*		•
Inspect wiper blades. *See footnote (d).*		•
Inspect restraint system components. *See footnote (e).*		•
Lubricate body components. *See footnote (f).*		•
3.6L Engine Only: Check automatic transmission fluid level and add fluid as needed.		•
Inspect throttle system. *See footnote (g).*		•

Additional Required Services

The following services should be performed at the first maintenance service (I or II) after the indicated miles (kilometers) shown for each item.

Additional Required Services

Service and Miles (Kilometers)	25,000 (40 000)	50,000 (80 000)	75,000 (120 000)	100,000 (160 000)	125,000 (200 000)	150,000 (240 000)
Inspect fuel system for damage or leaks.	•	•	•	•	•	•
Inspect exhaust system for loose or damaged components.	•	•	•	•	•	•
Replace engine air cleaner filter. See *Engine Air Cleaner/Filter on page 5-20*.		•		•		•
2.4L (Code B) L4 Engine Only: Change automatic transmission fluid and filter (severe service only). *See footnote (h).*		•		•		•
3.6L (Code 7) V6 Engine Only: Change automatic transmission fluid (severe service). *See footnote (l).*		•		•		•
3.6L (Code 7) V6 Engine Only: Change automatic transmission fluid (normal service).				•		
Replace spark plugs. Inspect spark plug wires. *An Emission Control Service.*				•		

Additional Required Services (cont'd)

Service and Miles (Kilometers)	25,000 (40 000)	50,000 (80 000)	75,000 (120 000)	100,000 (160 000)	125,000 (200 000)	150,000 (240 000)
Engine cooling system service (or every five years, whichever occurs first). *An Emission Control Service. See footnote (i).*						•
Inspect engine accessory drive belt. *An Emission Control Service. See footnote (m).*						•

Maintenance Footnotes

(a) *Visually inspect brake lines and hoses for proper hook-up, binding, leaks, cracks, chafing, etc. Inspect disc brake pads for wear and rotors for surface condition. Inspect other brake parts, including calipers, parking brake, etc.*

(b) *Visually inspect front and rear suspension and steering system for damaged, loose, or missing parts or signs of wear. Inspect electric power steering cables for proper hook-up, binding, cracks, chafing, etc. Inspect hydraulic power steering lines and hoses for proper hook-up, binding, leaks, cracks, chafing, etc.*

(c) *Visually inspect hoses and have them replaced if they are cracked, swollen, or deteriorated. Inspect all pipes, fittings and clamps; replace with genuine parts as needed. To help ensure proper operation, a pressure test of the cooling system and pressure cap and cleaning the outside of the radiator and air conditioning condenser is recommended at least once a year.*

(d) *Inspect wiper blades for wear, cracking, or contamination. Clean the windshield and wiper blades, if contaminated. Replace wiper blades that are worn or damaged. See Windshield Wiper Blade Replacement on page 5-44 and Windshield and Wiper Blades on page 5-86 for more information.*

(e) *Make sure the safety belt reminder light and safety belt assemblies are working properly. Look for any other loose or damaged safety belt system parts. If you see anything that might keep a safety belt system from doing its job, have it repaired. Have any torn or frayed safety belts replaced. Also see Checking the Restraint Systems on page 1-72*.

(f) *Lubricate all key lock cylinders, door hinges and latches, hood hinges and latches, and trunk lid hinges and latches. More frequent lubrication may be required when exposed to a corrosive environment. Applying silicone grease on weatherstrips with a clean cloth will make them last longer, seal better, and not stick or squeak.*

(g) *Check system for interference or binding and for damaged or missing parts. Replace parts as needed. Replace any components that have high effort or excessive wear. Do not lubricate accelerator or cruise control cables.*

(h) *Change automatic transmission fluid and filter if the vehicle is mainly driven under one or more of these conditions:*

- *In heavy city traffic where the outside temperature regularly reaches 90°F (32°C) or higher.*
- *In hilly or mountainous terrain.*
- *When doing frequent trailer towing.*
- *Uses such as found in taxi, police, or delivery service.*

(i) *Drain, flush, and refill cooling system. This service can be complex; you should have your dealer/retailer perform this service. See Engine Coolant on page 5-23 for what to use. Inspect hoses. Clean radiator, condenser, pressure cap, and filler neck. Pressure test the cooling system and pressure cap.*

(j) *A fluid loss in any vehicle system could indicate a problem. Have the system inspected and repaired and the fluid level checked. Add fluid if needed.*

(k) *If driving regularly under dusty conditions, inspect the filter at each engine oil change.*

(l) *Change automatic transmission fluid if the vehicle is mainly driven under one or more of these conditions:*

- *In heavy city traffic where the outside temperature regularly reaches 90°F (32°C) or higher.*
- *In hilly or mountainous terrain.*
- *When doing frequent trailer towing.*
- *Uses such as found in taxi, police, or delivery service.*

If the vehicle is not used under any of these conditions, the fluid does not require changing.

(m) *Visually inspect belt for fraying, excessive cracks, or obvious damage. Replace belt if necessary.*

Owner Checks and Services

These owner checks and services should be performed at the intervals specified to help ensure vehicle safety, dependability, and emission control performance. Your dealer/retailer can assist with these checks and services.

Be sure any necessary repairs are completed at once. Whenever any fluids or lubricants are added to the vehicle, make sure they are the proper ones, as shown in *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 6-12*.

At Each Fuel Fill

It is important to perform these underhood checks at each fuel fill.

Engine Oil Level Check

Notice: **It is important to check the engine oil regularly and keep it at the proper level. Failure to keep the engine oil at the proper level can cause damage to the engine not covered by the vehicle warranty.**

Check the engine oil level and add the proper oil if necessary. See *Engine Oil on page 5-15*.

Engine Coolant Level Check

Check the engine coolant level and add DEX-COOL® coolant mixture if necessary. See *Engine Coolant on page 5-23*.

Windshield Washer Fluid Level Check

Check the windshield washer fluid level in the windshield washer fluid reservoir and add the proper fluid if necessary.

At Least Once a Month

Tire Inflation Check

Inspect the vehicle's tires and make sure they are inflated to the correct pressures. Do not forget to check the spare tire. See *Inflation - Tire Pressure on page 5-52*. Check to make sure the spare tire is stored securely. See *Changing a Flat Tire on page 5-68*.

Tire Wear Inspection

Tire rotation may be required for high mileage highway drivers prior to the Engine Oil Life System service notification. Check the tires for wear and, if necessary, rotate the tires. See *Tire Inspection and Rotation on page 5-59*.

At Least Once a Year

Starter Switch Check

⚠ CAUTION:

When you are doing this inspection, the vehicle could move suddenly. If the vehicle moves, you or others could be injured.

1. Before starting this check, be sure there is enough room around the vehicle.
2. Firmly apply both the parking brake and the regular brake. See *Parking Brake on page 2-29*.

   Do not use the accelerator pedal, and be ready to turn off the engine immediately if it starts.
3. Try to start the engine in each gear. The vehicle should start only in P (Park) or N (Neutral). If the vehicle starts in any other position, contact your dealer/retailer for service.

Automatic Transmission Shift Lock Control System Check

⚠ CAUTION:

When you are doing this inspection, the vehicle could move suddenly. If the vehicle moves, you or others could be injured.

1. Before starting this check, be sure there is enough room around the vehicle. It should be parked on a level surface.
2. Firmly apply the parking brake. See *Parking Brake on page 2-29*.

   Be ready to apply the regular brake immediately if the vehicle begins to move.
3. With the engine off, turn the ignition to ON/RUN, but do not start the engine. Without applying the regular brake, try to move the shift lever out of P (Park) with normal effort. If the shift lever moves out of P (Park), contact your dealer/retailer for service.

Ignition Transmission Lock Check

While parked, and with the parking brake set, try to turn the ignition to LOCK/OFF in each shift lever position.

- The ignition should turn to LOCK/OFF only when the shift lever is in P (Park).
- The ignition key should come out only in LOCK/OFF.

Contact your dealer/retailer if service is required.

Parking Brake and Automatic Transmission P (Park) Mechanism Check

⚠ CAUTION:

When you are doing this check, the vehicle could begin to move. You or others could be injured and property could be damaged. Make sure there is room in front of the vehicle in case it begins to roll. Be ready to apply the regular brake at once should the vehicle begin to move.

Park on a fairly steep hill, with the vehicle facing downhill. Keeping your foot on the regular brake, set the parking brake.

- To check the parking brake's holding ability: With the engine running and the transmission in N (Neutral), slowly remove foot pressure from the regular brake pedal. Do this until the vehicle is held by the parking brake only.
- To check the P (Park) mechanism's holding ability: With the engine running, shift to P (Park). Then release the parking brake followed by the regular brake.

Contact your dealer/retailer if service is required.

Underbody Flushing Service

At least every spring, use plain water to flush any corrosive materials from the underbody. Take care to clean thoroughly any areas where mud and other debris can collect.

Recommended Fluids and Lubricants

Fluids and lubricants identified below by name, part number, or specification can be obtained from your dealer/retailer.

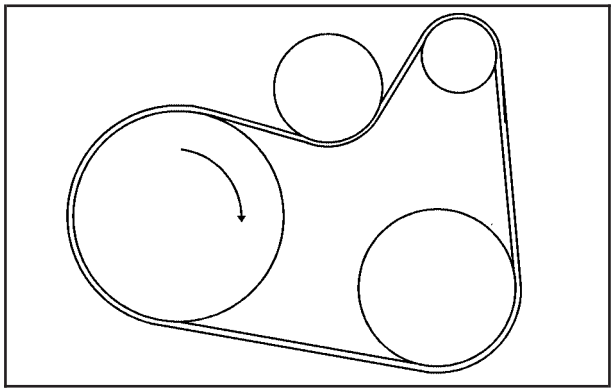
Usage	Fluid/Lubricant
Engine Oil	Engine oil which meets GM Standard GM6094M and displays the American Petroleum Institute Certified for Gasoline Engines starburst symbol. To determine the proper viscosity for your vehicle's engine, see *Engine Oil on page 5-15*.
Engine Coolant	50/50 mixture of clean, drinkable water and use only DEX-COOL® Coolant. See *Engine Coolant on page 5-23*.
Hydraulic Brake System	DOT 3 Hydraulic Brake Fluid (GM Part No. U.S. 88862806, in Canada 88862807).
Windshield Washer	Optikleen® Washer Solvent.
Hydraulic Power Steering System (if equipped)	GM Power Steering Fluid (GM Part No. U.S. 89021184, in Canada 89021186).
Automatic Transmission	DEXRON®-VI Automatic Transmission Fluid.
Key Lock Cylinders	Multi-Purpose Lubricant, Superlube (GM Part No. U.S. 12346241, in Canada 10953474).
Hood Latch Assembly, Secondary Latch, Pivots, Spring Anchor, and Release Pawl	Lubriplate Lubricant Aerosol (GM Part No. U.S. 12346293, in Canada 992723) or lubricant meeting requirements of NLGI #2, Category LB or GC-LB.
Hood and Door Hinges	Multi-Purpose Lubricant, Superlube (GM Part No. U.S. 12346241, in Canada 109435474).
Weatherstrip Conditioning	Weatherstrip Lubricant (GM Part No. U.S. 3634770, in Canada 10953518) or Dielectric Silicone Grease (GM Part No. U.S. 12345579, in Canada 992887).

Maintenance Replacement Parts

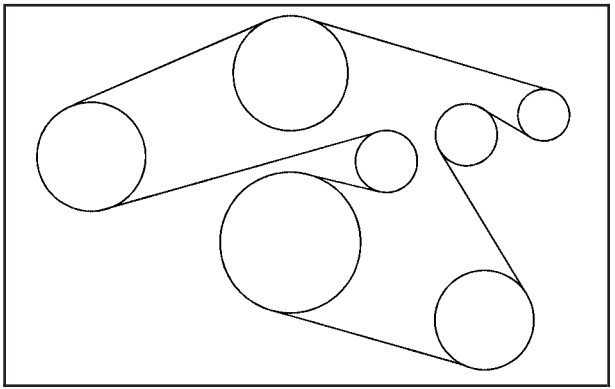
Replacement parts identified below by name, part number, or specification can be obtained from your Saturn retailer/dealer.

Part	Part Numbers	ACDelco Part Numbers
Engine Air Cleaner/Filter	22676970	A1627C
Engine Oil Filter		
2.4L L4 Engine	12605566	PF457G
3.6L V6 Engine	89017524	PF48
Spark Plugs		
2.4L L4 Engine	12625058	41-103
3.6L V6 Engine	12597464	41-990
Wiper Blades		
Driver Side – 23.6 in (60.0 cm)	25800624	—
Passenger Side – 21.0 in (53.0 cm)	25800623	—

Engine Drive Belt Routing



2.4L I4 Engine



3.6L V6 Engine

Maintenance Record

After the scheduled services are performed, record the date, odometer reading, who performed the service, and the type of services performed in the boxes provided. See *Maintenance Requirements on page 6-2*. Any additional information from *Owner Checks and Services on page 6-9* can be added on the following record pages. You should retain all maintenance receipts.

Maintenance Record

Date	Odometer Reading	Serviced By	Maintenance I or Maintenance II	Services Performed

Maintenance Record (cont'd)

Date	Odometer Reading	Serviced By	Maintenance I or Maintenance II	Services Performed

Maintenance Record (cont'd)

Date	Odometer Reading	Serviced By	Maintenance I or Maintenance II	Services Performed

Maintenance Record (cont'd)

Date	Odometer Reading	Serviced By	Maintenance I or Maintenance II	Services Performed

Section 7 Customer Assistance Information

Customer Assistance and Information 7-2
- Customer Satisfaction Procedure 7-2
- Online Owner Center 7-5
- Customer Assistance for Text Telephone (TTY) Users 7-6
- Customer Assistance Offices 7-6
- GM Mobility Reimbursement Program 7-6
- Roadside Assistance Program 7-7
- Scheduling Service Appointments 7-9
- Courtesy Transportation 7-10
- Collision Damage Repair 7-11

Reporting Safety Defects 7-14
- Reporting Safety Defects to the United States Government 7-14
- Reporting Safety Defects to the Canadian Government 7-15
- Reporting Safety Defects to Saturn 7-15
- Service Publications Ordering Information 7-15

Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy 7-16
- Event Data Recorders 7-17
- OnStar® 7-18
- Navigation System 7-18
- Radio Frequency Identification (RFID) 7-18

Customer Assistance and Information

Customer Satisfaction Procedure

Your satisfaction and goodwill are important to your retailer and to Saturn. Together we are committed to providing our customers with unparalleled service, before, during, and after the purchase of a Saturn vehicle, for total customer satisfaction. We call this the Saturn Difference. Normally, any concerns with the sales transaction or the operation of the vehicle are resolved by the retailer's sales or service departments. If, for any reason, your ownership experience falls below your expectations, we suggest you take the following action:

STEP ONE: Contact the Retail Customer Assistance Liaison. Any member of the retail management team has the authority and the desire to resolve your concerns. Normally, concerns can be quickly resolved at this level.

STEP TWO: Should you need additional assistance, in the U.S., contact the Saturn Customer Assistance Center by calling 1-800-553-6000. In Canada, call the Saturn Customer Communication Centre at 1-800-263-1999. A Saturn Customer Assistance Center team member will handle your call and assist in providing product and warranty information, the nearest retailer location, roadside assistance, brochures, literature and discuss any concerns you may have.

We encourage you to call the toll-free number in order to give your inquiry prompt attention. Please have the following information available to give the Customer Assistance Representative:

- Vehicle Identification Number (VIN). This 17-digit number can be found on the vehicle registration or title, on the upper driver side corner of the instrument panel, or on your roadside assistance key card.
- The name of your selling and servicing retail facility.
- Vehicle delivery date and present mileage.
- Your daytime and evening phone numbers.

When contacting Saturn, please remember that your concern will likely be resolved at a retailer's facility. That is why we suggest you follow Step One first.

STEP THREE (U.S. Owners): Both Saturn and its retailers are committed to making sure you are completely satisfied with your Saturn vehicle. However, if you continue to remain unsatisfied after following the procedure outlined in Steps One and Two, Saturn and its retailers offer the additional assistance of a neutral party through our voluntary participation in a mediation/arbitration program called Better Business Bureau (BBB) Auto Line.

The BBB Auto Line Program is an out-of-court program administered by the Council of Better Business Bureaus to settle automotive disputes regarding vehicle repairs or the interpretation of the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. This program is available at no cost to you, our customer.

Although you may be required to resort to this informal dispute resolution program prior to filing a court action, use of the program is free of charge and your case is generally heard within 40 days. If you do not agree with the decision given in your case, you can reject it and proceed with any other venue for relief available to you.

Contact the BBB Auto Line Program by using the toll-free telephone number or by writing them at the following address:

BBB Auto Line Program
Council of Better Business Bureaus, Inc.
4200 Wilson Boulevard
Suite 800
Arlington, VA 22203-1838

Telephone: 1-800-955-5100
dr.bbb.org/goauto

This program is available in all 50 states and the District of Columbia. Eligibility is limited by vehicle age, mileage and other factors. Saturn Corporation reserves the right to change eligibility limitations and/or discontinue its participation in this program.

STEP THREE (Canadian Owners):

General Motors Participation in the Mediation/Arbitration Program

In the event that you do not feel your concerns have been addressed after following the procedure outlined in Steps 1 and 2, General Motors of Canada Limited has committed to binding arbitration of owner disputes involving factory-related vehicle service claims. The program provides for the review of the facts involved by an impartial third party arbiter, and may include an informal hearing before the arbiter. The program is designed so that the entire dispute settlement process, from the time you file your complaint to the final decision, should be completed in approximately 70 days. We believe our impartial program offers advantages over courts in most jurisdictions because it is informal, quick, and free of charge.

For further information concerning eligibility in the Canadian Motor Vehicle Arbitration Plan (CAMVAP), call toll-free 1-800-207-0685. Alternatively, you may call the Saturn Customer Communication Centre, 1-800-263-1999, or you may write to:

Mediation/Arbitration Program
c/o Customer Communication Centre
General Motors of Canada Limited
Mail Code: CA1-163-005
1908 Colonel Sam Drive
Oshawa, Ontario L1H 8P7

Telephone: 1-800-955-5100

Your inquiry should be accompanied by the Vehicle Identification Number (VIN).

Online Owner Center

Online Owner Center (U.S.) — www.gmownercenter.com/saturn

Information and services customized for your specific vehicle — all in one convenient place.

- Digital owner manual, warranty information, and more
- Online service and maintenance records
- Find Saturn retailers for service nationwide
- Exclusive privileges and offers
- Recall notices for your specific vehicle
- OnStar® and GM Cardmember Services Earnings summaries

Other Helpful Links:

Saturn — www.saturn.com

Saturn Merchandise — www.saturncollection.com

Help Center — www.saturn.com/helpcenter

- FAQ
- Contact Us

My GM Canada (Canada) — www.gm.ca

My GM Canada is a password-protected section of www.gm.ca where you can save information on GM vehicles, get personalized offers, and use handy tools and forms with greater ease.

Here are a few of the valuable tools and services you will have access to:

- My Showroom: Find and save information on vehicles and current offers in your area.
- My Dealers/Retailers: Save details such as address and phone number for each of your preferred GM dealers/retailers.
- My Driveway: Access quick links to parts and service estimates, check trade-in values, or schedule a service appointment by adding the vehicles you own to your driveway profile.
- My Preferences: Manage your profile and use tools and forms with greater ease.

To sign up, visit the My GM Canada section within www.gm.ca.

Customer Assistance for Text Telephone (TTY) Users

To assist owners who have hearing difficulties, Saturn has installed special TDD (Telecommunication Devices for the Deaf) equipment in its Saturn Customer Assistance Center.

Any hearing or speech-impaired customer who has access to a TDD or to a conventional Text Telephone (TTY) can communicate with Saturn by dialing 1-800-TDD-6000. TTY users in Canada may dial 1-800-263-3830.

Customer Assistance Offices

Saturn encourages customers to call the toll-free number for assistance. If a customer wishes to write to Saturn, the letter should be addressed to:

Saturn Customer Assistance Center
P.O. Box 33173
Detroit, MI 48232-5173

1-800-553-6000
1-800-833-6000 (For Text Telephone devices (TTYs))
Roadside Assistance: 1-800-553-6000

In Canada, write to:

Saturn Customer Communication Centre
General Motors of Canada Ltd.
CA1-163-005
1908 Colonel Sam Drive
Oshawa, Ontario L1H 8P7

GMcanada.com
1-800-263-1999
1-800-263-3830 (For Text Telephone devices (TTYs))
Roadside Assistance: 1-800-268-6800

GM Mobility Reimbursement Program

GM MOBILITY℠

This program, available to qualified applicants, can reimburse you up to $1,000 toward eligible aftermarket driver or passenger adaptive equipment you may require for your vehicle such as hand controls, wheelchair/scooter lifts, etc.

The offer is available for a limited period of time from the date of vehicle purchase/lease.

For more details, or to determine your vehicle's eligibility, visit your Saturn retailer or call the Saturn Customer Assistance Center at 1-800-553-6000. Text telephone (TTY) users, call 1-800-833-6000.

In Canada, customers may call the Saturn Customer Communication Centre at 1-800-263-1999. TTY users in Canada may call 1-800-263-3830.

Roadside Assistance Program

For U.S. purchased vehicles, call **1-800-553-6000; (Text Telephone (TTY): 1-800-889-2438)**.

For Canadian purchased vehicles, call **1-800-268-6800**.

Service is available 24 hours a day, 365 days a year.

Calling for Assistance

When calling Roadside Assistance, have the following information ready:

- Your name, home address, and home telephone number
- Telephone number of your location
- Location of the vehicle
- Model, year, color, and license plate number of the vehicle
- Odometer reading, Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), and delivery date of the vehicle
- Description of the problem

Coverage

Services are provided up to 5 years/100,000 miles (160 000 km), whichever comes first.

In the U.S., anyone driving the vehicle is covered. In Canada, a person driving the vehicle without permission from the owner is not covered.

Roadside Assistance is not a part of the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. Saturn and General Motors of Canada Limited reserve the right to make any changes or discontinue the Roadside Assistance program at any time without notification.

Saturn and General Motors of Canada Limited reserve the right to limit services or payment to an owner or driver if they decide the claims are made too often, or the same type of claim is made many times.

Services Provided

- **Emergency Fuel Delivery:** Delivery of enough fuel for the vehicle to get to the nearest service station.
- **Lock-Out Service:** Service is provided to unlock the vehicle if you are locked out. A remote unlock may be available if you have OnStar®. For security reasons, the driver must present identification before this service is given.
- **Emergency Tow From a Public Road or Highway:** Tow to the nearest Saturn retailer for warranty service, or if the vehicle was in a crash and cannot be driven. Assistance is also given when the vehicle is stuck in sand, mud, or snow.
- **Flat Tire Change:** Service is provided to change a flat tire with the spare tire. The spare tire, if equipped, must be in good condition and properly inflated. It is the owner's responsibility for the repair or replacement of the tire if it is not covered by the warranty.
- **Battery Jump Start:** Service is provided to jump start a dead battery.
- **Trip Interruption Benefits and Assistance:** If your trip is interrupted due to a warranty failure, incidental expenses may be reimbursed during the 5 years/ 100,000 miles (160 000 km) Powertrain warranty period. Items considered are hotel, meals, and rental car.

Services Not Included in Roadside Assistance

- Impound towing caused by violation of any laws.
- Legal fines.
- Mounting, dismounting or changing of snow tires, chains, or other traction devices.
- Towing or services for vehicles driven on a non-public road or highway.

Services Specific to Canadian Purchased Vehicles

- **Fuel delivery:** Reimbursement is approximately $5 Canadian. Diesel fuel delivery may be restricted. Propane and other fuels are not provided through this service.
- **Lock-Out Service:** Vehicle registration is required.
- **Trip Routing Service:** Detailed maps of North America are provided when requested either with the most direct route or the most scenic route. There is a limit of six requests per year. Additional travel information is also available. Allow three weeks for delivery.

- **Trip Interruption Benefits and Assistance:** Must be over 250 kilometres from where your trip was started to qualify. General Motors of Canada Limited requires pre-authorization, original detailed receipts, and a copy of the repair orders. Once authorization has been received, the Roadside Assistance advisor will help you make arrangements and explain how to receive payment.
- **Alternative Service:** If assistance cannot be provided right away, the Roadside Assistance advisor may give you permission to get local emergency road service. You will receive payment, up to $100, after sending the original receipt to Roadside Assistance. Mechanical failures may be covered, however any cost for parts and labor for repairs not covered by the warranty are the owner responsibility.

Scheduling Service Appointments

When your vehicle requires warranty service, contact your dealer/retailer and request an appointment. By scheduling a service appointment and advising your service consultant of your transportation needs, your dealer/retailer can help minimize your inconvenience.

If your vehicle cannot be scheduled into the service department immediately, keep driving it until it can be scheduled for service, unless, of course, the problem is safety-related. If it is, please call your dealership/retailer, let them know this, and ask for instructions.

If the dealer/retailer requests you to bring the vehicle for service, you are urged to do so as early in the work day as possible to allow for the same day repair.

Courtesy Transportation

To enhance your ownership experience, we and our participating retailers are proud to offer Courtesy Transportation, a customer support program for vehicles with the Bumper to Bumper (Base Warranty Coverage period in Canada), extended powertrain, and hybrid specific warranties in both the U.S. and Canada.

Several courtesy transportation options are available to assist in reducing your inconvenience when warranty repairs are required.

Courtesy Transportation is not a part of the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. A separate booklet entitled “Warranty and Owner Assistance Information” furnished with each new vehicle provides detailed warranty coverage information.

Transportation Options

Warranty service can generally be completed while you wait. However, if you are unable to wait, Saturn helps to minimize your inconvenience by providing several transportation options. Depending on the circumstances, your retailer can offer you one of the following:

Shuttle Service

Shuttle service is the preferred means of offering Courtesy Transportation. Retailers may provide you with shuttle service to get you to your destination with minimal interruption of your daily schedule. This includes one-way or round trip shuttle service within reasonable time and distance parameters of the retailer’s area.

Public Transportation or Fuel Reimbursement

If your vehicle requires overnight warranty repairs, and public transportation is used instead of the retailer’s shuttle service, the expense must be supported by original receipts and can only be up to the maximum amount allowed by Saturn for shuttle service. In addition, for U.S. customers, should you arrange transportation through a friend or relative, limited reimbursement for reasonable fuel expenses may be available. Claim amounts should reflect actual costs and be supported by original receipts. See your retailer for information regarding the allowance amounts for reimbursement of fuel or other transportation costs.

Courtesy Rental Vehicle

Your retailer may arrange to provide you with a courtesy rental vehicle or reimburse you for a rental vehicle that you obtain if your vehicle is kept for an overnight warranty repair. Rental reimbursement will be limited and must be supported by original receipts. This requires that you sign and complete a rental agreement and meet state/provincial, local, and rental vehicle provider requirements. Requirements vary and may include minimum age requirements, insurance coverage, credit card, etc. You are responsible for fuel usage charges and may also be responsible for taxes, levies, usage fees, excessive mileage, or rental usage beyond the completion of the repair.

It may not be possible to provide a like-vehicle as a courtesy rental.

Additional Program Information

All program options, such as shuttle service, may not be available at every retailer. Please contact your retailer for specific information about availability. All Courtesy Transportation arrangements will be administered by appropriate retailer personnel.

Saturn reserves the right to unilaterally modify, change or discontinue Courtesy Transportation at any time and to resolve all questions of claim eligibility pursuant to the terms and conditions described herein at its sole discretion.

Collision Damage Repair

If your vehicle is involved in a collision and it is damaged, have the damage repaired by a qualified technician using the proper equipment and quality replacement parts. Poorly performed collision repairs diminish your vehicle's resale value, and safety performance can be compromised in subsequent collisions.

Collision Parts

Genuine GM Collision parts are new parts made with the same materials and construction methods as the parts with which your vehicle was originally built. Genuine GM Collision parts are your best choice to ensure that your vehicle's designed appearance, durability, and safety are preserved. The use of Genuine GM parts can help maintain your GM New Vehicle Warranty.

Recycled original equipment parts may also be used for repair. These parts are typically removed from vehicles that were total losses in prior crashes. In most cases, the parts being recycled are from undamaged sections of the vehicle. A recycled original equipment GM part, may be an acceptable choice to maintain your vehicle's originally designed appearance and safety performance, however, the history of these parts is not known. Such parts are not covered by your GM New Vehicle Limited Warranty, and any related failures are not covered by that warranty.

Aftermarket collision parts are also available. These are made by companies other than GM and may not have been tested for your vehicle. As a result, these parts may fit poorly, exhibit premature durability/corrosion problems, and may not perform properly in subsequent collisions. Aftermarket parts are not covered by your GM New Vehicle Limited Warranty, and any vehicle failure related to such parts are not covered by that warranty.

Repair Facility

We recommend that you choose a collision repair facility that meets your needs before you ever need collision repairs. Your dealer/retailer may have a collision repair center with GM-trained technicians and state of the art equipment, or be able to recommend a collision repair center that has GM-trained technicians and comparable equipment.

Insuring Your Vehicle

Protect your investment in your GM vehicle with comprehensive and collision insurance coverage. There are significant differences in the quality of coverage afforded by various insurance policy terms. Many insurance policies provide reduced protection to your GM vehicle by limiting compensation for damage repairs by using aftermarket collision parts. Some insurance companies will not specify aftermarket collision parts. When purchasing insurance, we recommend that you assure your vehicle will be repaired with GM original equipment collision parts. If such insurance coverage is not available from your current insurance carrier, consider switching to another insurance carrier.

If your vehicle is leased, the leasing company may require you to have insurance that assures repairs with Genuine GM Original Equipment Manufacturer (OEM) parts or Genuine Manufacturer replacement parts. Read your lease carefully, as you may be charged at the end of your lease for poor quality repairs.

If a Crash Occurs

Here is what to do if you are involved in a crash.

- Check to make sure that you are all right. If you are uninjured, make sure that no one else in your vehicle, or the other vehicle, is injured.
- If there has been an injury, call emergency services for help. Do not leave the scene of a crash until all matters have been taken care of. Move your vehicle only if its position puts you in danger or you are instructed to move it by a police officer.
- Give only the necessary and requested information to police and other parties involved in the crash. Do not discuss your personal condition, mental frame of mind, or anything unrelated to the crash. This will help guard against post-crash legal action.
- If you need roadside assistance, call GM Roadside Assistance. See *Roadside Assistance Program on page 7-7* for more information.
- If your vehicle cannot be driven, know where the towing service will be taking it. Get a card from the tow truck operator or write down the driver's name, the service's name, and the phone number.
- Remove any valuables from your vehicle before it is towed away. Make sure this includes your insurance information and registration if you keep these items in your vehicle.
- Gather the important information you will need from the other driver. Things like name, address, phone number, driver's license number, vehicle license plate, vehicle make, model and model year, Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), insurance company and policy number, and a general description of the damage to the other vehicle.
- If possible, call your insurance company from the scene of the crash. They will walk you through the information they will need. If they ask for a police report, phone or go to the police department headquarters the next day and you can get a copy of the report for a nominal fee. In some states/provinces with "no fault" insurance laws, a report may not be necessary. This is especially true if there are no injuries and both vehicles are driveable.
- Choose a reputable collision repair facility for your vehicle. Whether you select a dealer/retailer or a private collision repair facility to fix the damage, make sure you are comfortable with them. Remember, you will have to feel comfortable with their work for a long time.
- Once you have an estimate, read it carefully and make sure you understand what work will be performed on your vehicle. If you have a question, ask for an explanation. Reputable shops welcome this opportunity.

Managing the Vehicle Damage Repair Process

In the event that your vehicle requires damage repairs, GM recommends that you take an active role in its repair. If you have a pre-determined repair facility of choice, take your vehicle there, or have it towed there. Specify to the facility that any required replacement collision parts be original equipment parts, either new Genuine GM parts or recycled original GM parts. Remember, recycled parts will not be covered by your GM vehicle warranty.

Insurance pays the bill for the repair, but you must live with the repair. Depending on your policy limits, your insurance company may initially value the repair using aftermarket parts. Discuss this with your repair professional, and insist on Genuine GM parts. Remember if your vehicle is leased you may be obligated to have the vehicle repaired with Genuine GM parts, even if your insurance coverage does not pay the full cost.

If another party's insurance company is paying for the repairs, you are not obligated to accept a repair valuation based on that insurance company's collision policy repair limits, as you have no contractual limits with that company. In such cases, you can have control of the repair and parts choices as long as cost stays within reasonable limits.

Reporting Safety Defects

Reporting Safety Defects to the United States Government

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA), in addition to notifying Saturn Corporation.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it could open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it could order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your retailer or Saturn Corporation.

To contact NHTSA, call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to Safercar.gov; or write to:

Administrator, NHTSA
1200 New Jersey Avenue, S.E.
Washington D.C., 20590

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from Safercar.gov.

Reporting Safety Defects to the Canadian Government

If you live in Canada, and you believe that your vehicle has a safety defect, notify Transport Canada immediately, in addition to notifying General Motors of Canada Limited. Call them at 1-800-333-0510 or write to:

Transport Canada
Road Safety Branch
2780 Sheffield Road
Ottawa, Ontario K1B 3V9

Reporting Safety Defects to Saturn

In addition to notifying NHTSA (or Transport Canada) in a situation like this, please notify Saturn.

Call 1-800-553-6000, or write:

Saturn Corporation
100 Saturn Parkway
Mail Drop 371-999-S24
Spring Hill, TN 37174-1500

In Canada, call 1-800-263-1999, or write:

Saturn Customer Communication Centre
General Motors of Canada Limited
CA1-163-005
1908 Colonel Sam Drive
Oshawa, Ontario L1H 8P7

Service Publications Ordering Information

Service Manuals

A variety of publications are available to you. Saturn service manuals are written for trained technicians, and in some cases, specialized tools and equipment are necessary to complete certain repairs. However, the manuals are available to owners who either have the training, or wish to gain a greater understanding of the technical aspect of their Saturn.

For additional publications information or to order publications in the United States, call toll free 1-800-2-SATURN or visit Saturn-publications.com to order on-line.

In Canada, Saturn service manuals are available by calling toll free 1-800-551-4123.

Owner Publications

Information on how to obtain product bulletins and as described below is applicable only in the fifty U.S. states and the District of Columbia, and only for cars and light trucks with a Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) less than 10,000 pounds (4 536 kg). Copies of individual bulletins are also at your participating Saturn retailer. You can ask to see them.

In Canada, information relating to product service bulletins can be obtained by contacting your Saturn retailer.

Service Bulletins

Saturn regularly sends its retailers useful service bulletins about Saturn products. Saturn monitors product performance in the field. We then prepare bulletins for servicing our products better. You can get these bulletins, too.

Bulletins cover various subjects. Some pertain to the proper use and care of your vehicle. Some describe costly repairs. Others describe inexpensive repairs which, if done on time with the latest parts, may avoid future costly repairs.

Some bulletins tell a technician how to repair a new or unexpected condition. Others describe a quicker way to fix your vehicle. They can help a technician service your vehicle better.

Most bulletins apply to conditions affecting a small number of vehicles. Your Saturn retailer or a qualified technician may have to determine if a specific bulletin applies to your vehicle. To order Saturn bulletins, call Saturn Publications at 1-800-2-SATURN or visit saturn-publications.com to order online.

Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy

Your Saturn vehicle has a number of sophisticated computers that record information about the vehicle's performance and how it is driven. For example, your vehicle uses computer modules to monitor and control engine and transmission performance, to monitor the conditions for airbag deployment and deploy airbags in a crash and, if so equipped, to provide antilock braking to help the driver control the vehicle. These modules may store data to help your dealer/retailer technician service your vehicle. Some modules may also store data about how you operate the vehicle, such as rate of fuel consumption or average speed. These modules may also retain the owner's personal preferences, such as radio pre-sets, seat positions, and temperature settings.

Event Data Recorders

This vehicle has an Event Data Recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating
- Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were buckled/fastened
- How far, if at all, the driver was pressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal
- How fast the vehicle was traveling

This data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

Important: EDR data is recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data is recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) is recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

Saturn will not access this data or share it with others except: with the consent of the vehicle owner or, if the vehicle is leased, with the consent of the lessee; in response to an official request of police or similar government office; as part of Saturn's defense of litigation through the discovery process; or, as required by law. Data that Saturn collects or receives may also be used for Saturn research needs or may be made available to others for research purposes, where a need is shown and the data is not tied to a specific vehicle or vehicle owner.

OnStar®

If your vehicle has OnStar and you subscribe to the OnStar services, please refer to the OnStar Terms and Conditions for information on data collection and use. See also *OnStar® System on page 2-38* in this manual for more information.

Navigation System

If your vehicle has a navigation system, use of the system may result in the storage of destinations, addresses, telephone numbers, and other trip information. Refer to the navigation system operating manual for information on stored data and for deletion instructions.

Radio Frequency Identification (RFID)

RFID technology is used in some vehicles for functions such as tire pressure monitoring and ignition system security, as well as in connection with conveniences such as key fobs for remote door locking/unlocking and starting, and in-vehicle transmitters for garage door openers. RFID technology in Saturn vehicles does not use or record personal information or link with any other Saturn system containing personal information.

A

Accessories and Modifications 5-3
Accessory Power 2-23
Accessory Power Outlets 3-18
Adding Equipment to Your
  Airbag-Equipped Vehicle 1-71
Additional Required Services,
  Scheduled Maintenance 6-6
Additives, Fuel 5-6
Add-On Electrical Equipment 5-90
Adjustment
  Chime Level 3-92
Adjustments
  Headlamp Range 1-7
Air Cleaner/Filter, Engine 5-20
Air Conditioning 3-19
Airbag
  Readiness Light 3-30
Airbag System 1-56
  Adding Equipment to Your
    Airbag-Equipped Vehicle 1-71
  How Does an Airbag Restrain? 1-63
  Passenger Sensing System 1-65
  Servicing Your Airbag-Equipped Vehicle 1-70
  What Makes an Airbag Inflate? 1-63
  What Will You See After an Airbag Inflates? 1-64
  When Should an Airbag Inflate? 1-61
  Where Are the Airbags? 1-59
Airbags
  Passenger Status Indicator 3-31
Antenna
  Backglass 3-92
Antenna, XM™ Satellite Radio Antenna System ... 3-92
Antilock Brake System (ABS) 4-5
  Warning Light 3-34
Appearance Care
  Aluminum Wheels 5-87
  Care of Safety Belts 5-84
  Chemical Paint Spotting 5-88
  Cleaning Exterior Lamps/Lenses 5-85
  Fabric/Carpet 5-83
  Finish Care 5-86
  Finish Damage 5-88
  Instrument Panel, Vinyl, and Other
    Plastic Surfaces 5-84
  Interior Cleaning 5-81
  Leather 5-83
  Sheet Metal Damage 5-88
  Tires 5-87
  Underbody Maintenance 5-88
  Washing Your Vehicle 5-85
  Weatherstrips 5-84
  Windshield and Wiper Blades 5-86
Assistance Program, Roadside 7-7
Audio System 3-55
  Audio Steering Wheel Controls 3-89
  Setting the Clock 3-56
  XM™ Satellite Radio Antenna System 3-92

Audio System(s) 3-57
Audio Systems
Radio Reception 3-91
Rear Seat (RSA) 3-86
Theft-Deterrent Feature 3-89
Automatic Climate Control System 3-23
Automatic Headlamp System 3-15
Automatic Transmission
Fluid 5-22
Operation 2-26

B

Backglass Antenna 3-92
Battery 5-36
Electric Power Management 3-17
Run-Down Protection 3-18
Belt Routing, Engine 6-14
Bluetooth® 3-75
Brake
Emergencies 4-6
Brake Fluid 5-33
Brakes 5-33
Antilock 4-5
Parking 2-29
System Warning Light 3-33
Braking 4-4
Braking in Emergencies 4-6
Break-In, New Vehicle 2-21
Bulb Replacement 5-44
Fog Lamp 3-15
Halogen Bulbs 5-41
Headlamp Aiming 5-41
Headlamps 5-41
License Plate Lamps 5-43
Taillamps, Turn Signal, Sidemarker, Stoplamps, and Back-Up Lamps 5-42
Buying New Tires 5-61

C

Calibration 2-36
California
Perchlorate Materials Requirements 5-4
California Fuel 5-6
California Proposition 65 Warning 5-4
Canadian Owners ii
Capacities and Specifications 5-100
Carbon Monoxide
Engine Exhaust 2-33
Trunk 2-13
Winter Driving 4-18
Care of
Safety Belts 5-84
CD, MP3 3-67
Center Console Storage 2-49
Chains, Tire 5-66
Charging System Light 3-32

Check
Engine Lamp 3-37
Checking Things Under the Hood 5-10
Chemical Paint Spotting 5-88
Child Restraints
Infants and Young Children 1-33
Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children 1-43
Older Children 1-30
Securing a Child Restraint in a Rear Seat Position 1-50
Securing a Child Restraint in the Right Front Seat Position 1-52
Systems 1-37
Where to Put the Restraint 1-40
Chime Level Adjustment 3-92
Cleaning
Aluminum Wheels 5-87
Exterior Lamps/Lenses 5-85
Fabric/Carpet 5-83
Finish Care 5-86
Instrument Panel, Vinyl, and Other Plastic Surfaces 5-84
Interior 5-81
Leather 5-83
Tires 5-87
Underbody Maintenance 5-88
Washing Your Vehicle 5-85
Weatherstrips 5-84
Windshield and Wiper Blades 5-86
Climate Control System 3-19
Outlet Adjustment 3-26
Climate Control Systems
Automatic 3-23
Clock, Setting 3-56
Collision Damage Repair 7-11
Compact Spare Tire 5-80
Compass 2-36
Content Theft-Deterrent 2-18
Control of a Vehicle 4-3
Convenience Net 2-49
Coolant
Engine 5-23
Engine Temperature Gage 3-36
Engine Temperature Warning Light 3-35
Cooling System 5-22
Courtesy Transportation 7-10
Cruise Control 3-10
Cruise Control Light 3-41
Cupholders 2-48
Customer Assistance 7-6
Offices 7-6
Text Telephone (TTY) Users 7-6
Customer Information
Service Publications Ordering Information 7-15
Customer Satisfaction Procedure 7-2

D

Damage Repair, Collision 7-11
Data Recorders
  Event 7-17
Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) 3-14
Defensive Driving 4-2
Delayed Headlamps 3-14
Delayed Locking 2-11
Disc, MP3 3-67
Doing Your Own Service Work 5-4
Dome Lamps 3-16
Door
  Ajar Reminder 2-10
  Delayed Locking 2-11
  Locks 2-10
  Power Door Locks 2-10
  Programmable Automatic Door Locks 2-11
  Rear Door Security Locks 2-12
Driver Information Center (DIC) 3-43
  DIC Operation and Displays 3-43
  DIC Vehicle Personalization 3-50
  DIC Warnings and Messages 3-45
Driving
  At Night 4-15
  Before a Long Trip 4-16
  Defensive 4-2
  Drunk 4-3
  Highway Hypnosis 4-16
Driving (cont.)
  Hill and Mountain Roads 4-17
  In Rain and on Wet Roads 4-15
  Loss of Control 4-13
  Off-Road Recovery 4-13
  Rocking Your Vehicle to Get it Out 4-21
  Winter 4-18
Driving for Better Fuel Economy 4-2

E

EDR 7-16
Electrical Equipment
  Add-On Equipment 5-90
Electrical System
  Engine Compartment Fuse Block 5-94
  Fuses 5-91
  Instrument Panel Fuse Block 5-91
  Power Windows and Other Power Options 5-90
  Rear Compartment Fuse Block 5-97
  Windshield Wiper Fuses 5-90
Electronic Immobilizer
  PASS-Key® III+ 2-19
Electronic Immobilizer Operation
  PASS-Key® III+ 2-20
Electronic Stability Control 4-6
Electronic Stability Control Indicator Light 3-34

Engine
Air Cleaner/Filter 5-20
Check and Service Engine Soon Lamp 3-37
Compartment Overview 5-12
Coolant 5-23
Coolant Heater 2-25
Coolant Temperature Gage 3-36
Coolant Temperature Warning Light 3-35
Cooling System 5-22
Drive Belt Routing 6-14
Exhaust 2-33
Oil 5-15
Oil Life System 5-18
Overheated Protection Operating Mode 5-30
Overheating 5-27
Starting 2-23
Entry/Exit Lighting 3-16
Event Data Recorders 7-17
Extender, Safety Belt 1-29

F

Filter
Engine Air Cleaner 5-20
Finish Damage 5-88
Flashers, Hazard Warning 3-6
Flash-to-Pass 3-8
Flat Tire 5-67
Flat Tire, Changing 5-68
Flat Tire, Storing 5-76
Fluid
Automatic Transmission 5-22
Power Steering 5-30
Windshield Washer 5-32
Fog Lamp
Fog 3-15
Folding Rear Seat 1-8
Fuel 5-5
Additives 5-6
California Fuel 5-6
Economy Driving 4-2
Filling a Portable Fuel Container 5-10
Filling the Tank 5-8
Fuels in Foreign Countries 5-7
Gage 3-42
Gasoline Octane 5-5
Gasoline Specifications 5-6
Fuses 5-91
Engine Compartment Fuse Block 5-94
Instrument Panel Fuse Block 5-91
Rear Compartment Fuse Block 5-97
Windshield Wiper 5-90

G

Gage
Speedometer 3-29
Tachometer 3-29
Gages
Engine Coolant Temperature 3-36
Fuel 3-42
Trip Odometer 3-29
Garage Door Opener 2-41
Garment Hooks 2-49
Gasoline
Octane 5-5
Specifications 5-6
Glove Box 2-48
GM Mobility Reimbursement Program 7-6

H

Halogen Bulbs 5-41
Hazard Warning Flashers 3-6
Head Restraints 1-7
Headlamp
Aiming 5-41
Headlamps 3-13
Bulb Replacement 5-41
Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) 3-14
Delayed 3-14
Flash-to-Pass 3-8
Headlamps (cont.)
High/Low Beam Changer 3-8
On Reminder 3-13
Range Adjustment 1-7
Headlamps Off in Park 3-13
Heated Seats 1-4
Heater 3-19
Engine Coolant 2-25
Highbeam On Light 3-41
High-Speed Operation, Tires 5-53
Highway Hypnosis 4-16
Hill and Mountain Roads 4-17
Hood
Checking Things Under 5-10
Release 5-11
Horn 3-6
How to Wear Safety Belts Properly 1-15

I

Ignition Positions 2-22
Infants and Young Children, Restraints 1-33
Inflation - Tire Pressure 5-52
Instrument Panel
Brightness 3-16
Cluster 3-28
Overview 3-4
Introduction 6-2

J

Jump Starting 5-37

K

Keyless Entry, Remote Operation 2-5
Keyless Entry System 2-4
Keys 2-3

L

Labeling, Tire Sidewall 5-46
Lamp
  Malfunction Indicator 3-37
Lamps
  Daytime Running (DRL) 3-14
  Dome 3-16
  License Plate 5-43
  Reading 3-16
Lap-Shoulder Belt 1-23
LATCH System for Child Restraints 1-43
Lift Seat, Power 1-8
Lighting
  Entry/Exit 3-16
  Parade Dimming 3-16
Lights 3-13
  Airbag Readiness 3-30
  Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning 3-34
  Brake System Warning 3-33
  Charging System 3-32
  Cruise Control 3-41
  Engine Coolant Temperature Warning 3-35
  Flash-to-Pass 3-8
  Highbeam On 3-41
  High/Low Beam Changer 3-8
  Oil Pressure 3-40
  On Reminder 3-13
  Passenger Airbag Status Indicator 3-31
  Safety Belt Reminders 3-29
  Security 3-41
  Tire Pressure 3-36
Loading Your Vehicle 4-21
Locks
  Delayed Locking 2-11
  Door 2-10
  Lockout Protection 2-12
  Power Door 2-10
  Programmable Automatic Door Locks 2-11
  Rear Door Security Locks 2-12
Loss of Control 4-13
Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children 1-43
Lumbar
  Manual Controls 1-3

M

Maintenance
Footnotes 6-7
Maintenance Schedule
Additional Required Services 6-6
At Each Fuel Fill 6-9
At Least Once a Month 6-9
At Least Once a Year 6-10
Maintenance Record 6-15
Maintenance Replacement Parts 6-13
Maintenance Requirements 6-2
Owner Checks and Services 6-9
Recommended Fluids and Lubricants 6-12
Scheduled Maintenance 6-4
Using 6-2
Your Vehicle and the Environment 6-2
Malfunction Indicator Lamp 3-37
Manual Lumbar Controls 1-3
Manual Seats 1-2
Message
DIC Warnings and Messages 3-45
Mirrors
Automatic Dimming Rearview 2-35
Manual Rearview Mirror 2-35
Outside Automatic Dimming Mirror 2-37
Outside Heated Mirrors 2-37
Outside Power Mirrors 2-37
MP3 3-67

N

Navigation System, Privacy 7-18
Net
Convenience 2-49
New Vehicle Break-In 2-21

O

Odometer 3-29
Odometer, Trip 3-29
Off-Road
Recovery 4-13
Oil
Engine 5-15
Engine Oil Life System 5-18
Pressure Light 3-40
Older Children, Restraints 1-30
Online Owner Center 7-5
OnStar, Privacy 7-18
OnStar® System, see OnStar® Manual 2-38
Operation, Universal Home Remote System 2-42
Outlet Adjustment 3-26
Outlets
Accessory Power 3-18

Outside
Automatic Dimming Mirror 2-37
Heated Mirrors 2-37
Power Mirrors 2-37
Overheated Engine Protection Operating Mode 5-30
Owner Checks and Services 6-9
Owners, Canadian ii

P

Paint, Damage 5-88
Parade Dimming 3-16
Park
Headlamps Off in Park 3-13
Shifting Into 2-30
Shifting Out of 2-32
Parking
Over Things That Burn 2-32
Parking Brake 2-29
Passenger Airbag Status Indicator 3-31
Passenger Sensing System 1-65
Passing 4-13
PASS-Key® III+ Electronic Immobilizer 2-19
PASS-Key® III+ Electronic Immobilizer
Operation 2-20
Perchlorate Materials Requirements, California 5-4
Phone
Bluetooth® 3-75
Power
Door Locks 2-10
Electrical System 5-90
Lift Seat 1-8
Retained Accessory (RAP) 2-23
Seat 1-3
Steering Fluid 5-30
Windows 2-16
Pregnancy, Using Safety Belts 1-29
Pressure Cap 5-27
Privacy 7-16
Navigation System 7-18
OnStar 7-18
Radio Frequency Identification (RFID) 7-18
Programmable Automatic Door Locks 2-11
Proposition 65 Warning, California 5-4

R

Radio Frequency Identification (RFID), Privacy 7-18
Radio(s) 3-57
Radios
  Reception 3-91
  Setting the Clock 3-56
  Theft-Deterrent 3-89
Range Adjustment, Headlamps 1-7
Reading Lamps 3-16
Rear Door Security Locks 2-12
Rear Seat Audio (RSA) System 3-86
Rear Seat Entertainment System
  Rear Seat Audio (RSA) 3-86
Rearview Mirror, Automatic Dimming 2-35
Rearview Mirrors 2-35
Reclining Seatbacks 1-4
Recommended Fluids and Lubricants 6-12
Recreational Vehicle Towing 4-26
Reimbursement Program, GM Mobility 7-6
Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System 2-4
Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System, Operation ... 2-5
Remote Vehicle Start 2-7
Removing the Flat Tire and Installing the
  Spare Tire 5-71
Removing the Spare Tire and Tools 5-69
Replacement Bulbs 5-44
Replacement Parts, Maintenance 6-13
Reporting Safety Defects to Saturn 7-15
Reporting Safety Defects to the
  Canadian Government 7-15
Reporting Safety Defects to the
  U.S. Government 7-14
Restraint System Check
  Checking the Restraint Systems 1-72
  Replacing Restraint System Parts
    After a Crash 1-73
Retained Accessory Power (RAP) 2-23
Ride Control Systems 4-6
  Electronic Stability (ESC) 4-6
Roadside Assistance Program 7-7
Rocking Your Vehicle to Get it Out 4-21
Roof
  Sunroof 2-49
Running the Vehicle While Parked 2-34

S

Safety Belt Reminders 3-29
Safety Belts
  Care of 5-84
  Extender 1-29
  How to Wear Safety Belts Properly 1-15
  Lap-Shoulder Belt 1-23
  Safety Belts Are for Everyone 1-10
  Use During Pregnancy 1-29
Safety Defects
  Reporting to Canadian Government 7-15
  Reporting to Saturn 7-15
  Reporting to the U.S. Government 7-14
Safety Warnings and Symbols iii
Scheduled Maintenance 6-4
  Additional Required Services 6-6
Scheduling Appointments 7-9
Seats
  Heated Seats 1-4
  Manual Lumbar 1-3
  Power Lift Seat 1-8
  Power Seats 1-3
  Reclining Seatbacks 1-4
  Split Folding Rear Seat 1-8
Securing a Child Restraint
  Rear Seat Position 1-50
  Right Front Seat Position 1-52
Security Light 3-41
Service 5-3
  Accessories and Modifications 5-3
  Adding Equipment to the Outside of the Vehicle 5-5
  Doing Your Own Work 5-4
  Engine Soon Lamp 3-37
  Publications Ordering Information 7-15
  Scheduling Appointments 7-9
Service Parts Identification Label 5-89
Servicing Your Airbag-Equipped Vehicle 1-70
Setting the Clock 3-56
Sheet Metal Damage 5-88
Shifting
  Out of Park 2-32
Shifting Into Park 2-30
Signals, Turn and Lane-Change 3-7
Spare Tire
  Compact 5-80
  Installing 5-71
  Removing 5-69
  Storing 5-76
Specifications and Capacities 5-100
Speedometer 3-29
Split Folding Rear Seat 1-8
Start Vehicle, Remote 2-7
Starting the Engine 2-23
Steering 4-11
Steering Wheel Controls, Audio 3-89
Steering Wheel, Tilt and Telescopic 3-6

Storage
Garment Hooks 2-49
Storage Areas
Center Console 2-49
Convenience Net 2-49
Cupholders 2-48
Glove Box 2-48
Stuck in Sand, Mud, Ice, or Snow 4-20
Sun Visors 2-17
Sunroof 2-49

T

Tachometer 3-29
Taillamps
Turn Signal, Sidemarker, Stoplamps, and Back-Up Lamps 5-42
Telescopic Wheel 3-6
Text Telephone (TTY) Users 7-6
Theft-Deterrent Feature 3-89
Theft-Deterrent Systems 2-18
Content Theft-Deterrent 2-18
PASS-Key® III+ Electronic Immobilizer 2-19
PASS-Key® III+ Electronic Immobilizer Operation 2-20
Tilt Wheel 3-6
Time, Setting 3-56
Tire
Pressure Light 3-36
Tires 5-45
Aluminum Wheels, Cleaning 5-87
Buying New Tires 5-61
Chains 5-66
Changing a Flat Tire 5-68
Cleaning 5-87
Compact Spare 5-80
Different Size 5-63
High-Speed Operation 5-53
If a Tire Goes Flat 5-67
Inflation - Tire Pressure 5-52
Inspection and Rotation 5-59
Installing the Spare Tire 5-71
Pressure Monitor Operation 5-55
Pressure Monitor System 5-54
Removing the Flat Tire 5-71
Removing the Spare Tire and Tools 5-69
Sidewall Labeling 5-46
Storing a Flat or Spare Tire and Tools 5-76
Terminology and Definitions 5-49
Uniform Tire Quality Grading 5-63
Wheel Alignment and Tire Balance 5-65
Wheel Replacement 5-65
When It Is Time for New Tires 5-60

Towing
Recreational Vehicle 4-26
Towing a Trailer 4-30
Your Vehicle 4-26
Traction
Control System (TCS) 4-8
Traction Control System 3-34
Transmission
Fluid, Automatic 5-22
Transmission Operation, Automatic 2-26
Transportation, Courtesy 7-10
Trip Odometer 3-29
Trunk 2-13
Turn and Lane-Change Signals 3-7
Turn Signal/Multifunction Lever 3-7

U

Uniform Tire Quality Grading 5-63
Universal Home Remote System 2-41
Operation 2-42

V

Vehicle
Control 4-3
Loading 4-21
Running While Parked 2-34
Symbols iii
Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy 7-16
Vehicle Data Recording,
Radio Frequency (RFID) 7-18
Vehicle Identification
Number (VIN) 5-89
Service Parts Identification Label 5-89
Vehicle Personalization
DIC 3-50
Vehicle, Remote Start 2-7
Ventilation Adjustment 3-26
Visors 2-17

W

Warning Lights, Gages, and Indicators 3-27
Warnings
  DIC Warnings and Messages 3-45
  Hazard Warning Flashers 3-6
  Safety and Symbols iii
Wheels
  Alignment and Tire Balance 5-65
  Different Size 5-63
  Replacement 5-65
When It Is Time for New Tires 5-60
Where to Put the Child Restraint 1-40
Windows 2-15
  Power 2-16
Windshield
  Washer 3-9
  Washer Fluid 5-32
  Wiper Blade Replacement 5-44
  Wiper Blades, Cleaning 5-86
  Wiper Fuses 5-90
  Wipers 3-8
Winter Driving 4-18

X

XM Radio Messages 3-74
XM™ Satellite Radio Antenna System 3-92

Y

Your Vehicle and the Environment 6-2